CONTENTS PAGE

CONTENT OF THE IDP
CHAPTER 1
1. Background 2
1.1 Agriculture 4
1.1.1 Stock farming 4
1.1.2 Irrigation 5
1.1.3 Game farming 5
1.2 Industry 5
1.3 Electricity 6
1.4 Mineral Resource 6
1.5 Economic Growth 7
1.6 Local Economic Development 7
1.7 Developmental Challenges 8
1.8 Identified Issues 8
1.9 Why is it necessary for a municipality to review an IDP 8
1.10 IDP review process followed 9
1.10.1 Process Plan 9
1.10.2 Institutional Arrangements 9
1.10.3 IDP Representative Forum 11
1.11 Revision status 14
1.12 Role of the District IDP 14
1.13 Focus area of the strategic IDP 14
1.13.1 Social Economic Development 14
1.13.2 Service Delivery 15
1.13.3 Governance 15
1.13.4 Economic Growth 15
1.14 Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment 16
1.15 Fiscal Discipline 16
1.16 Environment 16
1.17 HIV and AIDS 17
1.18 Sustainable Human Settlement 17
1.19 Intergovernmental Collaboration 18
1.20 Powers and functions 19
1.21 Institutional Structure Profile 19
1.22 Mandate, Power and Functions 20
1.23 Municipal Budget 25
1.24 The Executive Mayor 26
1.25 Committees 26
1.26 Integrated Institutional Programme 28
1.26.1 Administration 28
1.26.2 Administrative Structure 29
1.27 Office of the Municipal Manager 29
1.28 Departments 30
1.29 Proposed Organizational Structure 35

CHAPTER 2

2.	Existing Features	48
2.1	Topography	48
2.2	Flood lines	48
2.3	Geology	48
2.4	Climate	49
2.5	Soil Conditions	49
2.6	Water Resource	50
2.7	Ground Water	50
2.8	Environmental Aspects	51
2.8.1	Hydrology	51
2.8.2	Water Quality	51
2.9	Air Quality	52
2.10	Threatened and Usual Species	55
2.11	Agriculture and Forestry	55
2.12	Aesthetic Resource	56
2.13	Wetlands and Springs	56
2.14	Issues and Management of Wetlands	56
2.15	Considerations for Water Resource Management	56
2.16	Development Profile	57
2.16.1	Demographics	57
2.16.2	The Pixley Population and Households	58
2.16.3	Youth	59
2.17	Population Growth	62
2.18	Population Density	66
2.19	Socio-Economic Condition	68
2.20	Employment by Economic Sector	69
2.21	Occupational Classification	73
2.22	Housing	73
2.22.1	Housing Accreditation	73
2.22.2	Housing Profile	74
2.22.3	Home Ownership	75
2.22.4	Housing Backlog	77
2.22.5	Housing need	78
2.23	Land needed for new Housing Stock 2002 -2012	81
2.24	Land in Ownership	82
2.24.1	Public Land	82
2.24.2	State Land	82
2.24.3	Commonage Land	82
2.24.4	Private Land	83
2.25	Land and Land Reform	83
2.26	Land Audit	84
2.27	Health and Hygiene	84
2.27.1	Identified Issues on HIV / AIDS	85

2.27.2 Health Facilities 86
2.28 Safety and Security 88
2.29 Indigence and Household Income 88
2.30 Institutional and Management 92
2.31 Physical Infrastructure 96
2.31.1 Water Supply 96
2.31.2 Water Backlogs 97
2.31.3 Progress on Free Basic Water Delivery 97
2.31.4 Water Resources 98
2.31.5 Sanitation 99
2.31.6 Electricity 101
2.32 Refuse Removal 103
2.33 Improvement in Basic Service Delivery (Summary) 105
2.34 Telephones 107
2.34.1 Telephone Access 107
2.35 Postal Services 108
2.36 Transportation 108
2.36.1 Air Strips 110
2.37 Education 111
2.38 Storm Water Drainage 114
2.39 Roads 114
2.39.1 Road Priorities 116
2.39.2 Blanding Maintenance 117
2.39.3 Routine Maintenance 117
2.40 Resources 117
2.40.1 Plant Condition 117
2.40.2 Personnel 117
2.41 Community Facilities 118
2.42 Summary of Identified Problems (Issues) 122
2.43 Municipal –Wide Prioritized Needs 126
2.44 Potentials 131
2.45 Comparative and Competitive Advantages 132
2.46 Conclusions 133
2.47 Developmental SWOT Analyses 133
2.49 Service Delivery and Infrastructure 134
2.49.1 Housing Delivery Progress 135
2.49.2 Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) 137
2.49.3 Progress with the Expenditure of MIG Funds 138
2.50 Commitment on Projects 141
2.50.1 Construction and Maintenance Teams 147
2.50.2 Regraveling Projects 147
2.51 Economic Growth 150
2.51.1 Development Initiatives 150
2.51.2 LED Strategy 150
2.51.3 Job creation 151
2.51.4 Tourism 152

2.51.5 Agriculture 152
2.51.6 High impact projects 153
2.51.7 Rural Development 153
2.51.8 SMME Development 154
2.51.9 LED Section 154
2.51.10 PKS Bulk water supply project 154
2.51.11 Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development 155
2.51.12 Financial Viability and Management 155
2.51.13 Good Governance and Community Participation 156
2.52 Performance Management 157
2.53 Indebt Analysis of the District Needs 157

CHAPTER 3

3. Development Priorities 163
3.1 Priorities 163
3.2 Development Strategies 163
3.2.1 Goals and Objectives 163
3.2.2 Vision 163
3.2.3 Mission Statement 164
3.2.4 Corporate Culture and Value 164
3.3 Key Performance Areas (KPA) 164
3.4 Our Strategic Plan for 2008/9 Financial Year 166
3.5 Development Objectives, Strategies, Outputs and Targets 169

CHAPTER 4

4.1 Integration

Spatial Development Framework (SDF) **See Annexure**
Integrated Environmental Management Programme **(See Volume 2)**
4.2 District Growth and Development Strategy (DGDS) 186
Poverty Alleviation plan **(See DGDS)**
Gender Equity plan (**See Annexure)**
4.3 Performance Management System (PMS) 309
4.3.1 Monitoring 309
4.3.2 Performance Measurement 310
4.3.3 Review 310
4.3.4 Performance Reporting 311
4.3.5 Reporting and Reviewing 311
4.3.6 Draft format for reporting 313
4.3.7 2009/10 Scorecard 313

CHAPTER 5

314

5 Projects 314

5.1 Project A

5.1.1 Proposed Toll-Gate in Pixley ka Seme District Municipality Location: N1 and N12 junction 314

5.2 **Project B**

5.2.1 IDP-capital Project and Financial Plan 2009/2010 Financial Year 319

5.3 **Project C**

5.3.1 MIG Projects 345
5.3.2 Prioritized Access Roads for up scaling 346
5.3.3 Summary of Projects (**See Annexure**) 348
5.4 Monitoring and Evaluation 360
5.5 Three Year Implementation Plan 360
5.6 Budget 2009/10 Financial year **(Concept)** 360
5.7 **Annexure**
Spatial Development Framework (SDF)
Summary of Integrated Environmental Management Programme
Gender Equity plan
Summary of MIG projects
3 Year implementation plan

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1	Land Cover by Local Municipalities	4
Table 2	Composition of IDP Representative Forum	11
Table 3	IDP Review process Plan 2008/9	11
Table 4	Local Municipality Structure	19
Table 5	Functions	21
Table 6	Capacity of Pixley ka Seme Municipality	24
Table 7	Staffing Levels in the District at January 2008	29
Table 8	Tourism Attraction by Local Municipality	54
Table 9	Population, Household and Percentage Females	58
Table 10	Age Structure per Municipality	59
Table 11	Household size, Number of Persons Age Size and a Younger Age 16 and Older per Household by Municipality	60
Table 12	Population in 1996 and 2007	60
Table 13	Historical Population Growth in 1970 to 1996 Census	63
Table 14	Population Growth, DWAF 2001	64

Table 15	Population by Race Group	65
Table 16	Democratic Profile by Local Municipality	67
Table 17	Employment Profile Absolute Totals 2007	68
Table 18	Sector HDP Contribution (2007)	70
Table 19	Employment by Economic Sector	72
Table 20	Occupational Classification	73
Table 21	Housing Type by Local Municipality	75
Table 22	House Owner per Municipality by Household Income	75
Table 23	Dwelling ownership	76
Table 24	Housing Backlogs as at March 2008 by Local Municipality	77
Table 25	Housing Need by Local Municipalities	78
Table 26	Land Needed for New Housing Stock by Local Municipalities	81
Table 27	Incidents Rates on Children Under Five Years Old	84
Table 28	HIV / AIDS Infected Population, Absolute Totals, 2007	85
Table 29	Distribution of Health Care Facilities	86
Table 30	Household Income per Month Unemployment in 2007 Census	89
Table 31	Number of Indigent Household Register	90
Table 32	Number Household Provided with Free Basic Electricity (FBE)	91
Table 33	Provision of Free Basic Water (FBW)	91
Table 34	Indigent Policies	92
Table 35	Indigent Policies per Municipality	94
Table 36	Level of Residential Water Supply	97
Table 37	Water Backlog by Local Municipality	97
Table 38	Sanitation Level of Supply on Residential Sites	100
Table 39	Bucket eradication on Formal Stand in Cost per Local Municipality	101
Table 40	Electricity (Household)	102
Table 41	Refuse Removal	104
Table 42	Household % of Access to Basic Services in 2001 by Local Municipalities	106
Table 43	Telephone Access by Local Municipality	107
Table 44	Mote of Transport, 2001	109
Table 45	Air strips by Local Municipalities	111
Table 46	Illiteracy (Highest Level Reached by Local Municipality)	113
Table 47	Roads Maintenance	114
Table 48	Community Facilities by Local Municipality	121
Table 49	Other Problem / Issues Identified on Local and IDP’s	125
Table 50	Priorised Needs by Local Municipality	126
Table 51	SWOT Analysis	133
Table 52	Housing Build by Local Municipalities form 1994 / 2004	135
Table 53	Progress on Backlogs / Water	136
Table 54	Progress on Backlogs / Sanitation (Pre) 1994	136
Table 55	Progress on Backlogs / Sanitation Post 1994	137
Table 56	MIG allocations from 2004-2005-2008-2009	138
Table 57	% MIG Expenditure	138
Table 58	MIG Expenditure Report	138

Table 59	Expenditure per Project Category by Local Municipality since 2004/2005 Financial Year	139
Table 60	Summary of the Expenditure per Project Category for the District	141
Table 61	Commitment of MIG Allocation of 2006-2007 and 2008	141
Table 62	Operation and Maintenance	142
Table 63	O&M Support Union Report	143
Table 64	Issued Raised at District Water and Sanitation Forum	146
Table 65	Jog Creation	148
Table 65.1	Job Creation in Regrevalling Project as at December 2008	152
Table 66	Sanitation Provision	158
Table 67	Bulk Water Supply	158
Table 68	LED, Tourism and Poverty Alleviation	159
Table 69	Housing	160
Table 70	Roads, Streets and Storm Water Management	160
Table 71	Health and HIV & AIDS	160
Table 72	Electricity	161
Table 73	Education and Youth Development	161
Table 74	Land and Land Reform	161
Table 75	Crime, Security and Disaster Management	162
Table 76	Sport and Recreation	162
Table 77	Environmental and Waste Management	162
Table 78	Cemeteries	163
Table 79	Strategic Plan 2008/2009 Deliveries	166
Table 80	Sanitations	170
Table 81	Bulk Water Supply	171
Table 82	Local Economic Development	171
Table 83	Housing	176
Table 84	Roads, Street and Storm Water Management	177
Table 85	Health and HIV & AIDS	178
Table 86	Electricity	178
Table 87	Education and Youth Development	179
Table 88	Land and Land Reform	179
Table 89	Disaster Management	180
Table 90	Sport and Recreation	180
Table 91	Environmental and Waste Management	181
Table 92	Rural Development	181
Table 93	Priority: Safety and Security	182
Table 94	Cemeteries	182
Table 95	Proposed Implementation Agencies	183
Table 96	Lines of Accountability	310
Table 97	Performance Reports	313
Table 98	Performance Management Support	313
Table 99	PKS District Population by Race Agenda	213
Table 100	Access the Water by Household	214
Table 101	Provision of Free Water Basic (FBW)	215

Table 102	Below Provides Indication of the Types as well as those without Sanitation in the District	216
Table 103	Sanitation Backlogs for April 2005	216
Table 104	Refuse Removal Backlogs According to Census 2001	217
Table 105	Energy Source for Households	217
Table 106	Electricity Backlogs for Municipality (DNE 2005)	218
Table 107	Number of Households Provided with (FBE)	218
Table 108	Housing Type by Local Municipality	219
Table 109	Housing Backlogs by Local Municipality	220
Table 110	Household Access to Telephone	221
Table 111	Access to Telephone According to Municipalities	222
Table 112	Below is a Comparison Between Census 1996 and 2001 Regarding the Number of Persons Between the Ages of 5/24 that Attend School	223
Table 113	Human Development Indices for the Magisterial District in the Pixley ka Seme	224
Table 114	The Competitive Number Of Persons Employed and Unemployed in the Pixley ka Seme District 1996/2001	225
Table 115	Unemployment rates of the economically active population in Municipalities in the District	225
Table 116	It indicates the above ratios in each municipality in the district	227
Table 117	Minimum Living Level (R-Value) 1996/2004 According to Household Size	228
Table 118	Below indicates the population by Municipality living below the minimum living levels in the district	228
Table 119	%GDPR of District Municipalities per Economic Sector for 2003 - 2004	229
Table 120	Below indicates the local quotients of the economic sectors in the municipalities	231

FIGURES

Figure 1	Pixley Ka Seme Population 2007	58
Figure 2	Pixley Ka Seme Population Growth	61
Figure 3	% of people who never moved	61
Figure 4	Population by Race Group	65
Figure 5	% unemployment in 2001, by Local Municipality	69
Figure 6	% household Income below the Poverty Breadline by District	89
Figure 7	Household Income per month	90
Figure 8	Gravel Road Maintenance Budget	115
Figure 9	Age Distribution	118
Figure 10	Process of Reporting and Reviewing	312

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN VOLUME 1

Ready to serve

2009/2010

Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality
Culvert Road
Private Bag X1012
DE AAR
7000

Tel: 053 - 631 0891/2-6
Fax: 053 - 631 2529
E-mail: pixley@telkomsa.net
Website: www.pixley.local.gov.za

February 2009

Content of the IDP

This IDP comprises 3 volumes of documentation. **Volume 1** gives the background of the region and contains the status quo report, spatial development framework, District growth and development strategy, budget, Projects, Implementation plan, and development objectives with indicators, targets and outputs that are required for the implementation of the strategic plan of the Council.

Volume 2 contains integrated plans/programmes which are regulatory requirements for an intergrated development planning as provided for by the Municipal Systems Act and IDP guide pack.

The documents are:

- Integrated Environmental Management Programme (Summary)
- Consolidated Infrastructure Plan (CIP)
- Performance Management System (PMS)
- Institutional Development Plan
- Disaster Management Plan
- Integrated Waste Management plan
- Water Services Development Plan
- Integrated Housing Plan
- Service Delivery and Budget Emplementation Plan (SDBIP)
- Pixley ka Seme District Tourism Sytrategy

Volume 3 contains the additional components of the IDP that required for strengthening the sustainability of the IDP process.

The documents are:

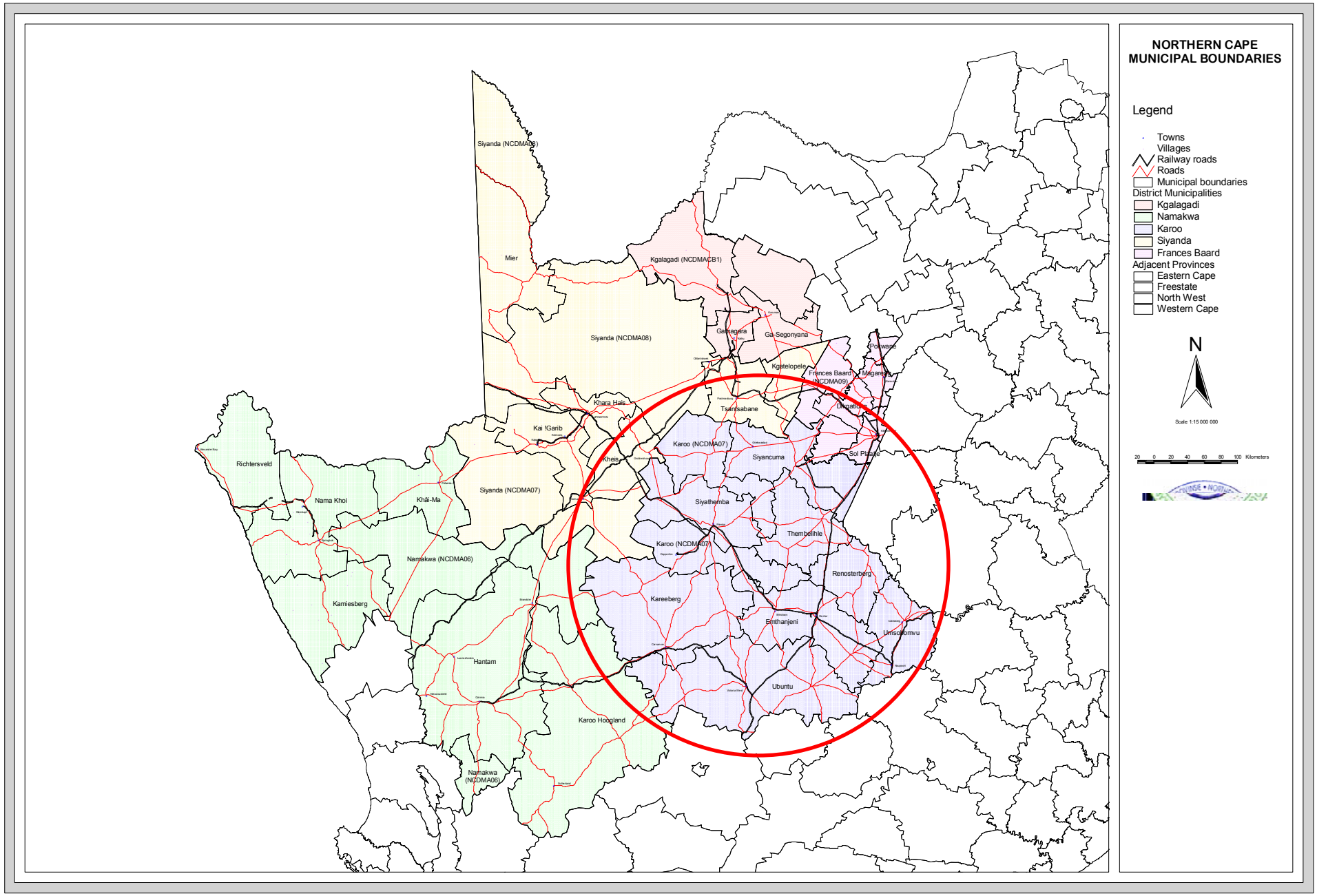
- Municipal Supply Chain Management Policy
- Risk Management Policy
- Recruitment Policy for the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Skills Development Policy and Human Resource Skills Development Committee Constitution
- Audit Committee Charter
- Internal Audit Charter
- Draft HIV and Aids Policy
- Health and Safety Policy
- Fraud Prevention Policy
- Credit Conrol Policy
- Employment Equity Plan for Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Fleet Management Policy for Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Career Pathing and Development

CHAPTER 1

1. Background

The Pixley ka Seme district lies in the south-east of the Northern Cape Province and shares its borders with three other provinces, namely, the Free State province to the east, the Eastern Cape to the south-east and the Western Cape to the south-west. It is one of the five district municipalities in the province and is the second largest covering a surface area of 102 766 km².

Traffic flows through the region linking the major industrial areas of the country. The area has a low rainfall while the largest river in South Africa flows through it. Two of the major dams in South Africa are situated on the borders of the District Municipality. They are Vanderkloof and Gariep dams.


NORTHERN CAPE
MUNICIPAL BOUNDARIES
Legend
Towns
Villages
Railway roads
Roads
Municipal boundaries
District Municipalities
Kgalagadi
Namakwa
Karoo
Siyanda
Frances Baard
Adjacent Provinces
Eastern Cape
Freestate
North West
Western Cape
N
Scale 1:15 000 000
20 0 20 40 60 80 100 Kilometers
Siyanda (NCDMA08)
Mier
Kgalagadi (NCDMACB1)
Siyanda (NCDMA08)
Gamagara
Ga-Segonyana
Joe Morolong
Kgatelopele
Frances Baard (NCDMA09)
Magareng
Phokwane
Khara Hais
Tsantsabane
Dikgatlong
Kai !Garib
Karoo (NCDMA07)
Siyancuma
Sol Plaatje
Kheis
Richtersveld
Siyanda (NCDMA07)
Nama Khoi
Khâi-Ma
Siyathemba
Thembelihle
Karoo (NCDMA07)
Namakwa (NCDMA06)
Renosterberg
Kareeberg
Kamiesberg
Emthanjeni
Umsobomvu
Hantam
Ubuntu
Karoo Hoogland
Namakwa (NCDMA06)

The Region covers an area of 102 766 square kilometres as shown in table 2, with rainfall mainly in the summer and relatively low, with the exception of the small stock farming resulting in all economic activities being concentrated around the Orange River.

Table 1: Land Cover by Local Municipalities

Municipality	**Area (Km^2)**	**% Of Total**
Emthanjeni	11 388	11.1
Kareeberg	17 698	17.2
Thembelihle	6 978	6.8
Siyathemba	8 251	8
Renosterberg	5 530	5.4
Ubuntu	20 389	19.8
Siyancuma	10 027	9.8
Umsobomvu	6 813	6.6
DMA	15 692	15.3
District (Total)	**102 766**	**100**

Source: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2008/09

1.1 Agriculture

Wheat maize and lucerne are very important crops but the possibility exists that there can be a shift to alternative high value crops. Small stock farming is one of the attributes of the region and therefore the region has a strong history of wool farming and this can benefit farm diversification into the more lucrative ventures, like cashmere production.

1.1.1 Stock farming

Stock farming takes place throughout the whole region and is mainly focussed on small stock, consisting of sheep and goats. The sheep farming produces mutton and wool. There are several abattoirs in the region with the largest located in the Emthanjeni Municipal Area with a capacity of 2000 sheep slaughtered per day. At present up to 1000 sheep are slaughtered daily in Umsobomvu Municipal Area.

The huge potential for the region lies in adding value to the products within the area. At present products are leaving the areas in unprocessed form.

The area also produces large quantities of wool that are processed in the Eastern Cape. The area is surely the largest wool-producing region in South Africa and again offers the potential of benefaction within the region.

1.1.2 Irrigation

The Orange River and the Vaal River run through the region and irrigation farming is confined to outline the areas where irrigation farming is practised along these rivers.

Irrigation farming forms a large part of the agricultural activities in the region and numerous products are cultivated along the rivers. The products include:

1. Maize
2. Peanuts
3. Lucerne
4. Grapes
5. Dry Beans
6. Soya Beans
7. Potatoes
8. Olives
9. Pop Corn
10. Pecan Nuts
11. Pistachio Nuts
12. Cotton

These products also leave the area in the raw and there is potential for benefaction within the Pixley Region. Products produced under the climatic conditions in the region are considered as some of the healthiest available.

1.1.3 Game Farming

The region has a long history of game farming. Game farming industry provides possibilities of a reasonable income. The Orange and Vaal rivers are major tourist attraction and the district also boosts two game reserves.

1.2 Industry

Industries in the area are mostly confined to light industries. The rivers provide a constant supply of water in certain parts of the region, which at least offer the potential of using the products produced in the area as a basis for benefaction.

The Region, in the Centre of South Africa is well blessed with a good road and railway network where 4 of the major National Routes go through the Pixley Region.

The N1 and N12 routes link the two main economic centres, i.e., the Rand and the Western Cape and both these routes carry thousands of tons of valuable goods and material every day to all parts of the country.

The N9 and N10 routes link Namibia and Gauteng with the coastline of Port Elizabeth, which is also the nearest export harbour for the Pixley region.

The railway network around De Aar and Noupoort is one of the largest in South Africa and no fewer than 30 trains pass through the station daily at De Aar in both directions; to and from the main economic centres in South Africa.
On average 9 freight trains between Gauteng and the Western Cape pass through the station at De Aar every day, 4 to Port Elizabeth, 2 to Namibia and 10 from De Aar to Kimberley. The station at De Aar has direct or indirect links to virtually every corner of South Africa.
An average of 1 000 000 tons are conveyed through this station every month and the capacity exists to increase this tonnage with ease.

Eskom, the country's largest supplier of electricity, has a major presence in the Pixley as a regional Office of Eskom is situated in Colesberg and Eskom is represented in nearly every town in the Pixley.

One of Eskom's largest sub-stations – Hydra – is located near De Aar, supplying high voltage power especially to the Western Cape and the rural areas.

1.3 Electricity

This electricity is mainly generated in the Northern Areas of the country and distributed to the surrounding smaller towns of the southern regions via the central corridor. Spoornet's power lines also originate at Hydra. The station is staffed by 23 trained personnel.

The Vanderkloof Dam is used by Eskom to generate peak demand electricity. The 112m high dam wall houses two 120-megawatt generators, which supply peak demand. Power is generated by turbine engines with an outflow of 150 cubic metres of water per second, into the second largest dam in South Africa.

1.4 Mineral resource

Pixley ka Seme district has a few modest mineral wealth. The most important mines which made a significant contribution to the economy were copper, asbestos and diamond in Siyathemba municipal area (Glen Ellen and Koegas for asbestos, copperton for copper and Franshek for diamond).

The copper mine was closed down because of its uneconomical use, asbestos mine closed because of its harmful disease to human kind and the diamond mine is about to close because of the small deposits it produces as required by the Minerals and Energy Department.

There are some other semi precious stones found in some municipal areas like the tiger's eye and chalcedonies for jewellery production.

In addition there are also a few scale low yielding diamonds site at Schmidsdrift in Siyancuma municipal area which could make marginal contribution to the economy and export earnings. Latest information with regard to this mineral indicates that the mining company that was operating stopped because it was operating illegally.

According to the District Growth and Developemnt Strategy (DGDS) the district and local municipalities together with relevant provincial and national departments plan to emphasize the need to intensify mineral exploration and to update knowledge on the district's mineral resources.

1.5 Economic Growth

The Economic growth of the district was 1.3% between 1995-2003, which is below the national average of 2,5% and represents a significant barrier to meeting the material needs of many communities in the region.

1.6 Local Economic Development

The status of the district economy epitomizes the legacy of apartheid through its skewed development among former white areas and townships. All communities are affected in terms of poverty and development deficit (with unemployment reaching approximately 32%). Upliftment of the local economy has therefore been a key area of focus for the district municipality along with its local municipalities. During the implementation of the services delivery plan of the district development support is spread poverty-proportion-wise in the region.

Given the mgnititude of poverty (43.5%) and development deficit in the district, the Pixley ka Seme District municipality has vowed to do everything in its power to create jobs. To achieve this goal, the district and local municipalities have compiled the District Growth and Development strategy in 2006 and a significant number of LED projects have been supported to date. It is a strong conviction of the district an local municipalities that in order to lure investors to the district, we should put our weights behind critical development activities taking place nationally and internationally.

By virtue of its geographical location, the region provides itself as a natural transportation route for people traveling to destinations such as Cape Town, Gauteng and Bloemfontein since two of the major national roads, namely N1 and N12 pass through the district. The Pixley ka Seme District municipality has prepared its Spatial Development Framework that will ensure maximum economic benefit along these roads.

1.7 Development Challenges

The developmental challenges in the district include a rising level of poverty, economic stagnation, unemployment and geographically imbalanced settlement structure. The district and local municipalities performed a detailed economic development investigation on every town in the district. This study is informing the LED strategy of the district municipality.

1.8 Identified Issues

In addition to the above-mentioned development challenges, local muncipalities and IDP representative forum have also identified the following as development challenges in the region:

- Lack of diversification of the district economy
- Lack of investment in the region
- Lack of employment opportunities
- Lack of skills
- Lack of entrepreneurship
- Small number of SMME's active in the region
- Underutilization of the regions natural resources and economic opportunities
- Lack of water for irrigation farming

1.9 Why is it necessary for a municipality to review an IDP?

Reviewing an IDP by a municipality is a legal requirements in terms of the Municipal Systems Act, however this is not the only reason why a municipality must review its IDP. Under the new constitution, municipalities have been awarded major developmental responsibilities to ensure that the quality of life for their citizens is improved. The new role for local government includes provision of basic services, creation of jobs, promoting democracy and accountability and eradication of poverty. Reviewing and having the IDP therefore enables the municipality to be able to manage the process of fulfilling its developmental responsibilities.
Through the IDP, the municipality is informed about the problems affecting its municipal area and being guided by information on available resources, is able to develop and implement appropriate strategies and projects to address the problems.

From the above a municipality should review an IDP as it:

- Helps to make effective use of scarce resources by:
  - ⇒ Focusing on identified and prioritized local needs taking into consideration local resources
  - ⇒ Searching for more cost-effective solutions; and
  - ⇒ Addressing causes, rather than just allocating capital expenditure for dealing with symptoms

- Helps to speed up delivery by:
  - ⇒ Providing a tool which guides where investments should occur;
  - ⇒ Getting the by-in of all relevant role-players for implementation;
  - ⇒ Providing deadlock breaking decision-mechanisms; and
  - ⇒ Arriving at realistic project proposals taking into consideration limited resources

- Helps to attract funds:
    - ⇒ Where there is a clear municipal plan, private investors and sector departments are willing and confident to invest their money because the IDP is an indication that the municipality has a developmental vision and direction

- Helps to strengthen democracy and hence institutional transformation because decisions are made in a democratic and transparent manner, rather than by a few influential individuals.

- Helps to overcome apartheid legacy at local level by:
    - ⇒ Promoting integration of rural and urban areas, different socio-economic groups, places where people live and work etc, and
    - ⇒ Facilitating redistribution of resources in a consultive process

- Promotes intergovernmental coordination by:
    - ⇒ Facilitating a system of communication and coordination between local, provincial and national spheres of government

1.10 IDP review process followed

When the IDP review process started in August 2008 the following planning processes were followed to ensure compliance with the MSA of 2000:

1.10.1 Process Plan

The first process that was followed in the IDP review was to compile a process plan. The plan was compiled within the guideleines of the national IDP review framework, and it contains the target dates for completion and adoption of the IDP by Council. The process plan is shown in the table below.

1.10.2 Institutional Arrangements

The IDP guide pack proposed that a municipality must make an institutional arrangement whose primary role is to drive the IDP process.

The Pixley ka Seme District Municipality has set up the following structures with define roles and responsibilities to drive the 2009/10 IDP process.

IDP Manager

In the absence of an IDP Manager, the Municipal Manager mandated the Manager of the Shared Services Centre to perform the IDP Manager's roles and responsibilities. The following are the roles and responsibilities of the IDP Manager:

- Day to day responsibility for the IDP process.

- Day to day work to link with financial manage (CFO) in helping to ensure IDP outputs are integrated into budget.
- Ensure the flow of information from the budget process into IDP and IDP outputs into the budgeting process.
- Co-ordination and management of the process and submission of the draft IDP to the council for adoption.

IDP Steering Committee

Composition

This is a technical working structure and the following people coustituted structure:

Clr. H. Jenkins – Executive Mayor
Clr. JZ Lolwana – Speaker
Clr. SD Eloff – Mayoral Committee Member
Clr. KE Mooi – Mayoral Committee Member
Clr. KA Jola – Mayoral Committee Member
Mr. M. Jack – Acting Municipal Manager
Mr. T. Loko – Senior Manager: Support and Social Services
Mr. B. James – CFO/Head: Finance
Mr. C. Müller – Head: Internal Audit
Mr. S. Diokpala – Head: Shared Services
Mr. H. Greeff – Head: Technical Services

Roles and Responsibilities

The Committee will be responsible for the following:

- Oversee effective management of the IDP process.
- Contribute to the assessing of needs and prioritising.
- Ensure proper organisational linkage with the budget.
- Ensure that terms of reference of the steering committee steers the interlinking of IDP with budgeting process.
- Serves as a resource to the representative forum by advising and integrating the forum inputs.

1.10.3 IDP Representative Forum

The IDP process in general required the inputs of communiites, all spheres and sectors of governemnt and non-governmental organisations that are involved in planning and community development. This was to be achieved through a consultative meeting with all role-players. Thus on 24 November 2008 the District Municipality conducted a district-wide meeting for the IDP representative forum that was established in 2001. The purpose of the meeting was to ensure that:

- IDP representative forum members participate fully in the review process.
- All inputs received during the review process are presented and discussed with all members present in the meeting.
- The needs and priorities of the communnities are well articulated in the IDP.
- The selection of strategies and projects would be based on the existing developemnt challenges in the communities.
- The IDP that will be adopted by the Council is prepared within the legal requirements of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000.

Following the outcome of the meeting, the IDP was finalised and sumitted to the council for adoption.

Composition of IDP Representative Forum

The IDP Representative Forum is consisting of government and non-governmental organisations as shown in table below:

Table 2: Composition of IDP Representative Forum

- ♦ Chairperson – Executive Mayor
- ♦ Secretariat – Provided by IDP Steering Committee

- Members of Representative Forum

- ➢ 3 Members of the Mayoral Committee
- ➢ Speaker ward Committee Represative
- ➢ Chairperson of each of the municipal Rep Forums
- ➢ All Local IDP Managers with consultants assisting them
- ➢ District IDP Manager/Manager: Shared Services
- ➢ Heads of the following District Municipal Departments:
  - ❑ Finance
  - ❑ Corporate Services
  - ❑ Technical Services
  - ❑ Internal Audit

- ➢ Representatives of Government Departments/Heads of departments:
  - ❑ DHLG
  - ❑ RDP
  - ❑ Youth Commission
  - ❑ DWAF
  - ❑ Health
  - ❑ Public Works
  - ❑ Education
  - ❑ Welfare
  - ❑ Safety and Security
  - ❑ Correctional Services
  - ❑ Social Services and Population Development
  - ❑ Statistics

- ➢ Office of the premies
- ➢ Parastatals
  - Telkom
  - ❑ Eskom

- Transnet
- Resourced persons
- JPJ Burgess-Economic Consultant
- Interest groups and stakeholders
- Nicro
- Sakekamer
- Black Business
- Organised Agriculture
- Regional civics organisations
- Organised Labour
- Local newspaper

Roles and Responsibilities

As the forum is the structure which institutionalises and guarantees representative participation in the IDP process, its roles and responsibilities are to:

- Provide community stakeholder inputs into all phases of the IDP.
- Represent the interests of constituencies in the IDP process.
- Provide an organisational mechanism for discussion,negotiation and decision making between the stakeholders including municipal government.
- Ensure communication between all the stakeholders representatives including the municipal government.
- Monitor the performance of the planning and inplementation process.

Participation Strategy

Through IDP representative forum, all stakeholders had an oppertunity to participate effectively in all the phases of the IDP process. To ensure coutinuous and effective participation the Council entrusted the following structures with the following responsibilities:

- Executive Mayor – To give key political support to the proper integration process.
  - Ensure that the Council fulfils its legal responsibilities by preparing an IDP within legislative and procedural guidelines.
- Municipal Manager – To coordinate participation by all structures.
  - Strategic management of the process.
  - Ensure that IDP is carried out as required by legislation and procedures.
  - Ensure that the process is integrated structurally within the Council.
- Chief Financial Officer – To ensure that IDP outputs are integrated into budget.

- Council – To ensure the democratic involvement of people in governance.
  - Approval of the IDP.
  - Passing the budget.
- IDP Representative Forum – To serve as a public structure for debates where all interest groups influenced government dicisions and development agendas
- Senior Manager: Shared Services – Responsible for the drafting and submission of IDP to Council for approval

Other processes followed:

- General discussions and meetings with members of the IDP steering Committee.
- Discussions with some service providers and Statistic SA on the existing and future population of the district. The method of estimating the future population, used in this document, was discussed with Statistic South Africa.
- Liaison with various government departments and stakeholders.
- Consideration of the MEC's Comments on previous IDPs.
- Studies of existing government reports and other reports on the district.
- A close study of the National and Provincial IDP assessment panel report on the IDP of the District and Local Municipalities for 2007 / 2008 financial year.
- A close study of completed sector plans that are contained in volume 2 of this IDP.

Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality
IDP Review Process Plan
For
2009/10 Financial Year

Table 3: IDP Review Process Plan for 2009/10 Financial year

Activity	Strategic Input/Output	Deadline	Responsibility	To Whom
Formalize the necessary institutional arrangements Roles and responsibility Mechanism for public participation Timeframe, etc.	• Organizational arrangements • Roles and responsibilities of the structures • Public participation • Timeframes and targets	Aug 2008	SSC Manager	
Information on projects requested from Local Municipalities	• IDP projects	Aug 2008	SSC Manager	
Collect information on the background of the District from relevant Departments.	• Topography and climatic issues • Receive information from Sector Departments.	Aug – Sept. 2008	SSC Management	
Analysis of the district physicall, social, economical and institutional profiles	• Receive information from HOD'S and Sector Departments • Identification of issues • Reflection on information available at all levels	Sept. 2008	HOD'S SSC Manager Sector Departments	
GAP analysis of the current District and Local IDP's o Situation analysis o Review of development objectives, strategies and priorities.	o Process on previous commitments (e.g. Sanitation) o Identify level of services o Formulate development, objectives, strategies and priorities	Sept. – Oct. 2008	SSC Manager	
Review MEC'S comments on IDP and outcomes of IDP Engagement	• Consideration of the MEC'S comments and the outcomes of the IDP engagement Session.	Aug – Sep 2008	SSC Manager	

IDP Review Process Plan for 2009/10 Financial Year

Activity	Strategic Input/Output	Deadline	Responsibility	To Whom
Review make Development priorities Indebt analysis of community needs Review of District department Objectives, strategies and priorities	• District development priorities • Vision and mission statement of the Council	Oct. – Nov. 2008	SSC Manager	
Conduct IDP Steering Committee and IDP Rep Forum meeting.	• Public participation • Present draft revieded IDP to the structures • Confirmation of projects and priority issues	Nov. 2008	SSC Manager	
Project identification and integration Identification of projects Link projects to: o Development objectives of the Council o PMS o LG 5 year strategic agenda o NSDP, PGDS, DGDS and DSDF o AGSISA o National targets dates for service delivery	• Identified projects • Integration between budget and IDP and budget • Submit inputs by HOD'S, Local Municipalities and Sector Departments on : o Sector Plan o EPWP and MIG projects o Funded and non-funded projects o Budget o SDBIP	Sept. – Oct. 2008	HOD'S IDP Rep Forum Sector Departments NGO'S	
Draft IDP	• Working document	Early December 2008	SSC Manager	

IDP Review Process Plan for 2009/10 Financial year

Activity	Strategic Input/Output	Deadline	Responsibility	To Whom
Submit Reviewed IDP to the Council for Adoption	• Draft of IDP tabled to Council	March 26, 2009	Senior Support Services Officer	Council
Advertisement of Adopted IDP	• Comments from all stakeholders	Upon adoption of IDP	SSC Manager Senior Support Services Officer	
Submit draft IDP to MEC for Local Government	• Comments from the MEC as provided for by MSA	March 2009	SSC Manager	MEC Local Government
Submit draft IDP to Provincial IDP Coordinator for assessment	• Legal compliances • Comments from the National and Provincial Assessment Panel	March 2009	SSC Manager	Provincial IDP Coordinator

1.11 Revision status

The Integrated Development Plan of Pixley ka Seme District Municipality for 2008/9 financial year that is being reviewed was adopted by the Council on **5th May 2008** and constitutes, in its whole, the IDP of this municipality, in terms of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000.

As required in terms of the MSA, the Council needs to review the IDP at least once a year. This revision is a mamoth task, as the previous IDPs of local municipalities did not address all key issues. Interaction between the 8 local municipalities that falls in the Pixley ka Seme district was done. All inputs received, with their new IDPs for 2009/10 financial year formed the major part of this IDP. This is to ensure that all projects included in the district municipality's IDP adhere to the needs of the community.

Although Council needs to review the IDP on an annual basis, Council may decide to amend the IDP at any given time after a member of Council or committee of Council has introduced a proposal for amendment. Sufficient notice needs to be given to members of the public and Council before Council may adopt the proposed amendment.

1.12 Role of the District IDP

Since the initial phase of Integrated Development Planning, the position of government on the role of the district and in tandem with that, the role of the district IDP has been evolving. Over the past 7 years it evolved to such a point that districts play a critical role in the coordination of government action across and within the three spheres.

The IDP of the district must therefore be seen as providing an opportunity for giving strategic direction (guiding), coordinating and aligning firstly the initiatives of the various local municipalities in the district and secondly the national and provincial departments that are active/operative in the district with each other. This function not only has to be aligned in the local sphere, but also between the local and the provincial and national spheres.

The Pixley Ka Seme district will therefore develop a strategic District IDP which will direct over time the development and improvement of the local municipal IDPs to give effect to the framework set by the district IDP, the Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy, the District Growth and Development Strategy and the National Spatial Developement Perspective.

Local IDPs prepared in terms of this strategic district framework would focus on service delivery and realistic implementation plans.

The Pixley ka Seme district municipality therefore aims to develop a realistic and attainable framework that is focused on strategic issues and key aspects.

1.13 Focus areas of the strategic IDP

1.13.1 Socio-economic development: These are issues that are of key importance to the longer-term survival and prosperity of the municipality and the country as a whole, such as

economic growth and job creation, eradicating poverty, broad-based black economic empowerment, maintaining the integrity of the environment, etc.

1.13.2 Service delivery: This relates to the most basic, but also one of the most important functions of municipalities, viz. the provision of quality and efficient services (water, electricity, sewerage, etc.) to communities.

1.13.3 Governance: Issues in this regard revolve around a myriad of aspects, such as the relationships in the district between the district and local municipality, as well as those between the various local municipalities, the nature and extent of intergovernmental relations, the deepening of democracy through the ward committee system, performance management, annual reporting, capacity building of officials and councillors, etc.

Therefore the major driving force behind this strategic IDP will be the National Spatial development framework, the Northern Cape Growth and development strategy and the District Growth and Developments strategies which includes sector plans.

The Pixley Ka Seme district municipality will align its Developemnt Strategies to support the principles and objectives contained in the abovementioned documents.

1.13.4 Economic growth

The building of a sound local economic base is a huge challenge. It requires careful strategizing in order to position a locality or region in the domestic and international market.

A key part of this positioning is about making the locality functional and appealing through proper infrastructure and service provision and by building the skills and confidence of local communities. In addition to this, Cabinet has recently emphasized the need to focus on economic growth through intensive investment in strategic infrastructure (rail, roads, and ports) and to balance the growth in social spending with growth in public sector economic investment.

Challenges

The major challenge is to develop and implement a strategy that is consistent with the NCPGDS and NSDP that will give effect to this strategy.

Therefore the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality must through thorough investigation and with interaction with all stake holders develop a strategic analysis of each municipality in its jurisdiction that will lead to the identification of sustainable projects that will enhance economic growth and long term job creation.

Strategies to be developed and implemented must be consistent to Provincial sector strategies. Current strategies in place in the District Municipality must be reviewed and amended to ensure consistency.

1.14 Broad based Black Economic Empowerment

BEE extends beyond affirmative procurement and has to become one of the key elements of the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality's IDP. The District Municipality has to develop a strategy that enhances BEE in all its projects, especially in the focus areas as determined by the NCPGDS and DGDS.

Challenges

To develop a strategy consistent with national guidelines that will be consistent and supportive to the sector strategies as determined.

1.15 Fiscal Discipline

It is imperative that implementation activities are planned within the resource limits of what can be afforded. Development plans must therefore be realistic and be based on medium term expenditure allocations. At the same time development plans must provide guidance for long term infrastructure development and form the basis for strategizing economic growth.

As development plans also serve to mobilize off-budget resources and guide private sector investment, this means that there need not be a one-to-one correlation between a development plan and the budget.

The coordination of IDPs for example, with the Municipal budgets will ensure that IDPs do not end up as "wish lists" but that the IDPs become strategic and implementation orientated that fulfil one of the big objectives with regard to speeding up delivery of services and becoming developmental orientated.

Challenges

To guide local municipalities in prioritizing projects in line with available funding.
To develop a strategy to attract private investors
To develop strategies for assisting private investors to find counter funding from other sources.
To persuade government departments to participate in active planning and to direct their medium term budgets to the priorities identified by the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality.

1.16 Environment

Many Municipalities in the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality are reliant on the natural environment in which they are located.

Challenges

To develop and implement management management strategy or programme that is in line with the Provincial Environmental Sector Strategy, that will both offer protection to the environment as well as optimal use of the environment within its sustainable capacity.

1.17 HIV/ AIDS

All actions in government should assist in minimizing the agony that the disease is causing in communities and on ridding the country from the scourge of this disease.

Challenges

- To amend the District Municipality's HIV/AIDS strategy to be in line with national policy and to assist local municipalities to maintain actions for the awareness of the problem and ensuring that the problem receives attention in the plans and budgets of provincial and national sector departments.
- To activate the support of the private sector in coming on board with the fight against HIV/AIDS.

1.18 Sustainable Human Settlements

A key consideration of the future of every municipality in the District Municipality is the consolidation of the spatial form of its settlement form inherited from apartheid.
Key factors to the realization of the ideal of sustainable human settlements are that:

- **Housing** is provided in places where it makes economic sense, i.e. that it is located within easy reach of the key areas of economic activity in a locality and that it can over time grow as an asset.
- **Roads** are developed in such a way and in such places where they can both (1) grow, sustain and support the local and regional economy and (2) ensure ease and affordability of movement of especially the poorest of the poor in a particular settlement.
- **Land reform** takes places to ensure that the previously deprived gain access to the economy. Municipalities also have to ensure that such land is well managed as an asset, by ensuring that the relevant national and provincial sector departments introduce capacity building programmes for new farmers. In addition to this local municipalities need to know how much land they have at their disposal and what is happening with regards to land reform in the district.
- **The living environment** is developed and managed to ensure the highest possible sustainable quality of life. This includes the efficient regulation of land development in the district/metro municipality, and the effective integration of land, transport and infrastructure planning and investment, so as not to create spatial forms that are as inefficient and inequitable as that left behind by apartheid.

Challenges

In the light of (1) the resilience of the apartheid space economy with its dualistic nature, deep-rooted inequalities and inefficiencies (2) the persisting relatively low quality of the areas inhabited by the poor, (3) the lack of growth in the asset value of housing provided in terms of the subsidy programme, (4) the permanence of the infrastructure investment and housing subsidy programmes in many areas, and (5) the Millennium goals, the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality needs to collectively focus on the development of "Sustainable Human Settlements", which have the following characteristics

- Sustainable human settlements are well-managed entities in which economic growth and social development are (1) in balance with the carrying capacity of the natural systems on which they depend for their existence and (2) result in sustainable development, wealth creation, poverty alleviation and equity.
- Settlement of this nature are governed by democratically elected representative that act (1) in accordance with the precepts outlined in the Bill of Rights, (2) in terms of development agreements reached with other spheres of government, (3) in accordance with integrated development plans prepared in a participatory way (4) with a strong commitment to the management of service and infrastructure provision and (5) on a partnership basis with civil society, including local communities and the private sector.
- The present and future inhabitants of such settlements that are located both in urban and rural areas live in a safe and a secure environment and have adequate access to (1) economic opportunities, (2) a mix of safe and secure housing and tenure types, (3) reliable and affordable basic services, (4) educational, entertainment and cultural activities and (5) health, welfare and police services.
- Land utilization in these settlements is well planned, managed and monitored to ensure the development of compact, mixed land-use, diverse, life-enhancing environments with maximum possibilities for pedestrian movement and transit via safe and efficient public transport in cases where motorized means of movement is imperative. Specific attention is paid to ensuring that low-income housing is provided in close proximity to areas of opportunity, and for such areas to over time, become likewise. Under these circumstances an investment in a dwelling becomes a crucial injection in the second economy, and a desirable asset that grows in value and acts as a generator and holder of wealth.
- Sustainable human settlements ensure the integration of vulnerable and marginalized groups and individual in the economy, social fabric and physical structure of the settlement. In order to give effect to this (1) social spending and skills development is focused on previously disadvantaged groups, (2) investment by government is geared towards areas in which such groups are concentrated and (3) the business community is levered into investing in such area through creative use of incentives and disincentives.

1.19 Intergovernmental collaboration

It is imperative for the successful implementation of strategies, projects and programmes as per the District Municipality's IDP that alignment, integration and coordination takes place between the various stakeholders.

Challenges

The Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will have to use and maintain the IDP Representative forum where alignment and coordination between stakeholders take place on a regular basis to ensure effective and efficient implementation of strategies and development.

1.20 Powers and functions

It is imperative that district and local communities discuss and reach a viable and sustainable agreement on powers and functions, as communities suffer in the absence of a satisfactory dispensation, as services are simply not rendered

Challenges

To establish a communication channel and to facilitate proper functioning of the ward committees and community development workers

1.21 Institutional Profile

Political structure

The area consists of nine Municipalities of which one is a District Municipality. The name of the District Municipality is Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality and has 17 (seventeen) Councillors elected to the Council indirectly and on a proportional basis. The District Municipality has an Executive Mayor, a Speaker and three members of Mayoral Committee to assist the mayor.

Executive Mayor : Clr HG Jenkins
Speaker : Clr JZ Lolwana

Mayoral Committee Members : Clr S Eloff
Clr K Mooi
Clr. K Jola

The following eight local authorities consist of directly elected Councillors as ward Councillors and proportionally elected Councillors. The eight Municipalities comprise 26 (twenty-six) towns as shown in table 1.

Table: 4 - Local Municipality Structure

Local Municipalities	Components	Councillors	System	Wards
Emthanjeni	De Aar Hanover Britstown	14	Collective executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	7
Kareeberg	Carnarvon Van Wyksvlei Vosburg	8	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
Thembelihle	Hopetown Strydenburg Orania	7	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
Siyathemba	Prieska Marydale Niekerkshoop	8	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4

Renosterberg	Petrusville Van Der Kloof Phillipstown	7	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
Ubuntu	Victoria - West Richmond Loxton Hutchinson	8	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
Siyancuma	Douglas Campbell Griekwastad Schmidtsdrift	9	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	5
Umsobomvu	Colesberg Noupoort Norvalspont	10	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	5

Source: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2008/09

1.22 Mandate, Powers and Functions

Mandate

The constitution assigns the developmental mandate to local government. This implies that all municipalities must strive to achieve the goals of local government within its financial and institutional capacity, namely:

- To promote democratic and accountable government for local communities
- To ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner
- To promote social and economic development
- To promote a safe and healthy environment
- To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matter of local government.

It further requires municipalities to structure and manage their administration and budgeting and planning process to give priority to the basic needs of the communit and to promote the social and economic development of the community whilst participating in national and provincial development programmes.

Powers and Functions

The Local Government Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998) sets out the basis for the establishment of new municipalities. This legislation divides municipalities into the following categories: Category A is metro councils; Category B is local councils and Category C is District Municipalities. The Act also defines the institutional and political systems of municipalities and determines the division of powers and functions between the categories.

According to Chapter 5 (Section 83 (1)) of the Act, a local municipality (Category B) has the functions and powers assigned to it in terms of Sections 156 and 229 of the Constitution. Section 156 deals with the powers and functions of municipalities, while Section 229 deals with fiscal powers and functions.

The district municipality (Category C) "must seek to achieve the integrated, sustainable and equitable social and economic development of its area as a whole…" (Section 83 (3)) The division of functions and powers between district and local municipalities are described in Section 84 of the Act and the adjustment of division of functions and powers between district and local municipalities by the Provincial MEC for local government is described in Section 85 of the Act.

The passing of by-laws is one of the tasks of municipalities. The Local Government Municipal Structures Act (Act 17 of 1998) directs that after amalgamation, all existing by-laws had to be reviewed and rationalized. An analysis of the status quo of Northern Cape local governance found that in the year after amalgamation, the most common by-law passed was credit control by-law. (DH&LG, 2002)

The Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997) transfers the responsibility for the provision and management of existing water supply and sanitation from national to local government. The two key areas of responsibility in terms of water services provision are the governance functions and the provision functions. Governance functions are legally the responsibility of the Water Services Authority (WSA) and include the planning and regulatory functions, as well as ensuring water services provision, which includes monitoring, finances, governance, contracts, and reporting. According to the Constitution and the Water Services Act, local government is responsible for ensuring water services provision to its constituency.

Local authorities may be constituted as Water Services Authorities, and would have the role of selecting and appointing a Water Services Provider (WSP) for their area. The WSA may however not delegate the authority and responsibility for providing services of adequate standard to all residents within their areas of jurisdiction. In some cases a WSA can simultaneously be the WSP.

In general, the Minister of Provincial and Local Government had authority to assign certain functions to local and district municipalities. According to Procincial Gazette of June 2003, the local and district municipalities have been authorized to perform the following functions:

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE MUNICIPALITIES
(In terms of Municipal Structures Act)
As re-adjusted from 01 July 200

Table 5: Functions

SECTION	POWERS AND FUNCTIONS	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
84(1)(a) and 84 (3)	• Integrated Development Planning for the district municipality as a whole including a framework for intergrated development plans for the local municipalities, taking into account the intergrated development plans of those municipalities.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(b)		Yes	No

SECTION	POWERS AND FUNCTIONS	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
84(1)(c) and 84(3)	• Bulk supply of water that affects the significant proportion of municipalities in the district.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(d) and 84(3)	• Bulk supply of electricity that affects the significant proportion of municipalities in the district.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(e) and 84(3)	• Bulk sewerage purification works and main sewerage disposal that affects a significant proportion of the district.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(f) and 84(3)	• Solid waste disposal sites serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(g) and 84(3)	• Municipal roads which form part of the road transport system for the area of the district municipality as a whole.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(h) and 84(3)	• Regulation of passenger transport services.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(i) and 84(3)	• Municipal airport serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(m) and 84(3)	• Municipal health service serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(j) and 84(3)	• Promotion of local tourism for serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.	Yes	No
84(1)(n) and 84(3)	• Fire fighting services serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.	Yes	No
84(1)(k) and 84(3)	• Municipal public works relating to any of the above function or any other function assigned to the district municipality.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(o)		Yes	Yes

SECTION	POWERS AND FUNCTIONS	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
84(1)(p) 84(1)(l) and 84(3) 83(1)	• Establishment of conduct and control of cemeteries and comotona serving the district as a whole. • The receipt, allocation and if applicable the distribution of grants made to the district municipality. • The imposition and collection of taxes, levies and duties as related to the above functions or as may be assigned to the district municipality in terms of national legislation. • Establishment, conduct and control of fresh produce markets and abattoirs servicing the area of the district municipality as a whole. • Powers and functions assigned to municipality in terms of Section 156 and 229 of the constitution i.e Administration, Composition of by laws.		

TABLE 6 : CAPACITY OF PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

Function	0 No Capacity	X Limited Capacity	✓ Available Capacity and/or Structure
Planning		X	
Water			
Sanitation			✓
Environmental Health		X	
Fire Services		X	
Roads			✓
Electricity	0		
Transport			
Airports/Airstrips			
Markets/Abattoir			
Tourism		X	
LED		X	
Rate Collection			✓
Protective Services			
Housing		X	
Culture/Sport/Recreation			✓
Waste and environmental management		X	

Source: PKS IDP 2008/9

The above table indicates the following issues:

- District Municipality lacks capacity in eg. Planning, environmental health, electricity, tourism, LED, housing and environmental management to fulfilles its new devel;opmental responsibilities.

- There is a need to increase the capacity of staff in areas where capacity is limited.

- External funding and governmental assistance would be of utmost importance to ensure optimization of the Municipality's human resources.

1.23 Municipal Budget:

It is critical to understand the financial situation of an organization so as to understand its capacity and commitment to deliver all delegated functions. The financial position of the municipality is determined by the amount of income it can generate versus its expenditure. Thus the more income it generates and the less it spend, the greater the profit or surplus.

Over the past couple of years, the information from the budget of the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality always indicates the following:

- The municipality depends mostly on income generated from sources other than regional levies. This confirms the fact that the Municipality will have to be supported financially by national and provincial government to ensure its long-term existence, as the tax base of the region is limited.

- Most of the money spent by the Municipality will be towards operational expenses, if the money allocated to local municipalities via the other programmes, eg. MIG,PIG and EPWP, are left out of the equation.

- There is little or no contribution made by the District Municipality towards projects at local municipality level.

- The District Municipality has financial constraints in implementing its constitutional mandate.

Issues:

The issues can be identified from the above are:

The small income potential and levy base of the municipality has the following ramifications:

- Insufficient staff component

- Insufficient funds available to finance infrastructure development in the region.

- Little or no funds available to provide funds to participating local municipalities for maintenance of infrastructure and equipment.

- National and Provincial Government funding would be of utmost importance to ensure the sustainable of the municipality.

- Insufficient funds affects the implementation of the IDP.

1.24 The Executive Mayor

The functions and powers of the Executive Mayor are to:

- Identify the needs of the Municipality;
- Review and evaluate those needs in order of priority;
- Recommend to the Municipal Council strategies, programmes and services to address priority needs through the IDP, and the estimates of revenue and expenditure, taking into account any applicable national and provincial development plans; and
- Recommend or determine the best way, including partnership and other approaches, to deliver those strategies, programmes and services to the maximum benefit of the community.
- The Executive Mayor in performing the duties of office must also undertake the following functions:
- Identify and develop criteria in terms of which progress in the implementation of the strategies, programmes and services of the Council.
- Evaluate progress against the key performance indicators.
- Review the performance of the municipality in order to improve:
- the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of the municipality;
- the efficiency of credit control and revenue and debit collection services, and
- The implementation of the municipality's by-laws.
- Monitor the management of the municipality's administration in accordance with the directions of the Municipal Council.
- Oversee the provision of services to communicates in the municipality in a sustainable manner.
- Perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Council may delegate to the Executive Mayor in Section 59 of the Municipal Systems Act.
- Report annually on the terms of involvement of communities and community organizations in the affairs of the municipality.
- Ensure that regard is given to public views and report on the effect of consultation on the decisions of the Council.
- Performs a ceremonial role as the Council may determine.
- Report to the Council on all decisions taken by the Executive Mayor.

1.25 Committees

Council Committees

Council Committees provide the opportunity for counciollors to be more involved in the active governance of the municipality. At present most of the Pixley ka Seme municipalities have a number of standing committees that have been organized according to a portfolio system. Renosterberg has no standing committy due to its size.

As indicated earlier, the Pixley ka Seme District municipality has 17 councillors. Once a month a mayoral meeting is conducted, while the Couuncil has regular quarterly meetings.

Ward Committees

As noted earlier, the Consitution requires of Local Government to provide democratice and accountable government, to ensure sustainable service provision, to promote social and economic development, and to encourage community involvement in its affairs. Ffurthermore the White Paper on Local Government (1998) defines Developmental Local Government as "local government committed to working with citizens and groups wihin the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs to improve the quality of their lives."

The primary objective for the establishment of ward committees is to enhance participatory democracy in local government. The Local Government Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998) makes provision for the establishment of wards determined by the Demarcation Board in metropolitan and Category B municipalities. Ward Councillors are elected in terms of the Municipal Electoral Act to represent each of the wards within a municipality. A Ward Committee is established consisting of a Ward Councillors as the Chairpaerson, and not more than 10 other persons. The Ward Committee members must represent a diversity of interests in the ward with an equitable representation of women. No remuneration is to be paid to Ward Committee members.

The frunctions and powers of ward Committees are limited to making recommendations to the Ward Councillors, the metro or local council, the Exective Committee and/or the Executive Mayor. However a Municipal Council may delegate appropriate powers to maximize administrative and operational efficiency and may instruct committees to perform any of council's functions and powers in terms of Chapter 5 of the MSA as amended. The Municipal Council may also make adminstrativde arrangements to enable Ward committees to perform their functions and powers.

In District Management Areas where local municipalities are not viable, the District Municipality has all the municipal functions and powers. The legislation does not make provision for the establishment of Ward Committees in District Management Areas.

The principles of developmental local government are further expanded upon in the Municipal Sjystems Act (Act 32 of 2000) and strongly endosrse the purpose and functions of Ward Committees, allowing for representative government to be complemented with a system of participatory government. The municipality is to

encourage and create the conditions and enable the local community to participate in its affairs. Members of the local community have the right to contribute to the decicsion-making processes of the municipality, and the duty to observe the mechanisms, processes and procedures of the municipality.

Ward Committees have been established in all Pixley category B municipalities, but some of these ward committees are not functioning due to the following reasons:

- No proper training has been provided
- Many municipalities do not provide resources such as transport, human resources and facilities
- There are no monitoring mechanisms

Municipalities are obliged to develop a system of delegation of powers as outlined in both the Local Government Municipal Structures Act (1998) and the Municipal Systems Act (2000). In compliance with this provision the District Municipalitiy has developed and adopted its system of delegation of powers.

1.26 Integrated Institutional Programme

Institutional

Broadly speaking the Pixley District Municipality acts as a link at district level between the local authorities, provincial and national government in all matters such as governance, planning, service delivery and project management. Therefore one of the primary purposes for the establishment of the Pixley District Municipality is to have an institutional machinery for enhancing coordination of planning and implementation of projects at local level.

Purpose

From the above, and in our capacity as a district municipality, the purpose of our integrated institutional plan/ programme is to:

- Ensure that a consistent and integrated set of measures for institutional transformation is adopted by council
- Ensure that integrated implementation occurs in the municipality, thereby contributing to a close planning implementation link.
- Provide institutional set up that will indicate the magnitude of our preparedness for effective implementation of the IDP.

1.26.1 Administration

Personnel:

The current staffing level shows that the municipality has 251 employees. The staff complement consists of managers, administrative personnel, technicians and labourers as shown in the table below:

Table 7: Staffing Level as at January2008

Category	**Number of employees**
Management	6
Administration	164
Artisans (Technicians) Roads	42
Labourers	26
Other: • Security personnel • Radio operators	 8 5
Total	**251**

Source: PKS IDP 2003-2005

1.26.2 Administrative- Structure

The structure of the municipality consists of the office of Municipal Maneger and the following departments as shown in the organogram below:

⇨ Department of Internal Audit
⇨ Department of Shared Services
⇨ Department of Finance and Administration
⇨ Department of Development and LED
⇨ Departmetn of Infrastructure and Technical Services
⇨ Department of support and social services

1.27 Office of the Municipal Manager

Functions:

The Municipal Manager is the head of the administration and it is responsible for the formation and development of an economical, effective, efficient and accountable administration which is equiped to implement the integrated development plan, opertes within the municipality's performance management system and is responsive to the needs of the local community to participate in municipal affairs. The Municipal Manager is the accountable officer and

therefore needs to account for all income and expenditure of the municipality, all assets and the discharges of liabilities of the municipality, compliance with legislative requirements as well as the appointment and management of staff. The Municipal Manager is furthermore responsible for:

- The management of communication between Councillors and officials
- The handling of all matters pertaining to disaster management
- The rendering of financial management services
- The rendering of corporate service to the entire orgainzationj
- The initiation and management of developmental programmes
- The handling of risks threatening environmental programmes
- The rendering of planning and implementation management support services to local municipalities.

In support of the Council's developmental reslponsibilities as mentioned earlier, the main purpose of the office of the Municipal Manager is to enhance an integrated sustainable and equitable social and economical development of the demarcated area through the delivery of municipal services.

1.28 Departments

Generally speaking, the functions of the departments are jointly aimed at:

⇨ Safe-guarding public interest
⇨ Planning for future development of all human settlement in the district,
⇨ Ensuring local econimic development
⇨ Ensuring efficient use of natural resources.
⇨ Developing and providing basic services for all the citizens of the district.

The functions of the departmments which are complementary to one another are as follows:

Internal Audit

Purpose:
To evaluate the internal control of the municipalities

Functions:

- To facilitate the process of the risk assessment
- To prepare a three year strategic plan and the internal audit program for each of the financial year
- To evaluates and contributes to improvement of:
  - ⇨ Risk management Control
  - ⇨ Governance system
- Advise the accounting officer and report to the audit committee on the implementation of the internal audit plan and matters relating to:
  - ⇨ Internal audit
  - ⇨ Internal controls
  - ⇨ Accounting procedures and practices
  - ⇨ Risk and risk management
  - ⇨ Performance management

- ⇨ Loss control
- ⇨ Compliance with relevant Act

Shared Services

Purpose:

- To improve the performance of Local Government.
- To rationalize the support services that will be given to municipalities.
- Municipalities would share expertise and skills in planning, project management, financial management etc.
- To provide hands on support to municipalities in the short to medium term.

Functions:

- Coordination of the District Intergovernmental Relation Forums (DIGRF).
- Facilitate the Municipal Manager's Forum.
- Draft and facilitate IDPs.
- Facilitate IDP representative forums.
- Monitoring and implementation of Infrastructural Projects.
- Do feasibility studies
- Do Engineering design
- Facilitate Performance Management System
- Facilitate Human Resource Management
- Development of website and management of IT system
- Audit and Financial Management to be performed by Internal Audit Department

Department of Finance

Purpose:

- To render and manage financial services
- To render corporate services to the entire organisation

Division: Finance

Functions:

- The collection of income
- The rendering of support regarding local authorities finances
- The rendering financial information system service
- The handling of budget control service

Division: Income Collection

Purpose:

- To collect income for the District Council

Functions:

- The registration of businesses
- The collection of levies from businesses

- The handling of enquiries from businesses
- The compilation of account information
- The cancellation of irrecoverable levies

Division: Local Authorities

Purpose:
- To render support to local authorities regarding financial matters

Functions:
- The provisioning of training to local authorities regarding financial procedures
- The assisting of local authorities with financial procedures/ systems
- The introduction of proper financial systems

Division: Financial Information System

Purpose:
- To render a financial information system service

Functions:
- The loading of new programmes on the computer system
- The rendering of an information technology service
- The handling of network problems
- The updating of changes on personnel's salaries.
- The printing of cheques
- The provisioning of financial related information when necessary

Division: Budget Control

Purpose:
- To promote budget control services

Functions:
- The facilitation of the budget compilation process
- The controlling of the expenditure of the District Municipality
- The rendering of advice on budgetary issues
- The recording of expenditure

Department: Support and Social Services

Purpose:
- To render auxiliary support services

Functions:
- The rendering of secretarial services

- The provision of administrative support services
- The handling of provision of administrative matters
- The provision of logistical services viz
  - Registry services
  - Typing services
  - Cleaning/ food services
  - Maintenance services
  - Switchboard/ reception services
  - Establishment and management of ICT

Division: Human Resources Management

Purpose:
- To handle human resources management matters

Functions:
- The handling of recruitment and appointment matters
- The administration of conditions of matters
- The maintaining of personnel records and staff establishments
- The implementation of policies relating to human resources management

Department of Development and LED in the office of Municipal Manager

Purpose:
- To manage the implementation of LED strategies within the IDP
- To manage and monitor LED projects

Division: LED

Purpose:
- To initiate and manage development programmes

Functions:
- The promotion of tourism and local economic development within the boundaries of the District Municipality
- Formulation of LED component of the IDP
- Provide support to local municipalities to ensure alignment of LED to local IDP's
- Manage, co-ordinate and administer all LED projects identified in the IDP
- C0-ordinating and alignment of LED programmes in the district across all spheres of government and other stakeholders
- Facilitating integration and co-ordination of all LED programmes with that of the LED agency
- Tourism development and marketing, agriculture, heritage, environment, cooperatives and SMME development

Division: Environmental Health

Purpose:

- To handle risk threatening environmental health

Functions:

- The performing of environmental health activities
- The performing of food control
- The execution of inspections pertaining to environmental health
- The effecting of pest control

Division: Disaster Management

Purpose:

- To handle all matters pertaining to disaster management

Functions:

- The prevention of possible disasters
- The formulation of disaster management plans and policies
- The rapid and effective response to disaster and post disaster recovery
- The rendering of and efficient and effective radio service (NEAR SYSTEM)

Division: Housing

Purpose:

- To plan and manage development of human settlements in the region

Functions:

- Within the IDP and within housing policy to ensure, on a progressive basis, that conditions not conducive to the health and safety are prevented or removed
- Provide services i.e. water, sanitation, electricity, roads, storm water drainage and transport
- Identify and designate land for housing development
- Promote the resolution of housing conflicts arising in the housing development process
- Provide bulk engineering services
- Plan and manage land use and development (amentities, protect values and functionality)
- Prepare local housing sector plans:
  - Informed by proven need (detailed waiting list system)
  - Create environment attracting the construction of houses
  - Security of tenure/tenure upgrade
- Act as developer according to Prefential Procurement Policy
- Allocation of sites to beneficiaries
- Assist in the completion of subsidy application forms

Department: Technical and Developmental Services

Division: Technical Services

Purpose:

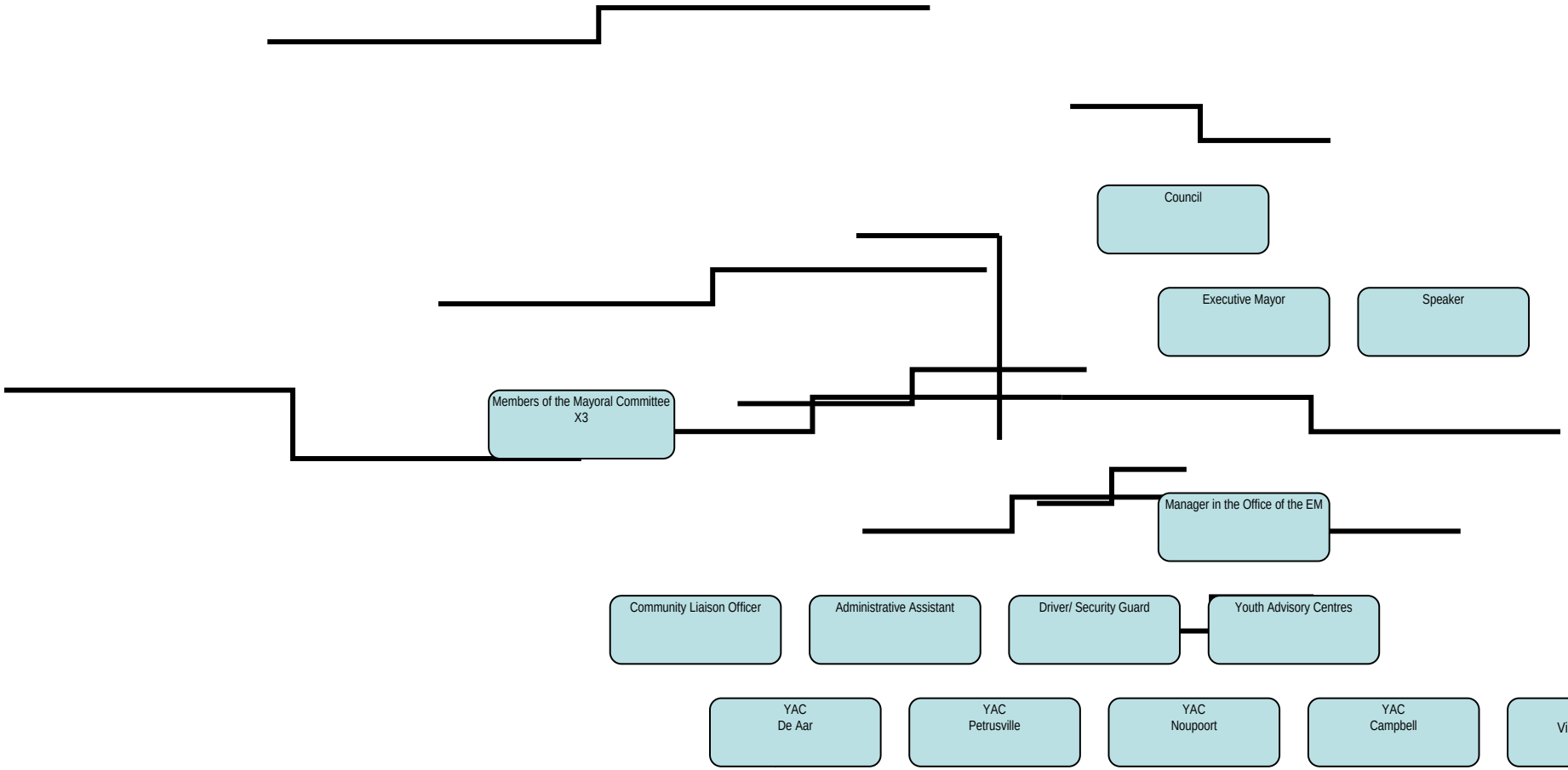
- To promote a safe road network to the road users by means of an effective road maintenance and construction within the District Municipal area.

Functions:

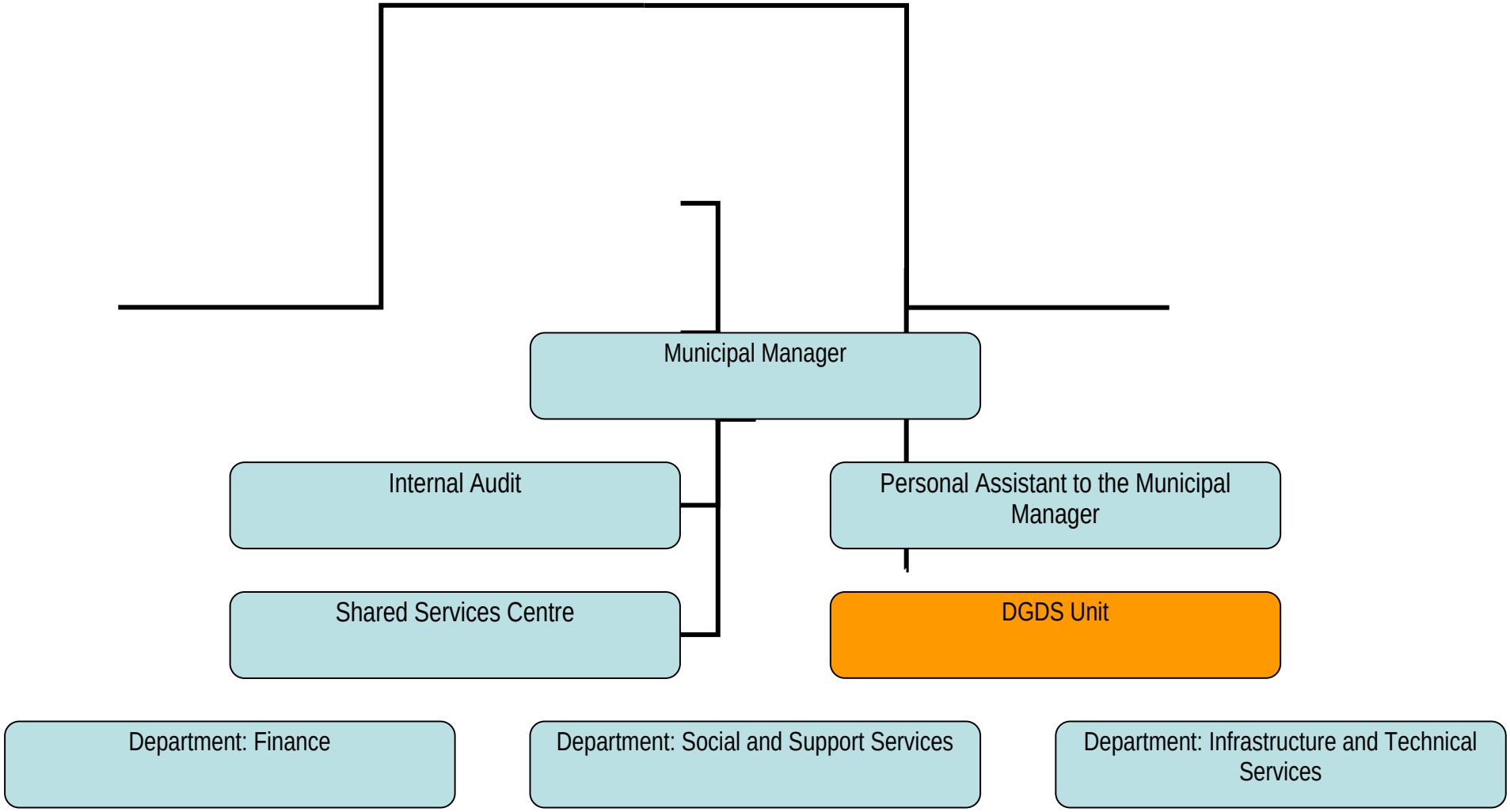
- Do maintenance work as an agent for the Department of Transport, Roads and Public Works according to agreements.
- Maintenance of 8051km gravel roads
- Do normal maintenance which include blading, routine road maintenance and light construction works
- Plant maintenance

1.29 Proposed Organisational Structure

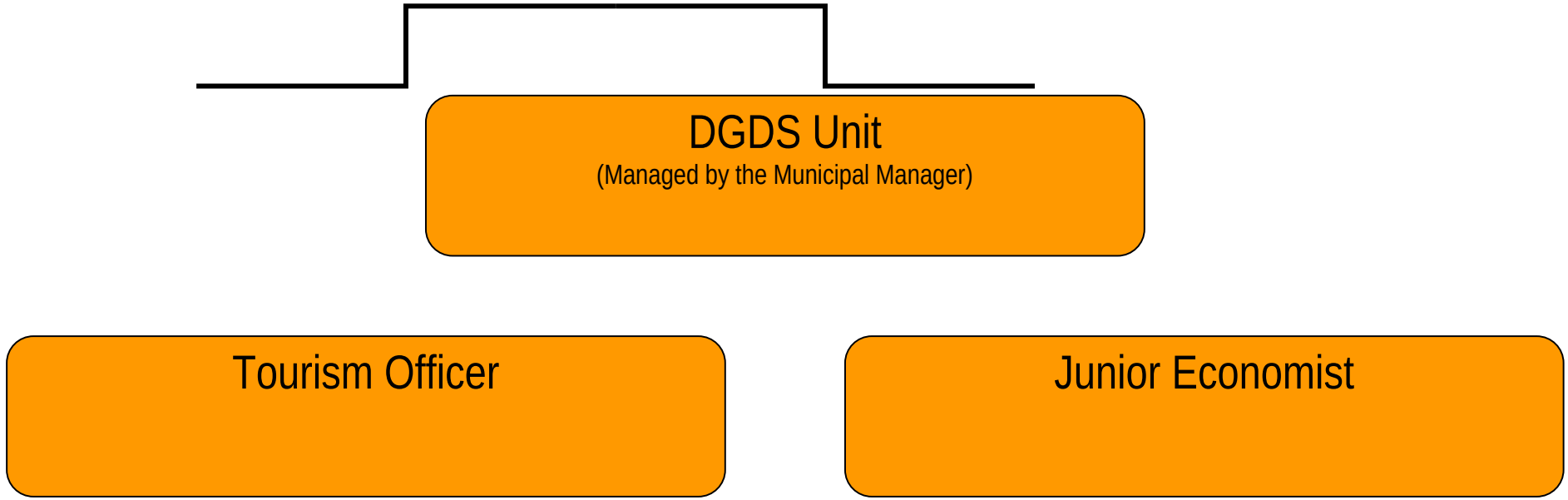
Office of the Executive Mayor



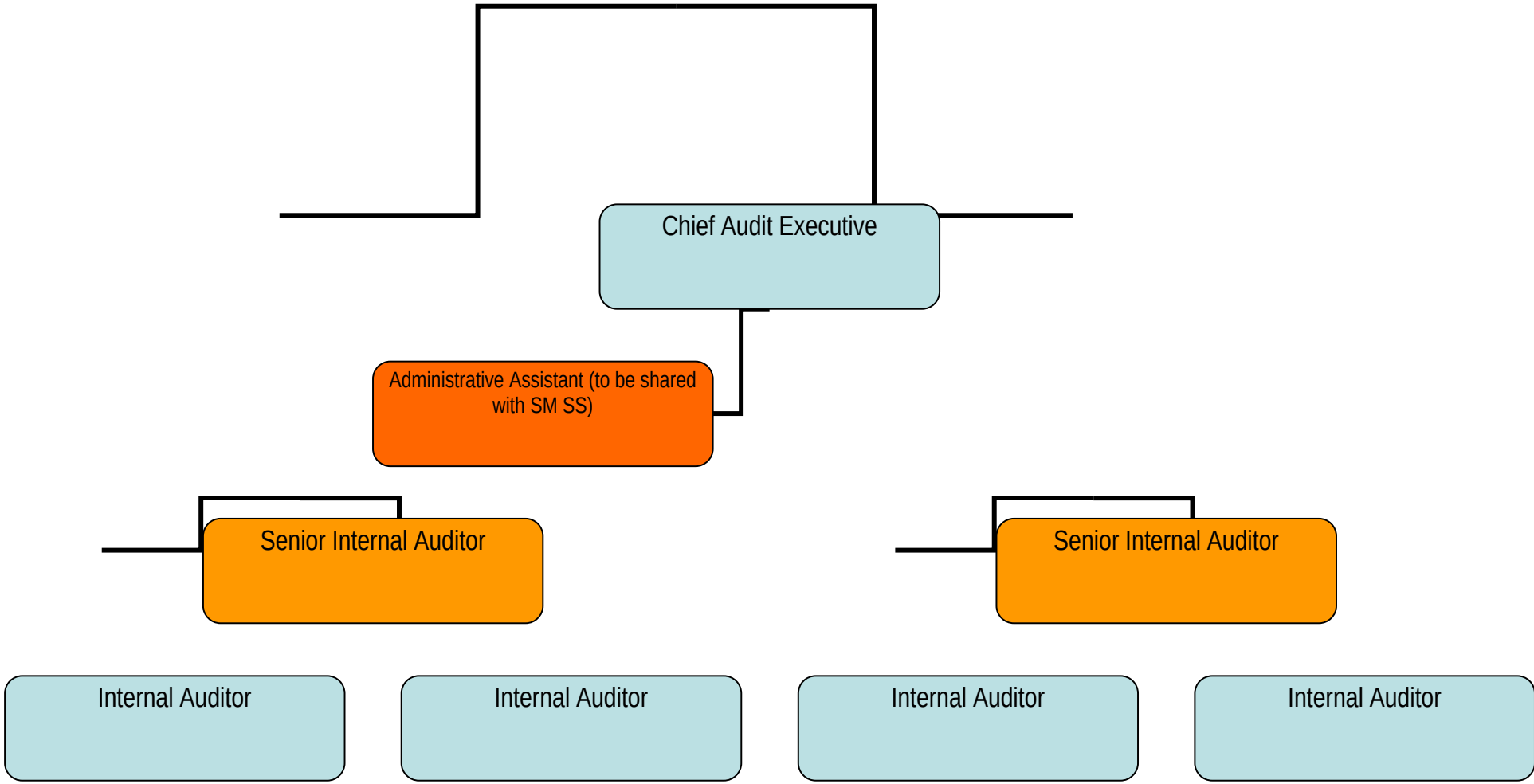
Office of the Municipal Manager


Municipal Manager
Internal Audit
Personal Assistant to the Municipal Manager
Shared Services Centre
DGDS Unit
Department: Finance
Department: Social and Support Services
Department: Infrastructure and Technical Services

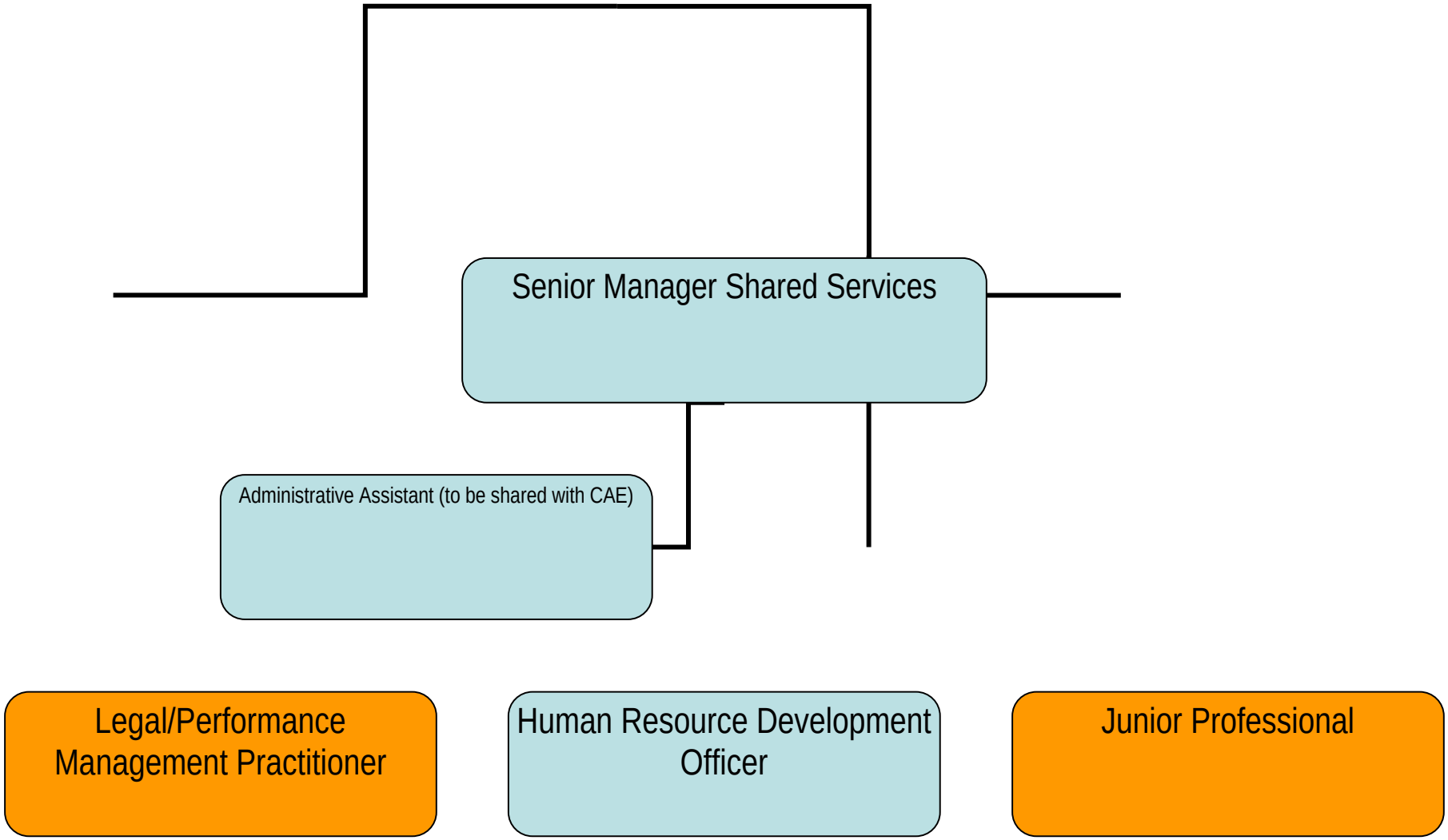
Office of the Municipal Manager: DGDS Unit



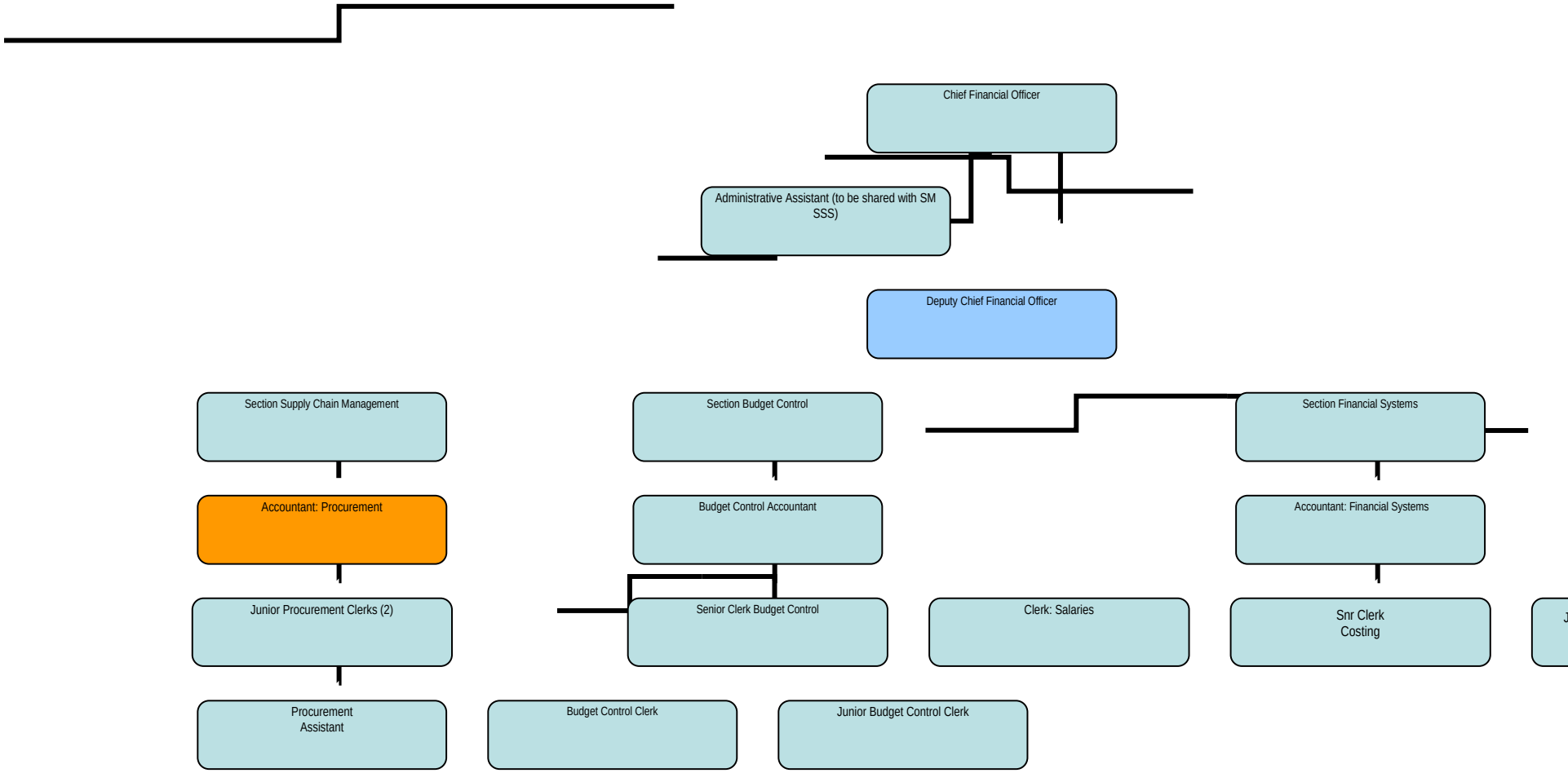
Internal Audit


Chief Audit Executive
Administrative Assistant (to be shared with SM SS)
Senior Internal Auditor
Senior Internal Auditor
Internal Auditor
Internal Auditor
Internal Auditor
Internal Auditor

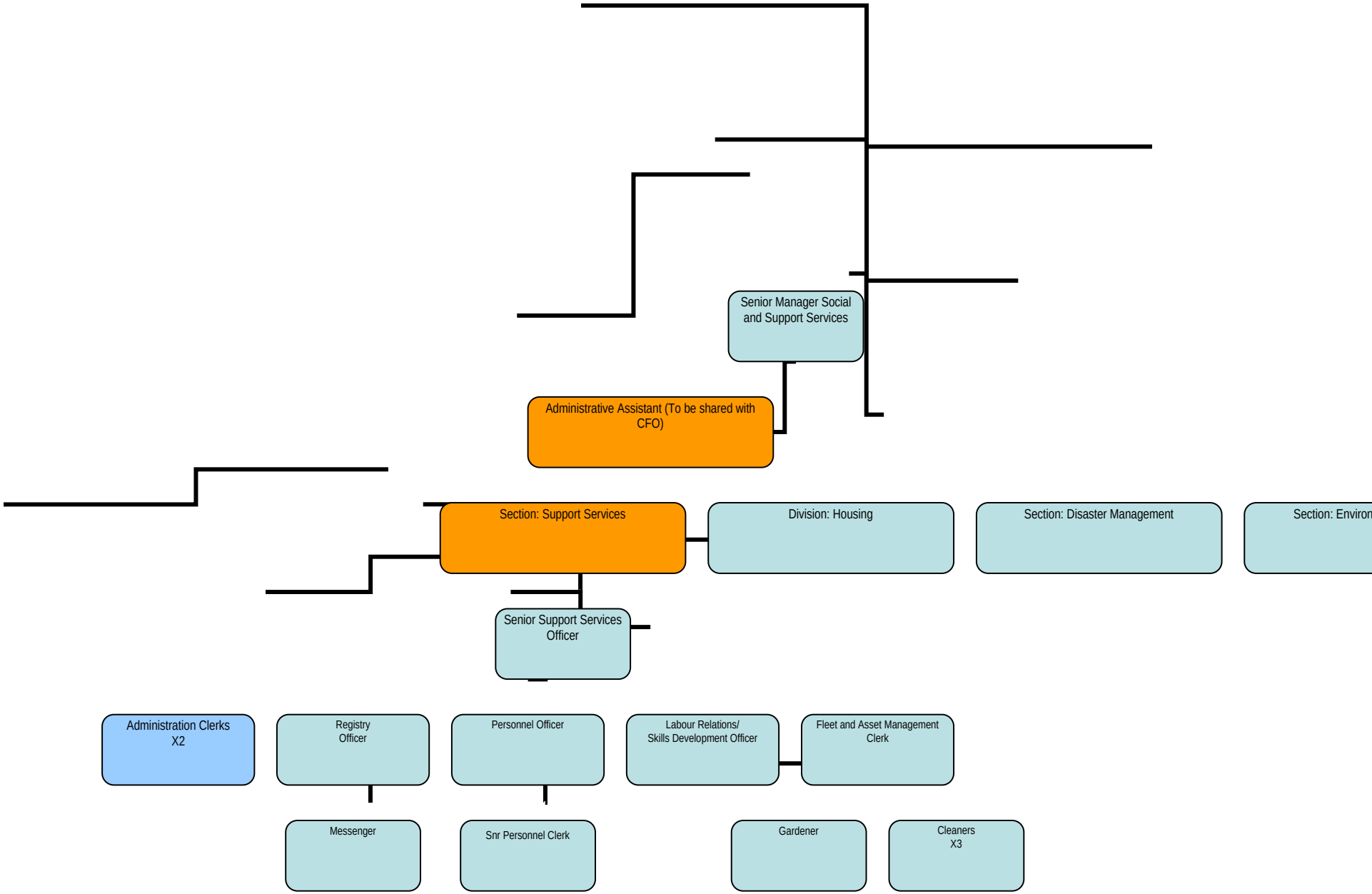
Shared Services


Senior Manager Shared Services
Administrative Assistant (to be shared with CAE)
Legal/Performance Management Practitioner
Human Resource Development Officer
Junior Professional

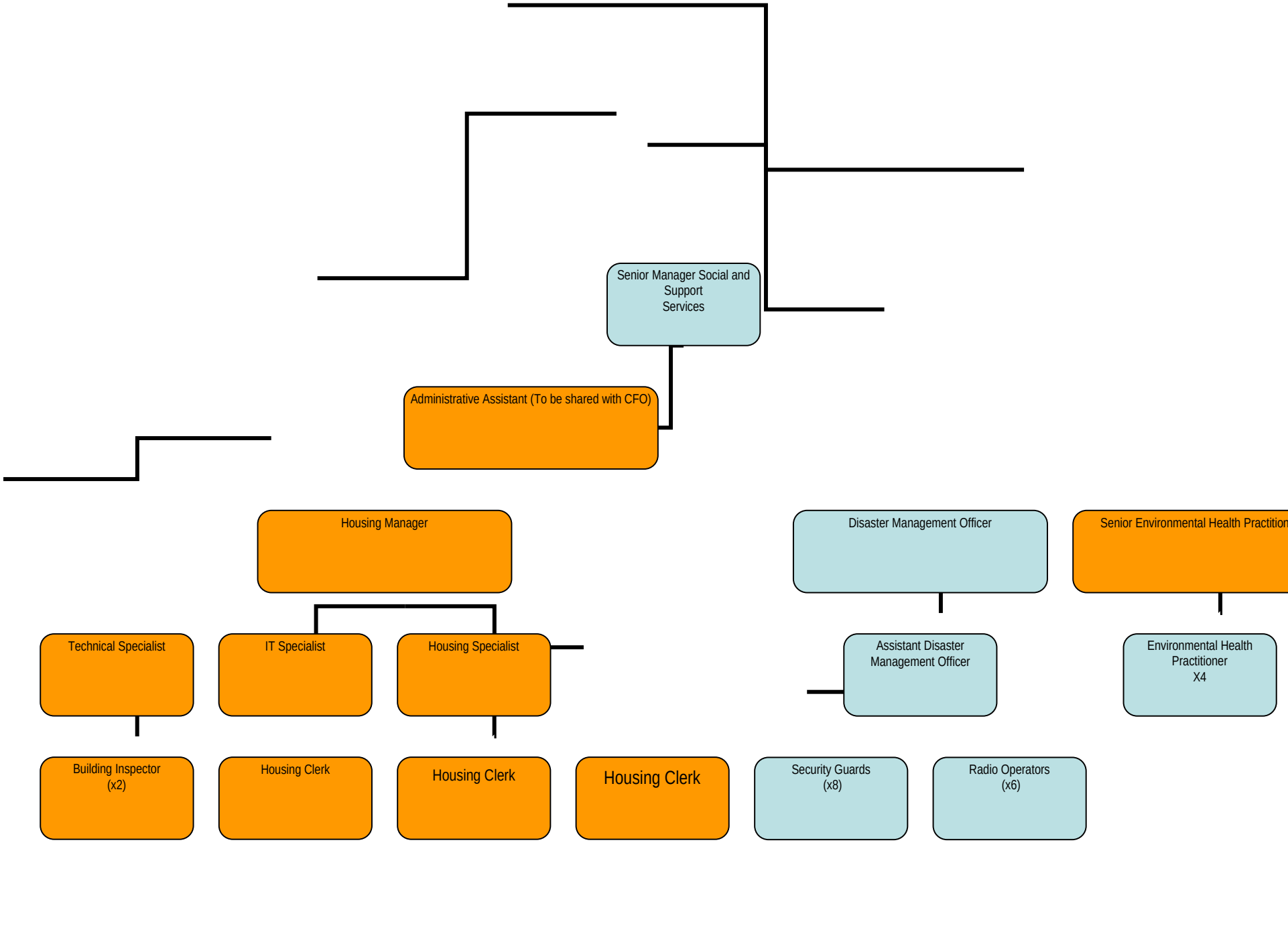
Department: Finance



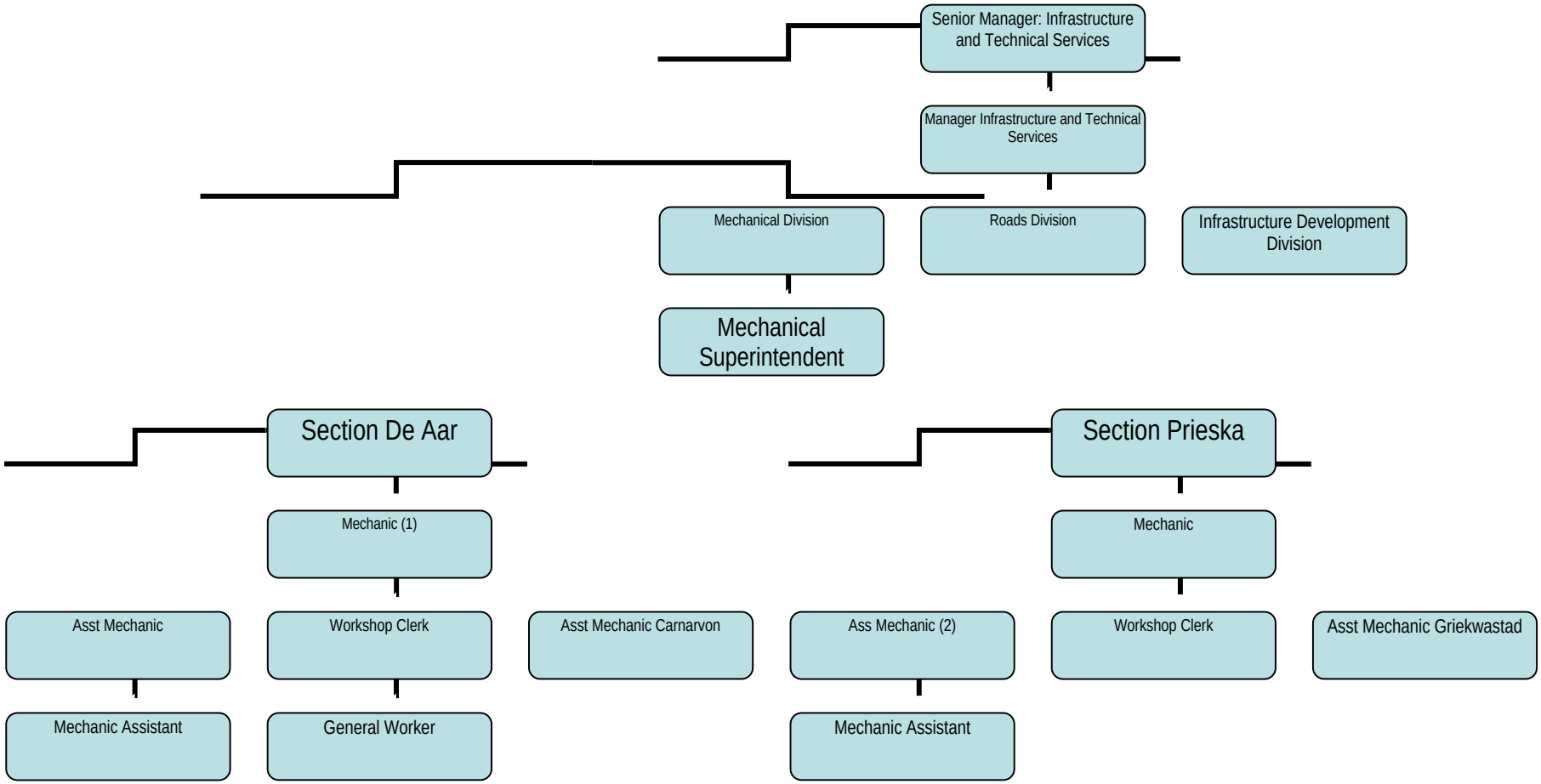
Department Social and Support Services


Senior Manager Social and Support Services
Administrative Assistant (To be shared with CFO)
Section: Support Services
Division: Housing
Section: Disaster Management
Section: Environ
Senior Support Services Officer
Administration Clerks X2
Registry Officer
Personnel Officer
Labour Relations/ Skills Development Officer
Fleet and Asset Management Clerk
Messenger
Snr Personnel Clerk
Gardener
Cleaners X3

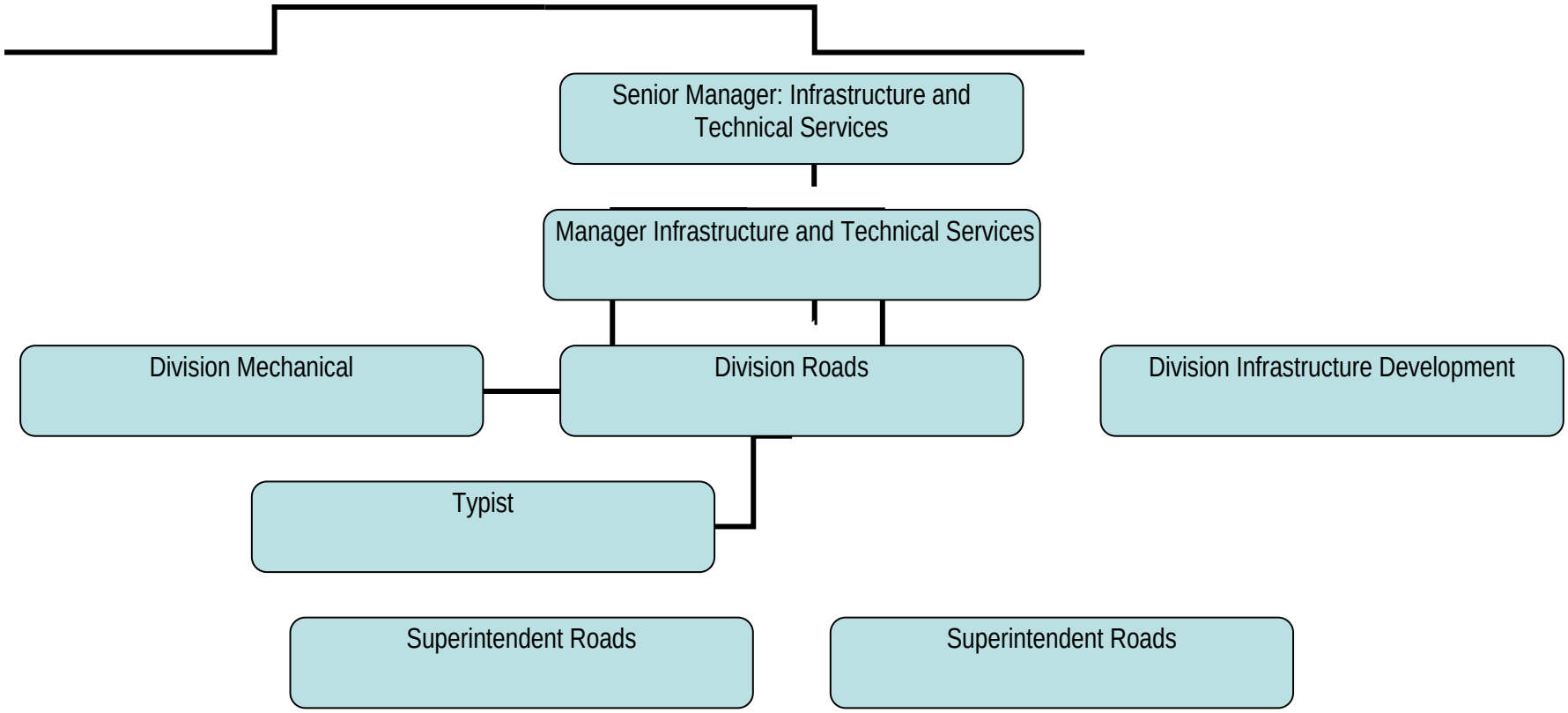
Department Social and Support Services


Senior Manager Social and Support Services
Administrative Assistant (To be shared with CFO)
Housing Manager
Disaster Management Officer
Senior Environmental Health Practition
Technical Specialist
IT Specialist
Housing Specialist
Assistant Disaster Management Officer
Environmental Health Practitioner X4
Building Inspector (x2)
Housing Clerk
Housing Clerk
Housing Clerk
Security Guards (x8)
Radio Operators (x6)

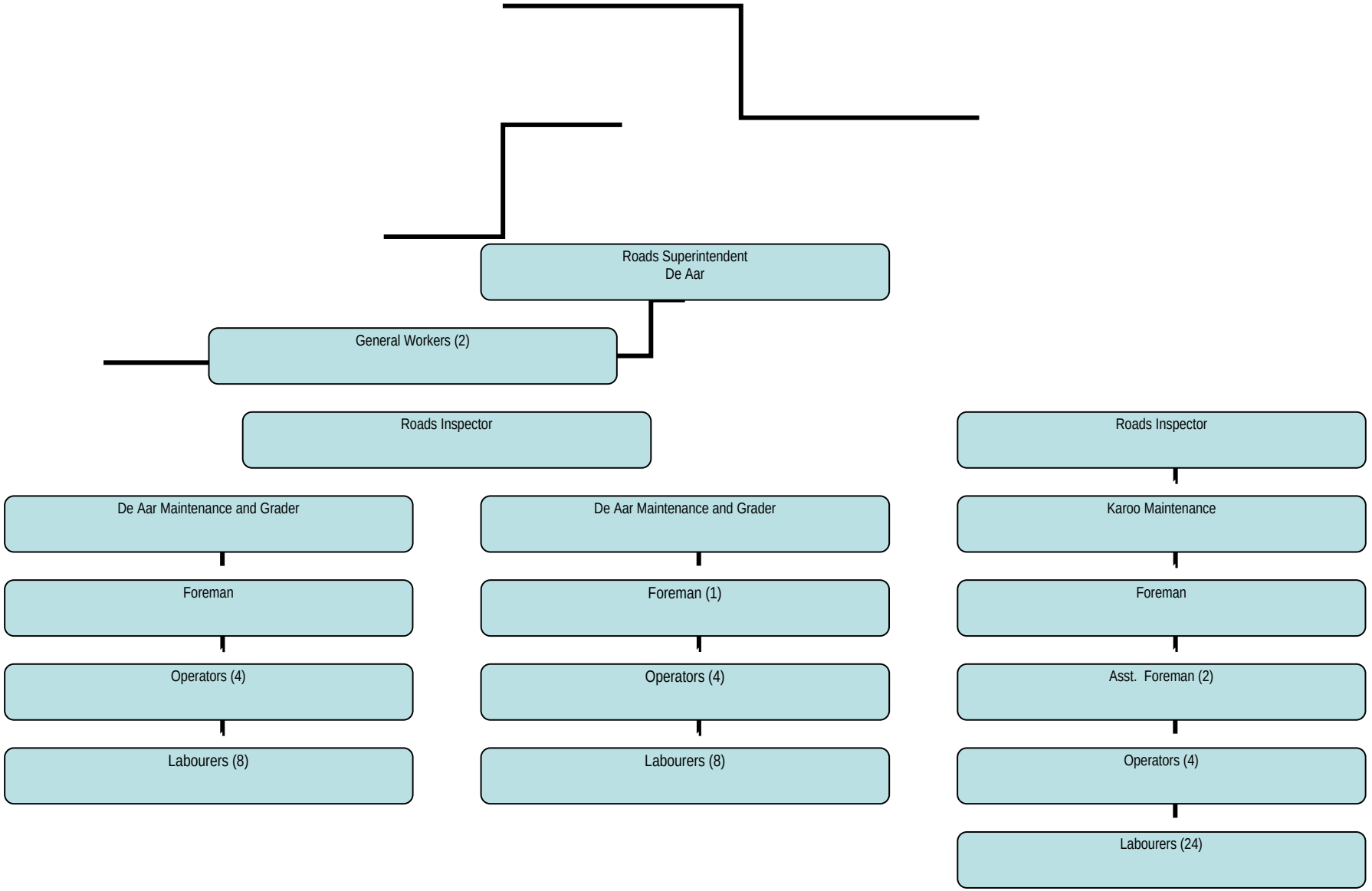
Department Infrastructure and Technical Services



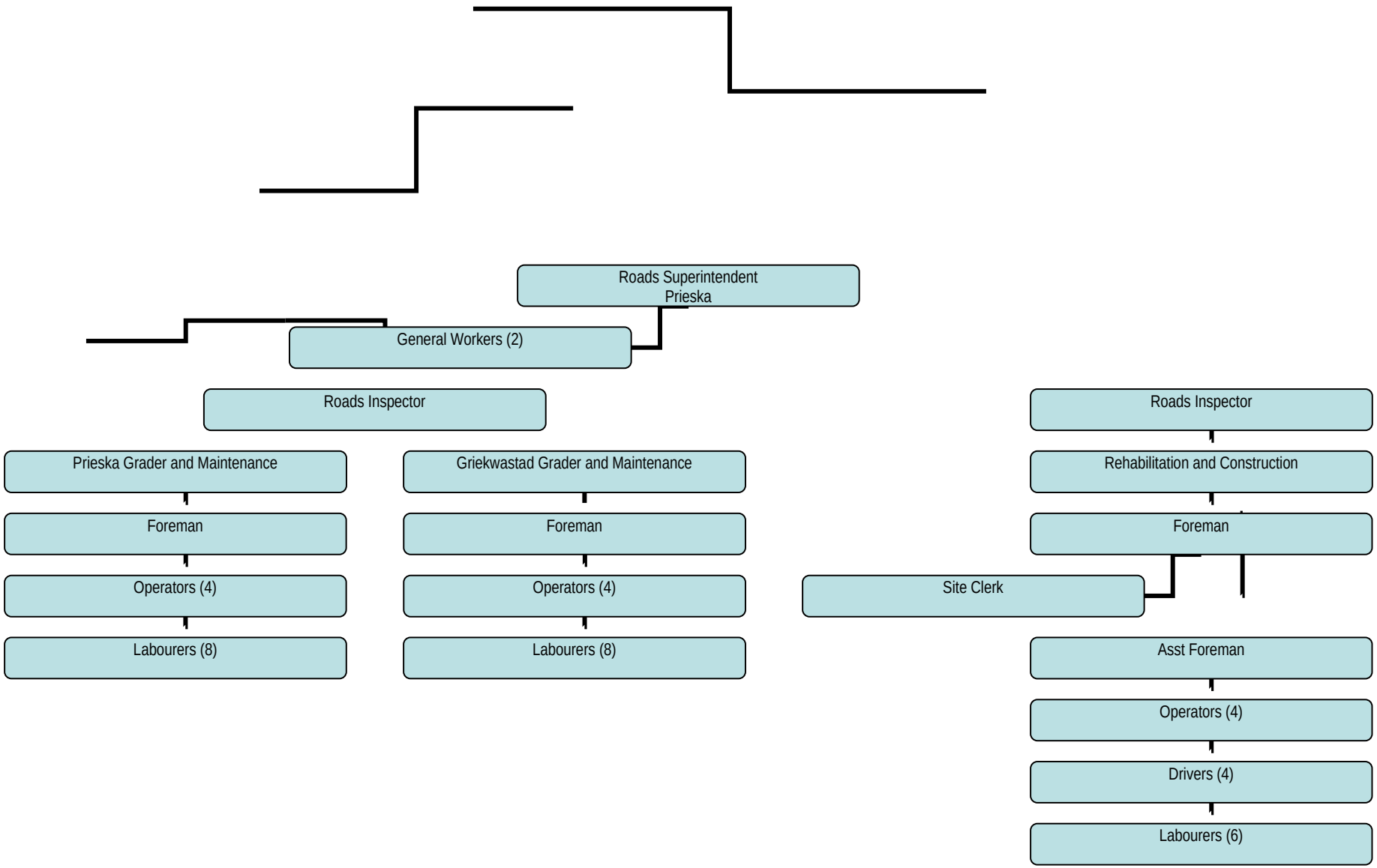
Division Roads



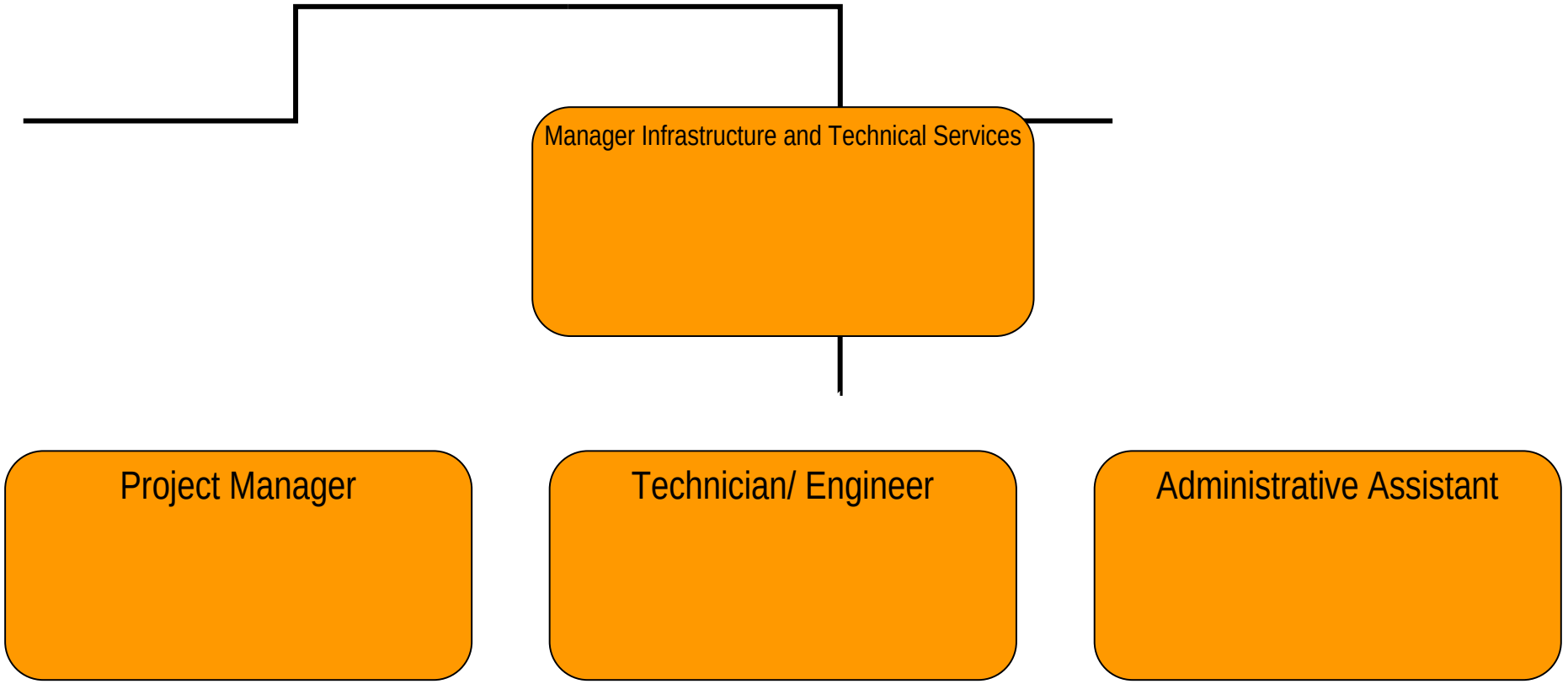
Division Roads: De Aar


Roads Superintendent
De Aar
General Workers (2)
Roads Inspector
De Aar Maintenance and Grader
Foreman
Operators (4)
Labourers (8)
De Aar Maintenance and Grader
Foreman (1)
Operators (4)
Labourers (8)
Roads Inspector
Karoo Maintenance
Foreman
Asst. Foreman (2)
Operators (4)
Labourers (24)

Division Roads: Prieska


Roads Superintendent
Prieska
General Workers (2)
Roads Inspector
Prieska Grader and Maintenance
Foreman
Operators (4)
Labourers (8)
Griekwastad Grader and Maintenance
Foreman
Operators (4)
Labourers (8)
Roads Inspector
Rehabilitation and Construction
Foreman
Site Clerk
Asst Foreman
Operators (4)
Drivers (4)
Labourers (6)

Division Infrastructure



CHAPTER 2 : STATUS QUO

2. EXISTING FEATURES

2.1 Topography

The topography of Pixley Ka Seme region is related to the geology and relief with an altitude that ranges between 1000 to 1800m above sea level. Landforms associated with plains, hills and lowlands cover approximately 80% of the region. Plains have slopes of less than 5° (8%) and result in a gradual change of climatic conditions. Ridges have slopes of more than 5° and more variable climatic conditions.

The ridges and escarpment have significant potential in terms of aesthetic appeal as well as habitat for rare and endangered plants and animals. These features occur mainly in the north, and on the borders of the region.

The general drainage pattern of the region is from the southeast to the north and northwest. The Orange and Vaal rivers are the primary drainage channels in the area to which many other streams and rivers link to.

Issues

The following issues were identified:

- Ridges and koppies must be conserved and kept clear of transformation or development of any kind.
- A non-development buffer of 50m is proposed around areas steepier than 5° (1 in 11).
- Include the buffers in local IDP's for planning purposes.

2.2 Flood Lines:

In the order of 30% of plot in informal settlements in particular are subject to flooding. This suggests that proper flood lines calculations should be done for all streams prior to detailed lay-out plans in urban areas. Engineering calculations, however, revealed 1 in 50 flood line remains within river banks in almost all instances.

2.3 Geology:

The geology is characterized by horizons of dolerite rocks. The dominant lithological units are covered in the Spatial development Framework (SDF) and Integrated Environmental Management Programme. According to these documents dorite covers 36% of the region followed by tillite (12%). The rock types, sand, andesite and quartzite cover between 7% and 5% of the region. The rest of the rock types cover less than 4%.

Issues

Identified issues are:

- The northern part of the district, particularly Siyancuma and District Municipal area host some dolomitic formations which should be taken into account with any new developments.
- Dolerites are expansive and may cause damage to foundations.
- Mudstones are highly dispersive and they cause formation of deep dongas.
- Shale rocks are highly erodable.
- Sands are to loose for normal foundation.

2.4 Climate:

The district lies in the upper region of the karoo and experiences moderate to hot summers. The average annual maximum temperature is 40°C, while the average annual minimum temperature is -10°C. Winters are cold and dry with moderate frost occurring at night. The coldest months are June and July. The area is located in a summer rainfall region. Rain occurs predominantly in the form of thunderstorms and 60% of the average annual rainfall occurs between October and April. The mean annual rainfall ranges from 130mm to 300mm per year. The district is battered by severe droughts and often experiences heavy rainfalls with the possibility of flooding. Humidity which is the amount of moisture in the atmosphere is only 43%.

Issues

Issues identified are:

- Low rainfalls and frost limit agricultural potential.
- Access to irrigation water will be crucial for any cultivation to occur due to the overall arid conditions and the risk of wilting under the influence of very high temperatures, while frost limits the type of crops than can be cultivated in the region.
- The distribution of cultivated fields along the major perennial rivers and in association with extensive irrigation schemes supports this stement.

2.5 Soil conditions:

The top of the rocky and hills areas are caved sandstone with a shallow covering of loose sandy soil. The flatter slopes and undulating territory have a deeper layer of loose sandy top soil underlain either by decomposed shales and mudstones or by sandstones. The shales decompose to clays. In many instances, especially where underground drainage is bad, the clay is decomposed to montmorillirite clay mineral. These clay are notoriously known for their expansive properties which cause cracking in buildings. The sandstones usually decompose to a dense clayey sand. In low laying areas transported soils (usually clay) are found. Because of bad drainage the clays are expansive. Many cracked buildings are noted in all the urban areas. The erosion gullies are probably caused, to a certain extent, by overgrazing. The so-called escort soils which are clays with an excess of sodium cations have dispersive properties. The dispersive properties usually lead to rapid erosion in rain water (i.e. water with a low dissolved solids content). The latter clay also require special engineering treatment when they are to be used in down walls or roads embankments.

The four broad soil patterns and the distribution of agriculturally important soils in the region are covered in section 2 of the Integrated Environmental Management Programme of the municipality.

Issues:

- Although the soil potential is high in some areas, land capability takes into account climate as well, and land capability of the region is generally poor.
- This means the land is prone to erosion, degradation and rehabilitates slowly. Veld management and land use policies are therefore crucial.

2.6 Water resources:

There are two rivers of significance that run through the district. They are the Orange river, which forms the northern boundary and the Vaal river, which is to the northwest of the district and which joins the orange river at the southern part of the Siyancuma municipal area.

The utilization of these water resources are being complicated by the following factors:

- The highly intermittent flow of the rivers.
- Weakening water quality of the available resources, which approaches the safety limit for good health.
- The wide variety of consumers within the system, varying from those (commercial/progressive farmers) who need a high degree of assurance for continuous supply, to those who can adopt to various levels of supply.
- Water pollution

2.7 Ground water:

As noted in the Integrated Environmental Management Framework, the potential for exploitation of groundwater exist and there are a number of existing boreholes. In general there are a number of obstacles for the realization of the full potential of groundwater resources. These are:

- Ignorance on the development and management of groundwater.
- A lack of reliable hydrological and geo-hydrological information.
- A lack of enterprise to develop groundwater resources.
- Reluctance to use an invisible resource.
- The geological formation of aquifers that is usually far below the surface.
- Groundwater pollution.
- Financial constraints.

These problems can be overcome by:

- An information programme and more financial assistance;
- Effective water resource management education;
- Water resource management education;
- Community participation in water resource management programme.
- Establishment of land fill site specification.

2.8 Environmental Aspects:

The environmental aspects of the region are fully described in the Integrated Environmental Management Programme and the Spatial Development Framework.

It is summarized as follows:

2.8.1 Hydrology:

Erosion gullies:

Accelerated erosion is not a striking landscape feature in the region. However there are few areas (hilly and rocky areas) where farms have been threatened by erosion gullies.

Sedimentation:

The deposition of sediment resulting from erosion is minimal in the stream courses which are characterized by severe scour, the base level of which is generally the bedrock. Dams are also not seriously affected by sedimentation.

2.8.2 Water quality:

The Environmental Health Officers of the District Municipality conduct water sampling on a monthly basis at the raw water supply intake and at the discharge from the waste stabilization ponds. From the monthly samples and DWAF reports the following sources have been identified as the most likely contributors to poor water quality:

- Sewerage pollution;
- Intensive agricultural use of fertilizers and pesticides;
- Industrial wastes;
- Mining and soil erosion;
- Lack of education;
- Waste disposal sites in urban areas.
- Littering

Typical pollutants from the agricultural sector include high salt loads, pesticides and nitrates and phosphates from fertilizers. All these contribute to algal growth and lead to eutrophication of water courses and heightened risk of human health of ingested. There was abundant evidence of eutrophication in the two main rivers. The two main rivers (Orange and Vaal rivers) are degraded and polluted.

2.9 Air quality:

Air quality monitoring has not been conducted in the region, therefore it would be difficult to determine the extent to which air is polluted.

Issues:

The most likely local source of air pollution are:

- Dust storms
- Burning waste at the refuse disposal sites
- Household burning coal
- Mining activities – dust and processing plants
- Medical facilities – coal powered heating systems and/or incinerators
- Agricultural areas – burning of crop residues, veld management or accidental fires

Strategies:

- Education of officials regarding the legal requirements of air control legislation.
- The District and Local Municipalities must designate air quality officers to be responsible for co-ordinating matters pertaining to air quality management.

- Airs quality officers must co-ordinate their activities in such a manner as may be set out in the national framework as prescribed by the Minister.

Effects of air pollution

- Respiratory disease
- Increase in greenhouse effect
- Acid rain
- Undesirable living environment

Cultural and historical sites:

This aspect of the district is fully described in the Integrated Environmental Management Programme. It is summarized as follows:

The available literature shows that the region is richly endowed within cultural and heritage sites. Rock Art is found throughout the area with especially good examples in the Thembelihle municipal area. These rock paintings should be conserved. Various battle grounds and cemeteries dating the Anglo-Boer War are also found in the region.

In and around the towns are several buildings with particular environmental, architectural or historical value which form part of the national heritage. A ground survey conducted shows that the general condition of some buildings is not satisfactory and are in some desperate need for rehabilitation. As these buildings play a vital role in the tourism conservation and preservation of them is recommended as one way or the other, spill-off effect from such planning practice would significantly contribute to the development of tourism industry in the region.

Examples of these cultural and historical sites are shown in the table below

Table 8: Tourism Attraction by Local Municipality

Municipality	Tourism Attraction	Municipality	Tourism Attraction
Emthanjeni		**Kareeberg**	
Britstown	Khoisan rock art Britstown museum Holy Trinity Church Dutch Reformed Church	**Carnavon**	Blikkiesbar, Brickyard andcorbelled houses
De Aar	Garden of Remembrance House of Olive Schreiner Khoisan rock engravings	**Vosburg**	Vosburg Museum Khoisan's implements at Mrs. Van Heerdens's home or Keurfontein.
Hanover	Anglican Church Cenotaph Memorial House of Olive Schreiner	**Van Wyksvlei**	San rock engravings
Thembelihle		**Siyathemba**	
Hopetown	Concentration camp cemetery Battle of Belmont Old wagon bridge	**Prieska**	Fort, memorial garden, Prieska museum, Khoisan rock art and game reserves.
Orania	History museum		
Strydenburg	Aloe garden Cruciform Church Khoisan rack art		
Renosterberg		**Ubuntu**	
Petrusville	Dutch Reformed Church Museum and san rock art	**Victoria-West**	Victoria trading post and Mannetjies Roux Aglican Church, Dutch Reformed Church, museum, print shop and Appolo theatre.
Phillipstown	Khoisan rock engravings Old prison museum Magistrate's office Reformed Church and Teichhouse	**Richmond**	Anglo-Boer war graves, De Oude Dak, Driefontein, Dutch Reformed Church, Mailbox, Old tome horse corn-mill, pedestrian bridge and saddle horse museum
Vanderkloof	Damhuise information centre Museum Vanderkloof dam and game reserves		

Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

2.10 Threatened and unusual species:

As noted in the Integrated Environmental management programme, the only known critically endangered species is the Riverine Rabit. Riverine Areas have already been transformed to a large degree because of impoundments (dams) which in turn reduces the ecological reserve of these systems.

Birds (Avifauna):

No dates available.

Reptiles and Amphibians (Herpetofauna)

This category represents reptiles of which only the Giant Bullfrog is listed as threatened. Bullfrog can potentially occur within pan and seepage areas.

Invertebrates:

No Lepidoptera (butterflies) are listed threatened in the district.

Issues:

Mammals:

- Destruction of habitat
- Insufficient distribution data and poorly compiled EIA's contribute to lack of knowledge.

Birds (Avifauna):

- Power lines
- Destination of habitats
- Indiscriminate use of pesticides
- Intolerance towards raptors
- Insufficient knowledge and habitats destruction.

Invertebrates:

- Insufficient knowledge and habitat destruction

Strategies:

- Conservancy stewardship programme
- Community and farmer awareness.

2.11 Agriculture and Forestry:

Agriculture varies from typical extensive arable use to more intensive irrigation use, particularly along the two main rivers. The farms are intensively cultivated, and the farmers are clearly far more able to control erosion in the small parcels of land under their control than the farmers who are farming more extensively.

Many rural households have no access to wood and forced to purchase paraffin and gas in towns. The most important constraint affecting woodlot (tree plantation) development is the lack of unused land as almost 98% of the land is used for arable and irrigation farming in the region.

2.12 Aesthetic Resource:

The aesthetic problems in the region are concerns the question of waste and litter.

In the rural areas (farms), the absence of a waste collection system has resulted in indiscriminate dumping, particularly along the main roads and in river dongas, which give many of these areas an air of decay and neglect. In the urban areas, the lack of priority given to the prevention of littering and the absence of any attempt to encourage greater civic responsibility in this regard has resulted in degraded conditions with litter strewn throughout the CBD (Central Business District).

Dams:

The main dams in the district are the following:

- Vanderkloof dam
- Gariep dam
- Smart Syndicate dam

Smaller dams include:

- Van Wyksvlei dam
- Boegoeberg dam
- Killowen dam

2.13 Wetlands and springs:

On the basis of available literature, no significant wetlands occur in the district. Many of the non-perennial tributaries and river beds function as wetlands and riparian zones, providing important habitat in the arid region. The physical distribution of the wetlands is discussed in the Integrated Environmental management Programme and the Spatial Development Framework.

With regard to springs, severe grazing pressure and arable farming has destroyed most of the perennial springs which would be abundant in an undisturbed ecosystem in this environment.

2.14 Issues and management of wetlands:

The conservation and management of wetlands in the district are utmost importance. The identified issues and proposed programmes for mitigating the identified issues are discussed in the annexure.

2.15 Considerations for water resource management

Each town, village or settlement in Pixley ka Seme has a unique setting as far as landscape, geology, water occurrence and environment is concerned. However, there are certain aspects of the environment that apply to the whole area. These aspects are therefore discussed here and should be read with each town's separate discussion. For planning purposes, aspects related to water resources and aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal and pollution is distinguished.

Aspects related to water resources that we should take into account when planning or managing water resources are:

- The landscape and rocks or geology of the area.
- The water-bearing properties of the rocks in the area such as success rate, expected yields and water quality.
- Rainfall and recharge which tell us about the sustainability of the resources. Recharge in the area is estimated to be about 10 to 15 mm per annum.
- Groundwater management and protection principles which include protection against depletion of resources or degradation of quality.
- Education and awareness programs for users in aspects such as occurrence, conservation and pollution of groundwater, should be part of water management.

Aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal or other pollution sources that should be taken into account when planning, developing or managing such activities are:

- Rock type or geology, which plays an important role in the feasibility and design of specific sanitation systems for specific settlements and indirectly affects the costs of a sanitation system and if ignored it can affect the health and lifestyle of a community.
- Shallow rock or deep soils occur within the confines of a development.
- The soils are sandy or clayey resulting in excavations collapsing or remaining open and stable.
- The soils and rocks are permeable and absorb water or are impervious so that no water penetrates them.
- A temporary or permanent shallow ground water table exists which serves as a water supply for the population and may be easily polluted.
- The rock formations upon which the development is located contain zones of groundwater storage, which are of regional, national or even only of local importance (aquifers). If the water in them is polluted and becomes unusable or requires treatment before it can be used may result in acute water shortages or high cost implications.
- No development upstream of a water source should be planned without professional advice regarding the potential impact on the resource.

The geohydrological and geotechnical considerations are very site specific and it is recommended that a professional consultant or officer from DWAF be consulted on these aspects.

2.16 Development profile

2.16.1 Demographics

An understanding of the demographic characteristics of the Pixley District is an essential pre-requisite for effective development planning for the region. Therefore the aim of this section is to analyse some demographic statistics of the district so as to provide a base on which development planning within the IDP framework could be made.

2.16.2 The Pixley population & households

The largest municipality in Pixley ka Seme in terms of population is Siyancuma with almost 36 000 people accommodating 22% of the Pixley ka Seme household. The smallest municipality is Renosterberg, which only has 5% of the population and 2 278 households. The District Management Area (DMA) which is mainly farmland accommodates 18% of households (977).

The average Pixley ka Seme household size is 4.52 persons per household, with the DMA areas having the smallest household sizes and Siyancuma the highest. There are approximately 0.72 children aged 6 years and younger per household in Pixley ka Seme and 0.35 persons aged 60 years and older in Pixley households.

Table 9: Population, households and % females

Municipality	Population	Households	Average household size	% Females
Emthanjeni	35 549	7 761	4.58	52%
Kareeberg	9 486	2 258	4.20	53%
NCDMA07	3 175	887	3.58	45%
Renosterberg	9 069	2 278	3.98	51%
Siyancuma	35 809	7 383	4.85	51%
Siyathemba	17 513	4 111	4.26	51%
Thembelihle	13 986	2 988	4.68	51%
Ubuntu	16 376	3 521	4.65	52%
Umsobomvu	23 640	5 083	4.65	52%
Pixley	**164 603**	**36 270**	**4.52**	**51%**

Source: SSA – PKS 2008/09

Figure 1: Pixley ka Seme population 2007

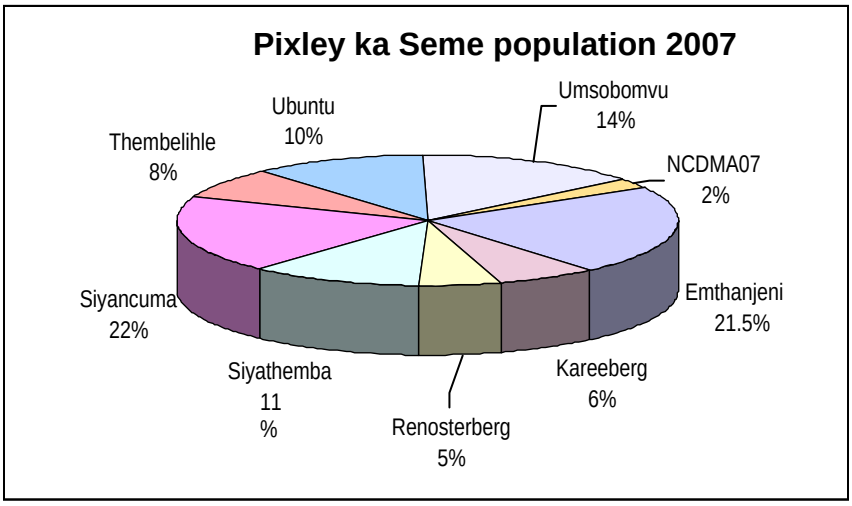
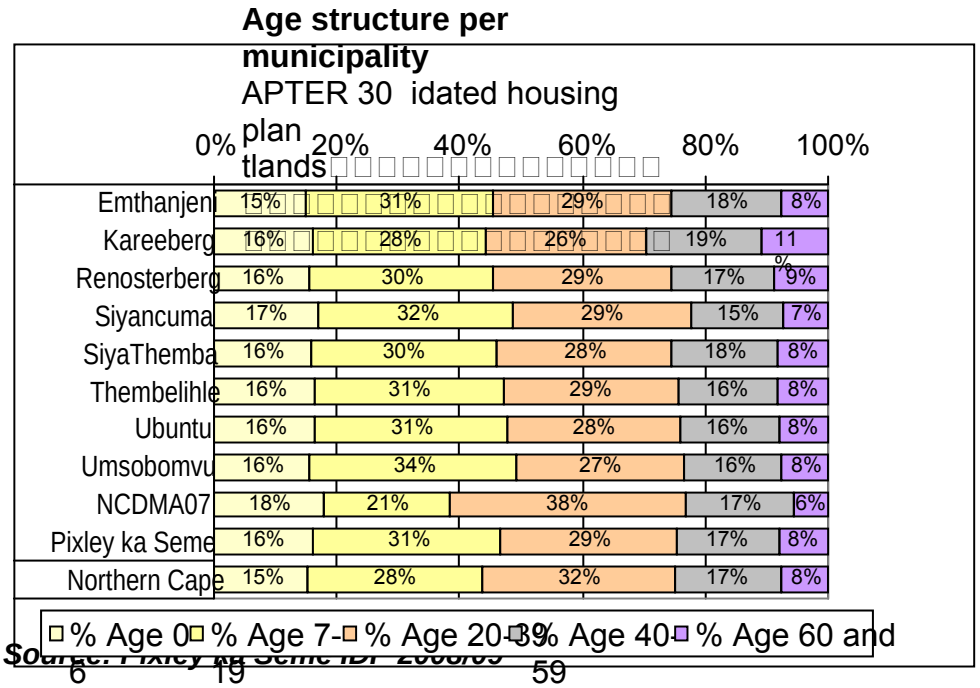


Table 10: Age structure per municipality



Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

The age structure of Pixley's population is similar to that of the Northern Cape. An average of 16% of the Pixley ka Seme population is between 0-6 years old while 8% are 60 years old or older. A further 31% are in the school going age group of 7 to 19 years. The economically active age group of 20 to 59 years old accounts for almost half the population (46%).

The implications of this population structure are a higher demand on the provision of social and physical facilities, like schools, primary health care cenres, etc. in the district

2.16.3 Youth

Identified issues

The following issues were identified in the IDPs of local municipalities regarding the youth:

- Rise in teenage pregnancies
- Lack of sport and recreational centres
- Substance and alcohol abuse
- High unemployment under the youth
- Homelessness
- Street children
- Increasing rate of HIV infections amongst the youth
- High drop out rate at school
- Lack relevant skills that are required for employment
- High levels of domestic violence and rape
- Vulnerability
- Lack of children's homes

Table 11 Household size, number of persons aged 6 and younger and aged 60 and older per household by municipality

Municipality	Average HH size	Average number of 6 years and below per HH	Average number of 60 years and older per HH
Emthanjeni	4.6	0.68	0.35
Kareeberg	4.2	0.67	0.45
Renosterberg	4.0	0.62	0.35
Siyancuma	4.9	0.81	0.36
Siyathemba	4.3	0.68	0.34
Thembelihle	4.7	0.76	0.38
Ubuntu	4.7	0.76	0.37
Umsobomvu	4.7	0.71	0.35
NCDMA07	3.6	0.63	0.20
Pixley	4.5	0.72	0.36

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

The Pixley ka Seme region and the Northern Cape do not have skewed populations with regards to sex ratios. 51% of the Pixley population is female. Kareeberg has the highest female ratio at 53%. Farm households have low females ratios with only 45% of the population being female.

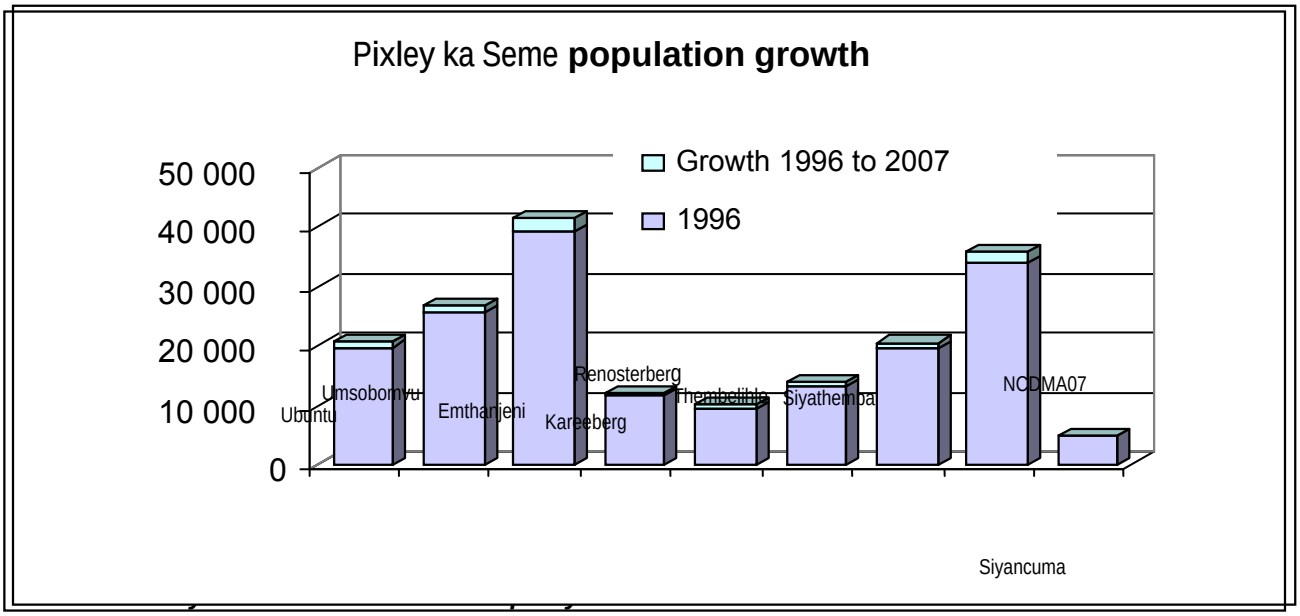
While the population size of the Pixley in 1996 was 176 293, the table below shows that the region's population is declining. The population declined from 176293 in 1996 to 151374 in 2007. According to DAWF's feasibility study for bulk water supply in the region, the population of the region will be approximately 142 862 in seven year's time (2015). A negative growth rate is forecast for the rural population and by 2015 the towns are expected to show a negative growth rate of 1.31%.

Table 12 Population in 1996 and 2007

Municipality	Census 1996	Census 2001	Census 2007	% of district
Emthanjeni	38 985	35 549	32598	21.5 %
Kareeberg	11 482	9 486	7402	5.0 %
Renosterberg	9 430	9 069	8267	6.0 %
Siyathemba	19 360	17 513	16607	11.0 %
Siyancuma	34 028	35 809	29515	19.0 %
Thembelihle	13 268	13 986	17090	11.0 %
Ubuntu	19 712	16 376	11780	8.0 %
Umsobomvu	25 389	23 640	21334	14.1 %
NCDMA07	4 639	6581	6787	4.0 %
Pixley Total	**176 293**	**164603**	**151374**	**100**
Northern Cape TOTAL	840 323	822727	1102200	

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09
DWAF PKS feasibility study for bulk water supply 2007

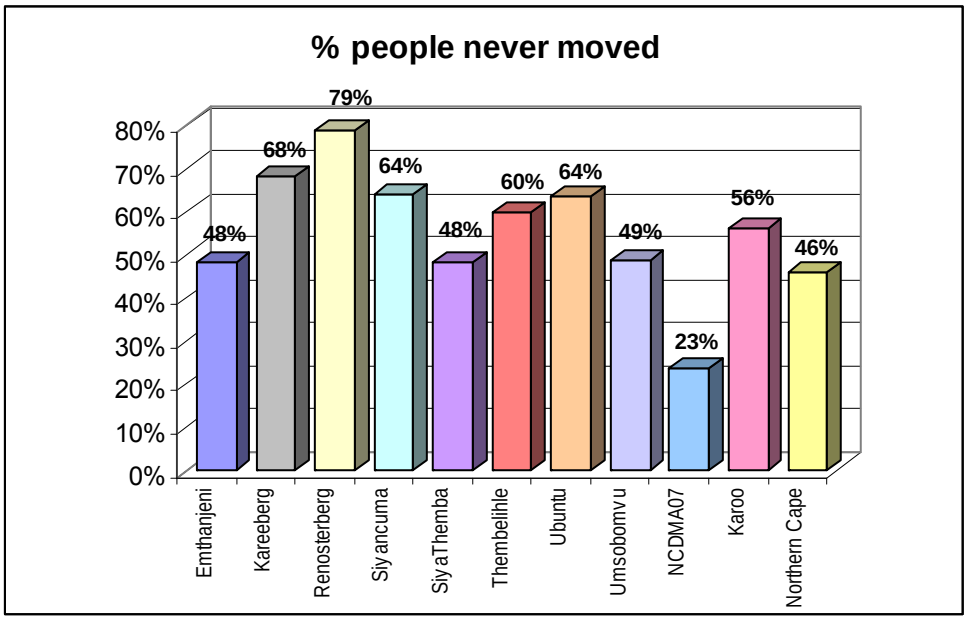
Figure 2: Pixley ka Seme population growth



Notwithstanding the low population growth, the prevalence rate of HIV is a major factor in shaping future population estimates. The HIV/AIDS prevalence rate of Pixley ka Seme in 2001 was only marginally lower than the Northern Cape average (14.4% compared to 15.85% respectively), and well below the South African prevalence rate of 24.5%. Although it is not high by comparison to South Africa it is undoubtedly a factor which will impact on the growth and welfare of the Pixley ka Seme population.

Migration is also a determinant of population growth. Both urban to urban migration and rural to urban migration are relevant in Pixley ka Seme. Rural to urban migration is perceived as the dominant migration type at present. A rapid decline in net migration into the province is predicted. With declining economies, Pixley ka Seme is unlikely to attract immigrants. However, while the Pixley ka Seme population may appear to be stagnant, the towns are growing as rural households move to towns to access better facilities and services. This trend is expected to continue with the access to heath and education facilities as major pull factors.

Figure 3: % of people who never moved



People who never moved from the place in which they currently live

The Pixley ka Seme population is not mobile. Mobility is expressed as percentage of persons who have never moved from the place in which they are currently living. 56% of Pixley ka Seme inhabitants have never moved, compared to 46% of Northern Cape people. Renosterberg inhabitants are the least likely to move while those living in the DMA are the most likely to move.

2.17 Population growth

Because water and sanitation supply is provided at a household level, the growth in households is more relevant than population growth. In many instances the population may be static (i.e. no population growth) BUT the settlement is increasing with the formation of new households. Household size has decreased over time.

The farms have experienced negative population growth and this is predicted to continue. Most of the towns have also experienced low growth rates. Exceptions where higher growth rates have occurred seem to be at: Hopetown, Victoria West, De Aar and Douglas.

It must also be noted that the Enumeration Areas of each of the Censuses are possibly not the same and historical data in the table below should be used for an indication of a trend only.

***Table 13*: Historical population growth 1970 to 1996 Census[1]**

Magisterial district	Total 1996	Total 1991	Total 1985	Total 1980	Total 1970	Growth	Growth 1970-1980 pa	Growth 1980-1985 pa	Growth 1985-1991 pa	Growth 1970-1996 pa	Growth 1980-1996 pa	Growth 1985-1996 pa	Growth 1991-1996 pa
Britstown	**6 066**	**6 523**	**5 528**	**6 346**	**6 853**	**Negative**	-0.77%	-2.72%	2.80%	-0.47%	-0.28%	0.85%	-1.44%
De Aar	**28 880**	**25 438**	**24 772**	**23 319**	**20 324**	**Low**	1.38%	1.22%	0.44%	1.36%	1.35%	1.40%	2.57%
Hanover	**4 747**	**4 399**	**4 564**	**5 222**	**5 358**	**Low**	-0.26%	-2.66%	-0.61%	-0.46%	-0.59%	0.36%	1.53%
Carnarvon	**9 732**	**9 728**	**9 139**	**10 175**	**11 008**	**Low**	-0.78%	-2.12%	1.05%	-0.47%	-0.28%	0.57%	0.01%
Philipstown	**9 436**	**8 799**	**8 117**	**7 690**	**8 743**	**Low**	-1.28%	1.09%	1.35%	0.29%	1.29%	1.38%	1.41%
Hay	**12 062**	**11 104**	**9 887**	**11 456**	**12 228**	**Low**	-0.65%	-2.90%	1.95%	-0.05%	0.32%	1.82%	1.67%
Herbert	**28 855**	**26 316**	**19 143**	**21 567**	**18 278**	**Low**	1.67%	-2.36%	5.45%	1.77%	1.84%	3.80%	1.86%
Hopetown	**13 570**	**11 175**	**10 812**	**11 983**	**10 823**	**Med**	1.02%	-2.04%	0.55%	0.87%	0.78%	2.09%	3.96%
Prieska	**20 171**	**19 185**	**20 344**	**26 144**	**19 931**	**Low**	2.75%	-4.89%	-0.97%	0.05%	-1.61%	-0.08%	1.01%
Colesberg	**17 615**	**15 446**	**13 353**	**15 670**	**14 873**	**Med**	0.52%	-3.15%	2.46%	0.65%	0.73%	2.55%	2.66%
Noupoort	**7 754**	**8 348**	**8 613**	**8 605**	**9 138**	**Negative**	-0.60%	0.02%	-0.52%	-0.63%	-0.65%	-0.95%	-1.47%
Richmond	**6 604**	**6 326**	**6 529**	**7 344**	**7 195**	**Low**	0.21%	-2.33%	-0.53%	-0.33%	-0.66%	0.10%	0.86%
Victoria-West	**14 022**	**11 910**	**10 475**	**10 934**	**11 413**	**Med**	-0.43%	-0.85%	2.16%	0.79%	1.57%	2.69%	3.32%
Pixley	**179 514**	**164 697**	**151 276**	**166 455**	**156 165**	**LOW**	**0.64%**	**-1.89%**	**1.43%**	**0.54%**	**0.47%**	**1.57%**	**1.74%**
Northern Cape	***840 323***	***721 796***	***646 967***	***702 288***	***613 571***		1.36%	-1.63%	1.84%	1.22%	1.13%	2.41%	3.09%

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2007/2008

(a) [1] *This table has been constructed from past Censuses. It must be noted that Enumeration Areas (EA) changed over the years and historical growth is an indication of a trend and should not be used as an absolute value.*

***Table 14*: Population growth, DWAF 2001**

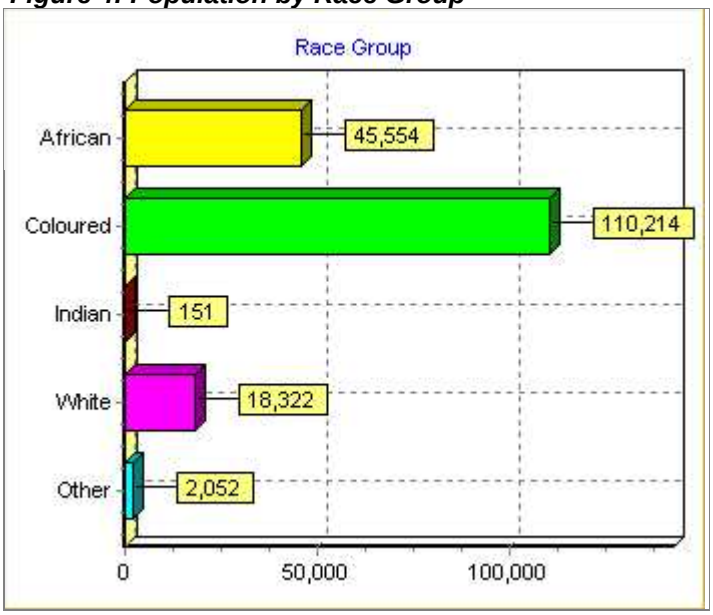
Municipality	Location	GR2005	GR2015	GR2025	POP 95	POP 2005	POP 2015	POP 2025	GR2005	GR2015	GR2025	POP 95	POP 2005	POP 2015	POP 2025
Emthanjeni	Britstown / Mziwabantu	-1.402	-2.294	-3.050	5 300	4 602	3 649	2 677	-1.442	-1.918	-2.306	5 300	4 583	3 598	2 632
Emthanjeni	Britstown Rural	-1.979	-2.915	-3.747	1 650	1 351	1 005	686	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	1 650	1 345	988	672
Emthanjeni	De Aar Rural	-1.984	-2.915	-3.755	1 250	1 023	761	519	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	1 250	1 019	748	509
Emthanjeni	De Aar/Nonzwakazi	0.210	-0.680	-1.436	26 950	27 521	25 705	22 244	0.170	-0.306	-0.694	26 950	27 412	25 350	21 872
Kareeberg	Carnarvon	0.040	-0.851	-1.605	5 700	5 723	5 254	4 469	0.000	-0.475	-0.863	5 700	5 700	5 182	4 394
Kareeberg	Carnarvon Rural	-1.981	-2.918	-3.746	2 950	2 415	1 796	1 226	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 950	2 405	1 766	1 202
Kareeberg	Vanwyksvlei	0.038	-0.852	-1.605	1 300	1 305	1 198	1 019	0.000	-0.475	-0.863	1 300	1 300	1 182	1 002
Kareeberg	Vosburg	0.111	-0.774	-1.535	1 350	1 365	1 263	1 082	0.074	-0.402	-0.790	1 350	1 360	1 246	1 064
Renosterberg	Petrusville / Thembinkosi / Vanderkloof	0.296	-0.592	-1.346	3 300	3 399	3 203	2 797	0.257	-0.218	-0.606	3 300	3 386	3 159	2 750
Renosterberg	Phillipstown/ Lukhanyisweni	0.298	-0.594	-1.346	2 650	2 730	2 572	2 246	0.257	-0.218	-0.606	2 650	2 719	2 537	2 208
Renosterberg	PhillipstownRural	-1.982	-2.914	-3.747	3 450	2 824	2 101	1 434	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	3 450	2 813	2 066	1 406
Siyancuma	Campbell	0.075	-0.811	-1.566	1 600	1 612	1 486	1 269	0.038	-0.438	-0.826	1 600	1 606	1 466	1 248
Siyancuma	Douglas / Bongani	0.077	-0.813	-1.568	9 950	10 027	9 241	7 890	0.038	-0.438	-0.826	9 950	9 987	9 114	7 758
Siyancuma	Griekwastad / Mathlomola	0.084	-0.808	-1.564	5 000	5 042	4 649	3 971	0.043	-0.433	-0.821	5 000	5 021	4 585	3 905
Siyancuma	Hay Rural	-1.983	-2.916	-3.747	4 750	3 888	2 892	1 974	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	4 750	3 872	2 844	1 935
Siyancuma	Herbert Rural	-1.983	-2.914	-3.748	14 750	12 073	8 982	6 130	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	14 750	12 025	8 832	6 009
Siyathemba	Marydale	0.040	-0.852	-1.605	1 750	1 757	1 613	1 372	0.000	-0.476	-0.864	1 750	1 750	1 591	1 349
Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	0.083	-0.805	-1.567	1 200	1 210	1 116	953	0.043	-0.433	-0.821	1 200	1 205	1 100	937
Siyathemba	Prieska / Ethembeni	0.040	-0.850	-1.606	11 000	11 044	10 140	8 624	0.000	-0.476	-0.864	11 000	11 000	10 000	8 480
Siyathemba	Prieska Rural	-1.984	-2.913	-3.748	5 700	4 665	3 471	2 369	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	5 700	4 647	3 413	2 322
Thembelihle	Hopetown	0.118	-0.774	-1.529	7 100	7 184	6 647	5 698	0.077	-0.398	-0.786	7 100	7 155	6 555	5 603
Thembelihle	Hopetown Rural	-1.983	-2.914	-3.750	3 350	2 742	2 040	1 392	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	3 350	2 731	2 006	1 365
Thembelihle	Orania	0.124	-0.767	-1.535	320	324	300	257	0.077	-0.398	-0.786	320	322	295	253
Thembelihle	Strydenburg	0.119	-0.778	-1.530	1 750	1 771	1 638	1 404	0.077	-0.398	-0.786	1 750	1 764	1 616	1 381
Ubuntu	Loxton	0.114	-0.775	-1.537	700	708	655	561	0.074	-0.402	-0.790	700	705	646	552
Ubuntu	Richmond / Sabelo	0.186	-0.706	-1.461	4 150	4 228	3 939	3 400	0.146	-0.330	-0.718	4 150	4 211	3 885	3 344
Ubuntu	Richmond Rural	-1.983	-2.913	-3.751	2 000	1 637	1 218	831	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 000	1 630	1 198	815
Ubuntu	Victoria-West / Masinyusane	0.114	-0.776	-1.532	7 850	7 940	7 345	6 294	0.074	-0.402	-0.790	7 850	7 908	7 243	6 189
Ubuntu	Victoria-West Rural	-1.981	-2.918	-3.746	2 950	2 415	1 796	1 226	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 950	2 405	1 766	1 202
Umsobomvu	Colesberg / Kuyasa	0.130	-0.761	-1.516	12 950	13 119	12 154	10 432	0.090	-0.386	-0.774	12 950	13 066	11 986	10 257
Umsobomvu	Colesberg Rural	-1.982	-2.918	-3.749	2 850	2 333	1 735	1 184	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 850	2 323	1 706	1 161
Umsobomvu	Hanover / Nompumelelo	0.072	-0.818	-1.576	3 200	3 223	2 969	2 533	0.032	-0.443	-0.831	3 200	3 210	2 928	2 491
Umsobomvu	Hanover Rural	-1.984	-2.915	-3.755	1 250	1 023	761	519	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	1 250	1 019	748	509
Umsobomvu	Norvalspont	0.133	-0.763	-1.520	1 500	1 520	1 408	1 208	0.090	-0.386	-0.774	1 500	1 513	1 388	1 188
Umsobomvu	Noupoort / Kwazamuxolo	-0.591	-1.481	-2.236	6 950	6 550	5 642	4 500	-0.630	-1.106	-1.494	6 950	6 524	5 565	4 425
Umsobomvu	Noupoort Rural	-1.979	-2.911	-3.762	850	696	518	353	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	850	693	509	346
PIXLEY		-0.49%	-1.31%	-2.00%	**171 270**	**162 989**	**142 862**	**116 743**	-0.53%	-1.41%	-2.03%	**171 270**	**162 334**	**140 807**	**114 735**

***Table 15*: Population by Race Group**

AREA	AFRICAN		COLOURED		WHITE		OTHER		INDIAN		TOTAL
	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	10 713	27.5	22 681	58.2	5 164	13.2	378	1	49	0.1	38 983
Kareeberg	522	4.5	9 599	83.5	1 287	11.2	57	0.5	17	0.1	11 482
Thembelihle	1 328	10	10 208	77	1 626	12.3	91	0.7	14	0.1	13 267
Siyathemba	2 716	14	14 382	74.3	2 086	10.8	153	0.8	23	0.1	19 360
Renosterberg	2 599	27.6	5 844	62	948	10.1	35	0.4	4	0.04	9 430
Ubuntu	3 252	16.5	14 337	72.7	1 970	10	146	0.4	7	0.02	19 712
Siyancuma	8 940	26.3	21 595	63.5	2 648	7.8	828	2.4	17	0.05	34 028
Umsobomvu	15 226	59.9	7 877	31	1 926	7.6	345	1.4	16	0.06	25 390
District (Total)	**45 296**	**26.4**	**106 523**	**62.1**	**17 655**	**10.3**	**2033**	**7.6**	**147**	**0.57**	**171 652**

Source: PkS IDP 2008/09

Figure 4: Population by Race Group



Sources: PkS IDP 2008/09

The above table shows the population race of the district by local municipality and the figure also diagrammatically shows the same. The dominance of coloured population group is clearly visible in the above table and figure. They account for about 63 % of the district total population, which is an indicative that the district is a coloured community. The various municipal population race estimates are also presented in the above table and figure. The Indian race group is in the minority.

2.18 Population Density

Population density is a key factor in determining the provision of infrastructure and services. It is found by simply dividing the total population and the area. The total land area of the District is 102 766km^2, thus giving a population density of 2.1 people per square kilometre.

The table below indicates that the population density for Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu Municipalities is 4 persons per square kilometre between 2001 and 2002. The population density for the other municipalities ranges from 1.0 to 1.5 persons per square kilometre. This really suggests that Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu have a population density being well above the average population density of 2.0 persons per square kilometre for the District. From the planning point of view, this inequitable population distribution within the district will require formulation and implementation of regional development policies so as to remove the imbalance. Provision of basic services in areas that are currently under-serviced would somehow draw population into those areas and in future the densities would be the same.

Table 16: Demographic Profile by Local Municipality

Municipalities	Population	Average Population Annual Rate Of Growth Between 2001 - 2010	% Of Total Population	Area (Km2)	Density Per Km2	HH	Average HH (2000)
Emthanjeni	35 549	1.0	24.6	11 388	4.0	7 761	4.5
Kareeberg	9 486	2.2	6.9	17 698	1.5	2 258	4.1
Thembelihle	13 986	1.3	5.9	6 978	2.0	2 988	3.9
Siyathemba	17 513	1.0	11.9	8 251	1.0	4 111	4.7
Renosterberg	9 069	1.0	10.5	12 051	2.0	2 278	5.3
Ubuntu	16 376	1.0	9.1	20 389	2.0	3 521	4.8
Siyancuma	35 809	1.0	8.4	10 027	2.0	7 383	4.6
Umsobomvu	23 640	1.0	15.8	6 813	4.0	5 083	4.6
District (Total)	**164 603**	**1.2**	**11.1**	**102 766**	**2.2**	**36 270**	**4.5**

Sources: PkS 2008/09

2.19 Socio-economic conditions

Levels of unemployment (20.4%) as recorded in the Community survey (Census) 2007 seem unrealistically low compared to current conditions. However, it is also clear that the Census and many other references do not use the same definition of unemployment and it is difficult to compile trends.

According to the figure the district has a higher unemployment (20.4%) and a lower employment rate (36.1%) than the province. A larger portion (37.8%) of the population is not economically active, although they are of a PEA age (between 15 – 65 years). These persons are either not able to work or chose not to work.

Table 17: employment profile, absolute totals 2007

Employment Status	Northen Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
Employed	225031	37353
Unemployed	121745	21467
Not Economically Active	277398	43036
Total	**624194**	**101865**

Source: PKS Socio-Economic Profile 2008

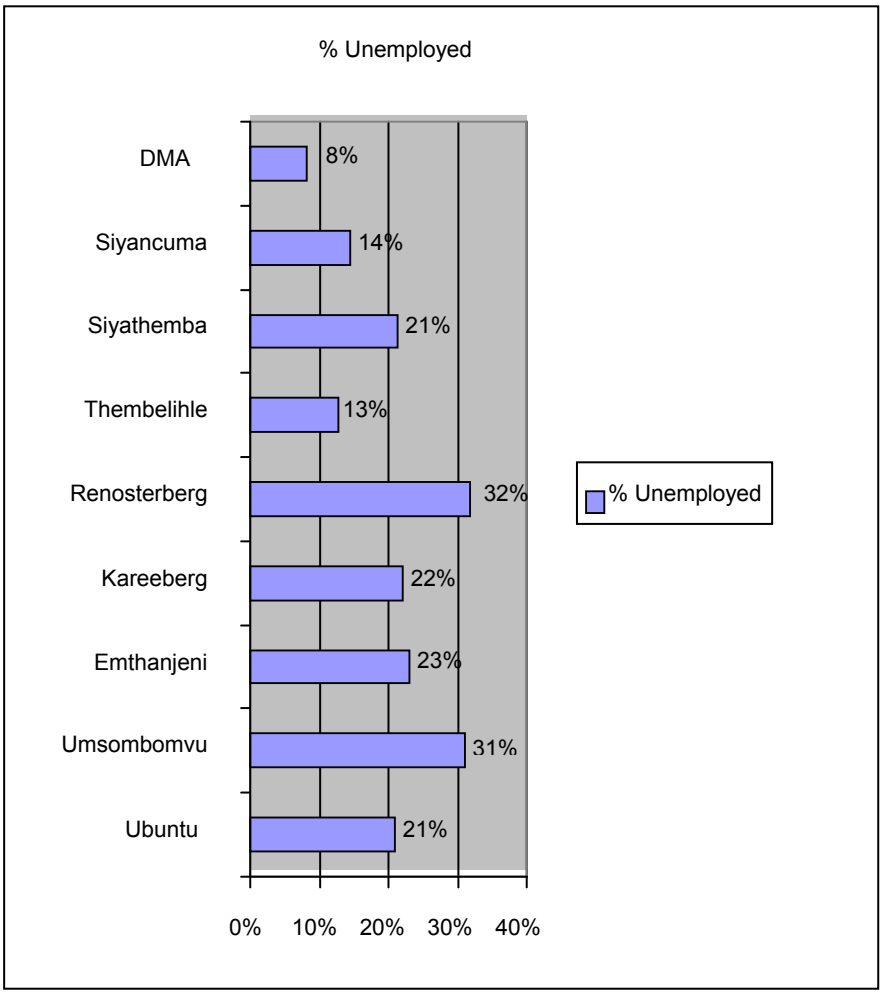
Census 2001 indicates that unemployment in the DMA area is the lowest because habitation on farms is generally tied to employment. Renosterberg has the highest rate of unemployment. Umsobomvu has the next highest level of unemployment, which is attributed to the decline in the railway industry.

The information in Pixley ka Seme IDP of 2003-2005 indicates that being disabled does not seem to disadvantage the disabled from being employed. The rate of unemployment and looking for work in the Pixley ka Seme for able-bodied persons was 31% compared to 34% disabled persons. However, in the Northern Cape as a whole it was a distinct disadvantage, where only 28% of able-bodied persons were unemployed and looking for work compared to 36% of disabled persons who were looking for work.

Females are more likely to be unemployed and looking for work in the Pixley ka Seme than males (43% versus 22% respectively). This is similar to the Northern Cape pattern, although the female unemployment rate is greater in Pixley ka Seme (43%) than in the Northern Cape (38%).

The table below shows unemployment trend in local Municipalities:

Figure5.: % unemployment in 2001, by local municipality



Source: *Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09*

2.20 Employment by Economic Sector

The table below, shows the occupation of the employed population by economic sector for the district. Assessment of the table revealed that agriculture/ farming and commercial services both play an important role in providing employment to the working population. About 39 % of the total working population were employed in agricultural sector and 23.2% were employed in commercial services. Therefore it is evident that local employment is mainly provided by agricultural and commercial sectors.

Part-time employment

Part-time employment in the district forms 5.8% (2003) workers of the total workforce of these part-time workers, the majority are casual workers (2-9%/991 workers) or temprorary workers (2 – 6%/916 workers). A very small percentage (0–3%/97 workers) is seational workers.

Gross Domestic Product (GDP) contributions and growth rate.

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP) indicates the scale of production within the district. According to the current Socio-Economic profile of the district, the Gross Domestic Product of the district is as follows:

GDP Contributions (2008):

Northen Cape Province Contribution to GDP	2.08%
Pixley ka Seme DM Contribution to province GDP	12.09%
Pixley ka Seme DM Contribution to RSA GDP	0.27%

GDP per Capita (2007):

South Africa	R21,367.80
Northen Cape Province	R21,641.65
Pixley ka Seme DM	R18,204.70

GDP growth rates (2001-2005)

South Africa	4.0%
Northen Cape Province	2.7%
Pixley ka Seme DM	3.6%

Sectoral GDP Contribution (2007)
The sectoral GDP contribution of the district is as follows:

Table 18: Sectoral GDP contribution (2007)

Sector	Northen Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
Government Services	13.1%	12.9%
Community and Social Services	8.7%	5.6%
Finance and Business Services	12.8%	22.5%
Transport and Communication	10.7%	11.3%
Trade and Accommodation	12.9%	15.4%
Construction	1.4%	3.3%
Electricity and water	2.0%	2.3%
Manufacturing	3.3%	17.4%
Mining	28.4%	6.8%
Agriculture	6.7%	2.7%

Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2008

The total GDP of Pixley ka Seme DM for 2008 was R2.8 billion. The economy of the district is diversified with the largest GDP contributors being the financial and business services sector (22.5%) as well as the government services sector (12.9%). The district has a larger GDP contribution than the province in terms of the manufacturing, trade, financial and business services, transport and communication, construction as well as electricity and water sectors. Agriculture has a very small GDP contribution only 2.7%.

Table 19: Employment by Economic Sector

Economic Activities	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	Total	%
Farming / Agriculture	356	780	1 056	440	670	1 445	2 627	1 304	252	876	1 807	713	1 346	13 672	38.9
Mining	0	0	11	7	0	15	22	0	0	0	0	8	10	73	0.2
Manufacturing	46	23	18	212	38	233	65	113	16	4	90	18	115	991	2.8
Electricity	0	6	40	112	0	0	15	0	0	130	29	0	0	332	0.9
Construction	24	15	112	279	47	65	88	17	0	20	174	21	35	897	2.5
Trade	166	263	562	789	98	218	490	430	113	154	583	165	539	4 570	13
Transport	10	31	23	504	0	13	97	109	59	21	129	23	117	1 136	3.2
Finance	21	24	51	429	9	27	76	44	12	34	104	8	153	992	2.8
Community Services	189	557	804	1977	210	430	1 090	655	295	392	729	158	666	8 152	23.2
Household	266	268	304	655	68	335	574	320	148	168	391	206	581	4 282	12.2
Total	1 078	1 967	2 981	5 404	1 140	2 781	5 144	2 992	895	1 799	4 036	1 320	3 569	**35 099**	

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

2.21 Occupational Classification

The table below indicates that most people in the district work in elementary occupations followed by agricultare and craft related occupations. The existing status quo clearly indicates that there is shortage of professionals in the district.

Table 20: Occupational Classification

Occupation	No. of People	%
Senior Management	947	2.4
Professional	2 519	6.3

Technical	1 360	3.4
Clerks	2 135	5.3
Service Related	3 184	8
Agricultural Related Skilled	4 599	11.6
Crafts and Trade	3 604	9
Plant Machines	1 338	3.4
Elementary	20 124	50.6
	39 810	**100**

Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

2.22 Housing

2.22.1 Housing Accreditation

Once again, we are really pleased to mention in this IDP that the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality has been accredited to perform housing delivery functions under the municipal housing accreditation programme. As this mandate and obligation was bestowed to us by the national government, the role of the district municipality will change dramatically. Where the role was limited to providing support to local municipalities and delivery of bulk services to our people, the district municipality as an organ of state will now be providing houses to the communities in its region.

Functions

The following functions will be performed by the District Municipality:

- Provide services, i.e. water, sanitation, electricity, roads, storm water drainage and transport
- Identify and designate land for housing development
- Promote the resolution of housing conflicts arising in the housing development process
- Provide bulk engineering services
- Plan and manage land use and development (amenities, project values and functionality)

- Within the IDP and within housing policy to ensure on a progressive basis, that conditions not conducive to health and safety are prevented or removed
- Prepare a housing policy for the district
- Prepare local housing sector plans
- Act as developer according to preferential procurement policy
- Allocation of sites to beneficiaries
- Assist in the completion of subsidy application forms

To face up to this challenge, a major institutional change was needed. A housing unit that will facilitate this change was created in the new organogram of the District Municipality during 206/07 financial year and the unit was established in 2007. 4 Out of the unit's full component of personnel (9) were appointed to drive the unit, provide housing services and address all housing problems some of which are presented in the following sections and in the consolidated housing plan. In 2007/08 financial year, the unit compiled an integrated housing plan that contains a housing delivering tool in the region.

Integrated Housing Plan.

The integrated housing plan identifies the following issues:

- Very few people in the district (9% of the total population) can participate in bonded housing
- High demand of housing need
- Backlog in housing provision
- Low paste of housing delivery in the region
- A huge shortage of land/sites for housing
- Informal dwellings
- Infrastructure backlog which affect housing delivery

A copy of the plan is included in volume 2 of the IDP.

2.22.2 Housing Profile

The issues that were identified are as follows:

Housing type

All local municipalities are composed of various residential components varying from formal housing to informal dwelling units as indicated in the table below:

Table 21 : Housing Type by Local Municipality

MUNICIPALITIES	FORMAL		INFORMAL		TRADITIONAL		NONE / HOMELESS		OTHER		TOTAL
	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	7 542	88.8	806	9.4	68	0.8			78	1	8 497
Kareeberg	2 523	91.2	145	5.2	54	2	0	0	43	1.5	2 765
Thembelihle	2 409	85	379	13.4	24	0.8	1	0.03	22	0.8	2 835
Siyathemba	3 801	83.7	571	12.6	99	2.2	0	0	71	1.6	4 542
Renosterberg	1 978	83.2	105	4.4	122	5.1	0	0	170	7.2	2 375
Ubuntu	3 716	87.8	417	10	48	1.1	1	0.02	50	2	4 232
Siyancuma	4 794	68.2	872	12.4	150	2.1	0	0	1209	17.2	7 025
Umsobomvu	4 458	82	777	14.3	136	2.5	2	0.04	70	1.3	5 443
District (Total)	**31 221**	**82.8**	**4 072**	**10.8**	**701**	**2**	**7**	**0.01**	**1 713**	**4.5**	**37 714**

Source: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2008/09

2.22.3 Home ownership

Home ownership among poor households in Ubuntu is much low (39% vs. 62% non-poor households owning their homes in 1996 according to the Census. Besides the low rate of ownership in the DMA area, Ubuntu also shows a low rate of house ownership (39%) amongst the poor compared to the Pixley Ka Seme average of 58%.

Table 22: House ownership per municipality by household income

Municipality	Household ownership and HH income R0-18000 pa	Household ownership and HH income R18000 + pa
Emthanjeni	69%	76%
Kareeberg	59%	67%
NCDMA07	22%	70%
Renosterberg	48%	65%
Siyancuma	53%	72%
Siyathemba	54%	68%
Thembelihle	76%	73%
Ubuntu	39%	62%
Umsobomvu	73%	75%
Pixley Ka Seme Total	**58%**	**72%**
Northern Cape Total	60%	68%

Source: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2008/09

Home ownership is high in Thembelihle and lowest in the DMA area. The average dwelling ownership rate in the Pixley Ka Seme is 62% households owning their homes in 2001 according to the Census.

Table 23: Dwelling ownership

Municipality	Own dwelling	Not own dwelling	Institution/hoste
Emthanjeni	73%	26%	0.4%
Kareeberg	63%	36%	0.4%
NCDMA07	34%	66%	0.2%
Renosterberg	54%	46%	0.2%
Siyancuma	53%	47%	0.3%
Siyathemba	60%	39%	0.4%
Thembelihle	79%	20%	0.4%
Ubuntu	44%	55%	0.6%
Umsobomvu	76%	24%	0.2%
PIXLEY KA SEME	**62%**	**37%**	**0.4%**

Source: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2008/09

2.22.4 Housing backlog

All local municipalities experienced a housing shortage. The existing housing backlog in the region as at April 2008 is indicated in the table below:

Table 24.: Housing Backlog as at March 2008 by Local Municipality

Municipality	Area	Houses	Total
Emthanjeni	De Aar	1500	
	Hanover	400	
	Britstown	600	2500
Kareeberg	Carnavon	533	
	Van Wyksvlei	90	
	Vosburg	65	688
Thembelihle	Hopetown	1 122	
	Strydenburg	250	1 372
Siyathemba	Prieska	423	
	Marydale	179	
	Niekerkshoop	80	682
Renosterberg	Petrusville	300	
	Vanderkloof	50	
	Phillipstown	100	450
Ubuntu	Victoria - West	600	
	Richmond Farms	225	
	Hutchinson	-	
	Merriman	-	
	Loxton	80	905
Siyancuma	Douglas	884	
	Campbell	104	
	Griekwastad	365	1 353
Umsobomvu	Colesberg: Ouboks	2 200	
	Noupoort	500	
	Norvalspont	350	3 050
District Total			

Sources: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2008/09

2.22.5 Housing Need

The existing housing demands as well as the required sites are shown in the table below:

Table 25: Housing need by Local Municipalities

MUNICIPALITY	HOUSING NEED	NUMBER OF SITES AVAILABLE FOR 2008/09	NUMBER OF SITES SERVICED (SANITATION)	NUMBER OF SITES SERVICED (WATER)	ELECTRICITYP	TOWNSHIP ESTABLISHMENT	EIA REPORT AVAILABLE	GEOTECH REPORT AVAILABLE	BULK SERVICES	ALLOCATIONS FOR 2008/09	HOUSES TO BE BUILD 2008/09	NO OF SITES TO BE PLANNED	NO. OF SITES TO BE SERVICED 2008/09	REMAINING SITES READY FOR HOUSING 2008/09	ADDITIONAL SITES READY FOR SERVICING	INCLUDED IN IDP	Additional Funding Reqd. for Houses	Additional Funding Reqd. for Services	Total Additional Funding Reqd.
UBUNTU	**1395**	**680**	**560**	**560**	**940**					**R 8, 875 224.00**	**204**		**0**	**471**	**0**	Yes	R 20,491,326.00	0.00	**20,491,326.00**
Richmond	468	128	128	128	128	Yes	Yes	Yes		R3 393 468.00	78					Yes			
Victoria West	746	491	371	371	631	In progress	Yes only 270	Yes only 270		R5 481 756.00	126			365	0	Yes			
Loxton	181	61	61	61	181	No	No	No		R 0.00	0			106	0	Yes			
UMSOBOMVU	**2323**	**650**	**450**	**450**		**In progress**	**Yes**	**Yes**		**R 5,000,000.00**	**49**		**250**	**627**	**1246**	Yes	R 27,278,262.00	24,920,000.00	**52,198,262.00**
Colesburg	1946	450	450	450		In progress	Yes	Yes		R 5,000,000.00	0		250	450	1246	Yes			
Norvalspont	126	100				In progress	Yes	Yes	No	R 0.00	0			126		Yes			
Noupoort	251	100				In progress	Yes	Yes		R 0.00	49			51		Yes			

EMTHANJENI	**2517**	**1545**	**50**	**150**	**163**					**R 2,914,902.00**	**67**		**0**	**165**	**0**	Yes	R 7,178,490.00	0.00	**7,178,490.00**
Britstown	253	100	0	0	32	Completed	Not applicable	No		R 0.00	0			32	0	Yes			
De Aar	1582	1280	50	50	50	Completed	Not applicable	No		R 2,914,902.00	67			33	0	Yes			
Hanover	682	165	0	100	81	Completed	Not applicable	No			0			100	0	Yes			
KAREEBERG	**505**	**90**	**90**	**90**	**135**					**R 0.00**	**0**		**0**	**0**	**90**	Yes	R 0.00	1,800,000.00	**1,800,000.00**
Carnarvon	350	0	0		0										0	Yes			
Van Wyksvlei	90	90	90	90	90		No			R 0.00	0				90	Yes			
Vosburg	65	0	0	0	45										0	Yes			
RENOSTERBERG	**337**	**335**	**0**	**35**	**497**					**R 0.00**	**0**		**0**	**35**	**300**	Yes	R 1,522,710.00	6,000,000.00	**7,522,710.00**
Petrusville	182	35	0	35	35	In progress	Yes	Yes						35	0	Yes			
Phillipstown	105	250	0	0	250	In progress	Yes	Yes		R 0.00	0		0	0	250	Yes			
Vanderkloof	50	50	0	0	50	In progress	Yes	Yes		R 0.00	0		0	0	50	Yes			
THEMBELIHLE	**1553**	**162**	**59**	**59**						**R 2,375,300.00**	**50**	**100**	**103**	**59**	**372**	Yes	R 2,566,854.00	7,440,000.00	**10,006,854.00**
Hopetown	1202	119	59	59	119	Completed	Yes			R 200,000.00		100	60	59	0	Yes			
Strydenburg	351	43	0	0	43	Completed	Yes			R 2,175,300.00	50		43	0	0	Yes			

SIYATHEMBA	**2532**	**549**	**404**	**404**	**0**					**R 0.00**	**0**	**343**	**0**	**0**	**372**	Yes	R 0.00	7,440,000.00	**7,440,000.00**
Marydale	607	220	44	44	0	within establishment	yes for surveyed sites	yes for surveyed sites		R 0.00	**0**	43	0	0	43	Yes			
Niekerkeshoop	401	60	110	110	0	within establishment	yes for surveyed sites	yes for surveyed sites				50	0	0	60	Yes			
Prieska	1524	269	250	250	0	within establishment	yes for surveyed sites	yes for surveyed sites		R 0.00		250	0	0	269	Yes			
SIYANCUMA	**3483**	**2528**	**320**	**4319**	**2301**					**R 2,000,000.00**	**0**		**100**	**320**	**2108**	Yes	R 13,921,920.00	42,160,000.00	**56,081,920.00**
Campbell	448	294	0	484	200	In progress	Yes	Yes		R 0.00	0		0	0	294	Yes			
Douglas	2578	1777	320	2578	1221	In progress	Yes	Yes		R 2,000,000.00	0		100	320	1357	Yes			
Griekwastad	457	457	0	457	80	In progress	Yes	Yes		R 0.00	0		0	0	457	Yes			
Schmidtdrift				800	800														
TOTAL	**14645**	**6539**	**1933**	**6067**	**4036**														

2.23 Land needed for new housing stock 2002-2012

Identified Issuses

The following issues were identified during the IDP representative forum meeting

- All local municipalities need additional sites for hosuing development
- Serviced residential sites are also needed for hosuing development
- New houses are needed to accommodate the present households who are living in informal dwellings and those that will be added to the present households
- Upgrade the existing housing units tht are not in good conditions
- The District Municipality to fast track land availability and transfer of land for housing development.

All local municipalities need additional land to plan for those residing in informal dwelling units. The residential land needed in the whole district for the projected period is indicated in the table below:

Table 26: Land needed for new housing stock by Local Municipality

Municipality	Current Population 2002	Projected Population without migration 2012	Change	Per Capita Residential Land use (m2)	Additional Land Requirements	
					m2	ha
Emthanjeni	39 155	44 116	4 961	133.3	660 301	66.1
Kareeberg	11 473	12 927	1 454	133.3	193 818	19.4
Thembelihle	13 260	14 940	1 680	133.3	223 944	22.4
Siyathemba	19 352	21 804	2 452	133.3	326 852	32.7
Renosterberg	9 430	10 625	1 195	133.3	159 294	15.9
Ubuntu	19 712	22 209	2 497	133.3	332 850	33.3
Siyancuma	34 018	38 323	4 305	133.3	573 857	57.4
Umsobomvu	25 406	28 625	3 219	133.3	429 093	42.9
District (Total)	**171 806**	**193 569**	**21 763**	**133.3**	**2 901 009**	**100**

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

Identified Issues

The following issues were highlighted in the IDP of local municipalities regarding housing delivery:

- Lack of funding for housing development
- Access to land
- Construction of more RDP houses
- Provision of services to new residential sites
- Fast tracking land availability and transfer of land
- Slow delivery of housing developemnt
- Lack of capacity at local municipal level
- Implementation of Ouboks 2220 housing units in Colesberg.
- All Local Municipalities experienced a housing shortage.
- Low paste of housing delivery .

- About 82.89% of households are formal brick structure of houses, which is higher than in the province (75.3%).
- Informal settlement dewellers represent 10.8% of the households.

2.24 Land Ownership

The form of land ownership in South Africa has been classified in the White Paper on Land Policy into four categories:

- Public land
- State land
- Commonage land
- Private land

2.24.1 Public Land

Public land includes land held by provincial and national governments as well as land owned by local authorities and land belonging to parastatals or other enterprises that are wholly owned by government.

2.24.2 State Land

State land is land that is held by national and provincial governments but exclude local authority and parastatal land. It also excludes former South African Development Trust (SADT) land and land allocated to communities and individuals in the former homeland and coloured reserves.

The area that falls under this category is currently estimated at 14 million hectares which is about 12 % of the total land area of South Africa. Up until now about a quarter of this land is used for state and domestic purposes. Some of the lands are also used for parks, conservation, forestry and transport.

2.24.3 Commonage Land

Commonage land is public land which is owned by the municipality or local authority and to which all the residents of a town have rights. On the account on how commonages are acquired and used by the community, the Department of Land Affairs identified them as a key element of land reform in South Africa primarily because they are public land which does not need to be acquired. However there are quite a number of problems regarding the manner in which Municipal Commonage are granted and used by the community. It has been noted in the White Paper that as municipalities depend on the revenue generated by leasing the commonage, a practise has now been developed whereby the land is auctioned and leased to the highest bidder at market rates for private use. This in essence implies that the use of commonage for charitable purposes is being usurped and the poor residents will not be able to obtain any access to the commonage as the practice clearly excludes them.

2.24.4 Private Land

Private land is land that is neither public nor commonage. It is a piece of privately owned land created from racially based land policies in the past era. Very unfortunately a significant proportion of South Africa's land that falls under this category of land ownership is in the hands of the white population. The main constraints of this kind of land ownership is that it strongly reflects the political and economic conditions of the past era which is one of the main causes of insecurity, landlessness and poverty amongst black people and also a cause of inefficient land administration and land use in South Africa.

Because of the above mentioned development scenario, the fundamental objective of the national land policy that was developed by the Department of Land Affairs is to deal with among others, the inequitable distribution of land ownership in South Africa as a whole. Within the constitutional principles and legal framework that are enshrined in the Land Policy, the implementation of land reform programmes has been construed by most interested parties as a just policy or programme that is meant to build reconciliation, stability, economic growth and development of household welfare in a sustainable basis.

In the Pixley District the current land ownership is the same as those discussed above. The bulk (or almost all) of agriculturally active land is owned by white population. The national and provincial governments as well as the local authorities own just a handful of land, most of which are designated for and are being put to some particular public uses. A ground survey revealed that most of the public/ state and municipal commonage lands that exist in the district are derelict land and therefore not suitable for either livestock or crop farming. The survey on the other hand also revealed that quite a lot of private land is either not well utilized or being left idle for a long period of time. This is really a great waste of resources which needs to be rectified urgently.

It is important to note here, that if issues like these local authorities must now consider seriously and try to resolve through application of appropriate land reform programmes when IDP is being implemented. This is to ensure for instance, that issues like landlessness which is one of the main causes of poverty in the district as indicated earlier is well addressed.

2.25 LAND AND LAND REFORM

Most of the local IDP’s identified the following issues regarding land and land reform:

- The need for more commonage
- Councils need to review their leasehold agreements
- Make more land available to emerging farmers
- Community project for food security is also on the increase and more land is needed for this purpose
- Lack of proper management of commonage
- Lack of grazing land for emerging farmers
- Lack of full ownership of properties

From the above it is hoped that municipalities will then be able to do the following during the implementation of their IDP's:

- ❖ Compilation of a land audit.
- ❖ Identify all obstacles that inhibit a smooth land reform process.
- ❖ Implement a land reform programme that shall meet the needs and/ or expectations of all citizens of the district.

2.26 Land Audit

As there is a need to make more land available for all kinds of economic activities, the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality is in the process of compiling a land audit for the district. The outcome of the land audit is envisaged to enable the district and local municipalities to make a meaningful contribution to the development of the region by both giving the previously disadvantaged households the opportunity to engage in productive land use and by increasing employment opportunities through encouraging greater investment.

Deliverables

Deliverables of the project will include:

- o Identified provincially, nationally and local government owned land
- o Identified parastatal owned land
- o Identified privately owned land
- o Land use zoning to identified portions
- o Identified land acquisition opportunities

2.27 ealth & hygiene

According to health statistics for the period 2000 to 2002 the following incidence rates is relevant to children under 5 years old.

Table 27: Incidence rates of children under 5 years old

Indicator	Pixley	NC
	2002	2002
Curative case load	40.9	43.9
Diarrhoea incidence	16.0	11.3
Lower respiratory infection incidence	24.7	17.1
Not gaining weight	5.5	4.7
Severe malnutrition	2.2	1.6
Weighing coverage (annualised)	100.9	73.5
Immunisation coverage under 1 year (Annualised)	84.7	83.7

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

Malnutrition in the Northern Cape is of particular concern. The 1999 National Food Consumption survey put the incidence of stunting amongst Northern Cape children at 25% and this socio-economic analysis revealed that the Northern Cape and Free State had the greatest percentage of children with a protein intake less than half of the RDA.

The Northern Cape also ranked among the lowest for mean carbohydrate intake, mean sugar intake and mean fat intake. Men and women in the Northern Cape are more likely to be underweight than their South African counterparts (12.3% for women and 22.7% for men). In terms of underweight for age, Pixley ka Seme appears to be better off than other districts of the Northern Cape.

A study (South Africa demographic and health survey) indicated that the children in Northern Cape are more likely than children from other provinces to receive all the basic immunisations. The immunisation coverage of the Pixley at 85% compares to the Northern Cape average (64%).

HIV/AIDS and TB

The prevalence of TB, which is appreciably higher in the Northern Cape (360 per 100 000) than the national average (254 per 100 000), is expected to rise with the increase in HIV/AIDS prevalence. The cure rate in Pixley ka Seme of new TB cases is 62%.

The antenatal survey undertaken by the Department of Health shows an increase of HIV+ pregnant women in the Pixley ka Seme area, 5.7% that is slightly higher than the trend in the province, which showed a 4.65% increase.

Table 28: HIV/AIDS Infected population, absolute Totals, 2007

Year	**Northen Cape**	**Pixley ka Seme DM**
1995	8504	932
1998	26915	3023
2003	61106	7326
2008	75748	9127

Source: PKS Socio-economic profile, 2008

The Pixley ka Seme DM has a lower percentage HIV/AIDS infected population than in the province and in the country from 1995 to 2008. The rate of infections is however increasing with an average annual HIV/AIDS infection growth rate in the district of 2%. This is much lower than the average annual HIV/AIDS infection growth rate in the province (4.1%) and the rest of the country (5%). The current (2008) total HIV/AIDS infected population in the region amounts 9,2001.

In 2000 the average number of visits per person to Pixley clinics was 2.83, which is in line with the target set in the White Paper for 2000/2001. The target for 2007/2008 is 3.5 consultations per person yearly.

Hypertension and diabetes mellitus are the 2 most prevalent chronic diseases in Pixley ka Seme based on number of clinic visits.

2.27.1 Identified issues on HIV/AIDS

The following issues were identified in local IDPs regarding the current status of HIV/AIDS in the district:

- Lack of sport and recreational centres

- Not well informed about HIV/AIDS
- Vulnerability
- Abuse and rape
- Department of Health to have more aftercare facilities in the region for patients
- Provide more support services to patients and terminally ill.
- High levels of domestic violence
- Unemploment under the youth
- Functional District Aids Council
- All relevant role-players to intensify thei HIV/AIDS awareness programmes
- Increase of HIV infections amongst the youth

2.27.2 Health Facilities

The sectoral approach that was adopted to analyse the present health facilities of the district revealed that National Government has adopted a primary health care strategy that includes making such service available within walking distance. The strategy also includes improvement in sanitation and drinking water supply, etc. Thus, the health care system that presently exist in the district is consists of:

1. Provincial hospitals
2. Provincial clinics
3. Municipal health centres or clinics

The current statistical information on health care facilities shows that there are 33 health establishments in the district, of which 9 are fully fledged hospitals. They offer curative and preventative services and also antenatal and post-natal services. The information from various local IDP's indicated that the centres are very busy and that the quality of services is determined by the subsidy received annually from the province as well as the availability of medication. The current number of hospitals is insufficient to deal effectively with the primary health needs of the district. Two (2) or three (3) more hospitals are considered necessary to eradicate the backlog. With regard to clinics, the hospital authorities have indicated the existing facilities are adequate and there are plans to provide more clinics should they be required. The table below shows the number of established health centres in the district.

Apart from the established health centres listed below there are a few surgeries that also provide health care services in the district. Most of them are situated in De Aar. The information from local IDP's indicated that:

- Many mobile clinics that usually operated in rural areas have been terminated.
- Access to health facilities for the farming communities is a major problem as they have to travel long distances for their primary health needs.

Table 29 Distribution of health care facilities

Municipality	Location	Health facility
Emthanjeni	Britstown	Britstown Clinic
		Britstown Mobile
	De Aar	De Aar CHC
		De Aar Clinic
		De Aar Hospital

Municipality	Location	Health facility
		Montana Clinic
		Nonzwakazi Clinic
	Hanover	Hanover Clinic
Kareeberg	Carnarvon	Carnarvon Clinic
	Swartkop	Swartkop Clinic
	Van Wyksvlei	Van Wyksvlei Clinic
		Van Wyksvlei Mobile
	Vosburg	Vosburg CHC
		Carnarvon Hospital
Renosterberg	Gariep	Keurtjiekloof Satellite clinic
	Petrusville	Petrusville Clinic
	Philipstown	PhillipstownClinic
Siyancuma	Bongani	Bongani Clinic
	Breipaal	Breipaal Clinic
	Campbell	Campbell Clinic
	Douglas	Douglas Clinic
		Douglas Hospital
		Douglas Mobile 1
		Douglas Mobile 2
	Griekwastad	Griekwastad CHC
		Griekwastad Mobile
	Kimberley	Salt Lake Satellite clinic
	Plooysburg	Plooysburg Satellite clinic
	Schmidtsdrift	Schmidtsdrift Satellite clinic
Siyathemba	Marydale	Marydale Clinic
	Niekerkshoop	Niekerkshoop Clinic
	Prieska	Prieska Clinic
		Prieska Hospital
		Prieska Mobile
Thembelihle	Hopetown	Hopetown Clinic
		Hopetown Hospital
		Hopetown Mobile
	Orania	Orania Clinic
		Orania Hospital
	Strydenburg	Strydenburg Clinic
Ubuntu	Loxton	Loxton Satellite clinic
	Richmond	Richmond Clinic
		Richmond Hospital
	Victoria West	Victoria West Clinic
		Victoria West Hospital
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	Colesberg Clinic
		Colesberg Hospital
	Kuyasa	Kuyasa Clinic
	Lowryville	Lowryville Clinic
	Norvalspont	Norvalspont Clinic
	Noupoort	Noupoort Clinic
		Noupoort Hospital

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

Identified issues on health facilities

The following issues were identified in the IDP representative forum meeting:

- Insufficient health facilities
- Public transport services for patients

- Availability of medical staff
- Aftercare facilities and support services to partients
- Rendering of 24 hour health services and emergency services to partients
- Hospice for terminally ill and street children
- Functional District Aids Council

2.28 Safety and Security

Even though crime in the region is very low if compared with other areas in South Africa, some issues were raised regarding safety and securities by Local municipalities and members of the IDP representative forum.

Identified issues

The issues that were identified by Local Municipalities and members of the IDP representative forum regarding safety and securities are as follows:

- Police are not visible
- Police stations are not accessible to many people
- Shortage of police resources
- Not enough police stations
- Shortage of human resource in courts
- High levels of domestic violence and rape
- High level of unemployment
- Youth delinquency due to lack of recreation activities
- High levels of domestic violence
- Substance and alcohol abuse
- Theft and illegal activities
- Low crime rate, but high levels of drug and alcohol abuse with related family abuse occur in the region.

2.29 Indigence and household income

Household income is an important statistic, not only for the purposes of the indigent's policy, but it indicates the large number of families who depend on the equitable share.

Although Pixley ka Seme has an unemployment rate of only 21%, household income levels are low. 64% of households have an income of R1 000 or less per month compared to the Northern Cape average of 54% of households below this level.

Table 30: Household income per month and unemployment in 2007 Census

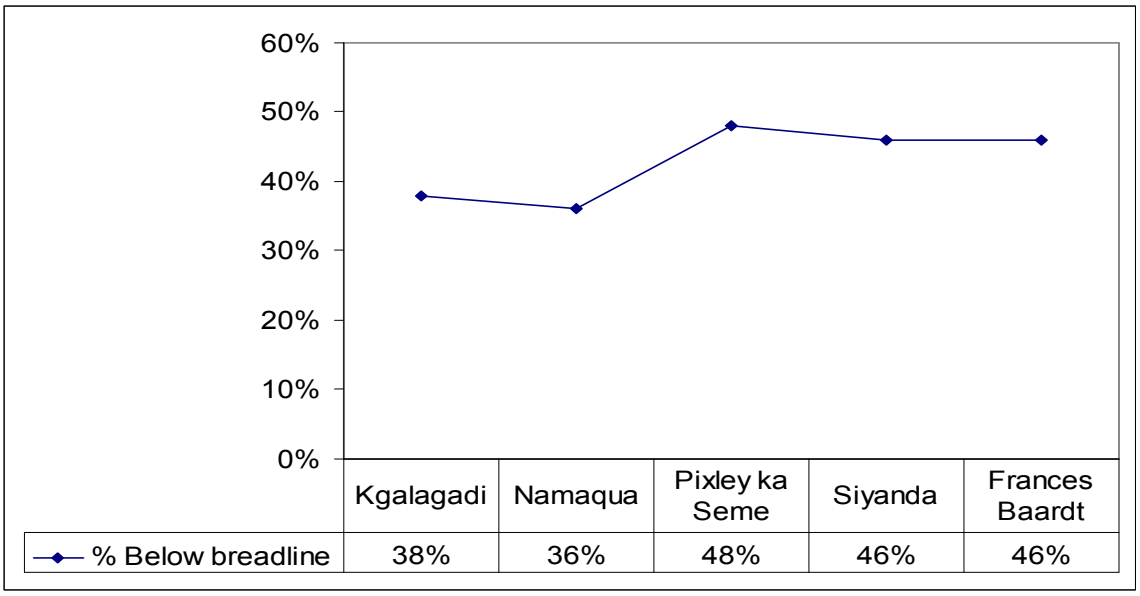
Municipality	R500 and below	R501-1000	R1001-1500	Above R1500
Emthanjeni	37%	17%	13%	34%
Kareeberg	45%	22%	11%	22%
NCDMA07	39%	27%	12%	22%
Renosterberg	49%	20%	10%	21%
Siyancuma	50%	19%	11%	20%
Siyathemba	40%	23%	13%	25%
Thembelihle	41%	22%	12%	25%
Ubuntu	44%	22%	12%	22%
Umsobomvu	53%	18%	11%	18%
PIXLEY	**44%**	**20%**	**12%**	**24%**
Northern Cape	**36%**	**18%**	**13%**	**34%**

Source: PkS IDP 2008/09

The chart indicates that Emthanjeni followed by Siyathemba had the largest percentage of households with household income of ***more than*** R1 000 in 2002. Umsobomvu, Siyancuma and Renosterberg appear to be the worst off. The decline of the railway industry has affected the region negatively.

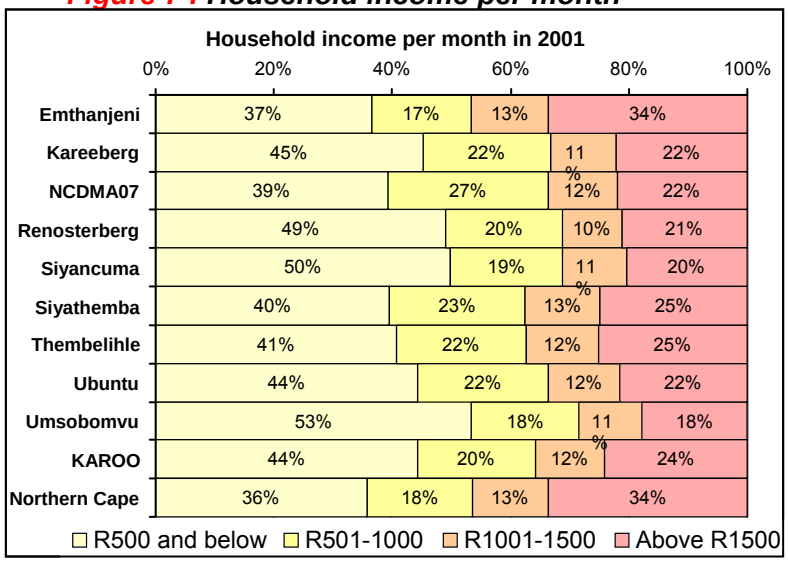
The figure below shows the percentage of household income below the poverty breadline of R800 in the province. The highest being Pixley ka Seme at 48% and the lowest being Namaqua at 36%.

Figure 6: % Households income below the poverty breadline by district



At present the national subsistence norm of R1 100 per household per month is used to define indigence. In the Pixley different Municipalities however apply different ranges of incomes as their cut-off limit for indigence. Most municipalities use the median of 2 old age pensions per household as the cut-off point to prevent the aged from being excluded as indigents. The indigence policy is funded from the equitable share.

Figure 7 : Household income per month



Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

Household income, which was recorded by the Census in 1996, has been eroded by inflation. From income data obtained in the 1996 Census approximately 54 % of the people would qualify as indigent in Pixley ka Seme if the present (2002) national indigence level of R1 100 is deflated conservatively back to 2001 levels. An average inflation rate of 8 % was used in the calculation.

Ubuntu is the only municipality that has different cut off household income levels in the various towns of the municipality. Some municipalities also apply a stepped cut off level, which determines how much of a subsidy the household receives such as Siyancuma and Siyathemba.

Table 31: Number of indigent households registered

Town	Households 2001	Cut off household income pm to register as an indigent HH	Theoretical % of indigent HHs based on 1996 census	Theoretical number of indigent HHs based on 1996 census	Number of indigent HHs registered May 2002	% Registered
Emthanjeni excluding farms	7 532	<=R1100	45%	3 389	2 500	33%
Kareeberg excluding farms	1 863	<=R1240	58%	1 081	1 166	63%
Renosterberg excl farms	1 611	<=R1200	60%	967	800	50%
Siyancuma excl farms	4 860	<=R1200	61%	2 965	2 400	49%
Siyathemba excl farms	3 118	<R1500	60%	1 871	1 211	39%
Thembelihle excl farms	2 010	<=R1100	49%	985	750	37%
Ubuntu excl farms	2 636	Varies per town	51%	1 333	890	34%
Umsobomvu excl farms	4 477	<=850	54%	2 418	1 371	31%
Total Pixley (excluding farms and DMA)	28 107			15 007	11 088	39%

Source: PkS IDP 2008/09

The above table indicates that only Kareeberg has more registered indigent households than that determined by the 1996 Census. This implies that:

- Most of the municipalities have yet to register all possible indigent families; or

- That the economic situation in that municipality has improved since 1996; or
- That households did not report households income accurately in the 1996 census.

The equitable share has not been applied to the rural people living on farms. The indigent households declared in 2002 thus do not include households living on farms.

Most of the municipalities show smaller percentages of households that are declared indigent compared to the 1996 data. The process of registration is however still ongoing and some municipalities attribute the tardiness in registration to a lack of awareness of the qualification criteria and that the indigents have to re-register every year.

Free Basic Electricity (FBE)

According to the table below, within the district, 63% of the total indigent households on average are provided with FBE. The local municipalities of Emthanjeni, Kareeberg and Ubuntu are providing this service to all of the total households. Renosterberg and Siyancuma have the lowest provision of FBE at 16% and 22% respectively.

Table 32: Number of households provided with Free Basic Electricity (FBE)

Municipality	Total HHS	Total indigent HHS	Beneficiaries				
			Muni	Eskom	Non-gnd	Total	%
Emthanjeni	8824	4587	4702	577		5279	115
Kareeberg	2398	1114	853	350		1203	108
Renosterberg	2532	1589		250		250	16
Siyancuma	9538	4757	700		337	1037	22
Siyathemba	4189	2122	700	300		1000	47
Thembelihle	3604	1591	200	386		586	37
Ubuntu	4176	1880	1464	1005	132	2601	138
Umsobomvu	6009	3981	1330	296		1626	41
Total	41270	21621	9949	3164	469	13582	63

Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2007

Free Basic Water (FBW)

The table below shows that the average provision of FBW in the region to the total number of households is 70%. The average provision of FBW to the poor households in the district is 90%. Siyathemba and Thembelihle local municipalities have the lowest provision of this service at 24% to the total households.

Table 33: Provision of Free Basic Water (FBW)

Municipality	Households		Total Served			
	Total HHS	Total indigent HHS	Total HHS	%	Total indigent HHS	%
Emthanjeni	8824	4587	8793	100	4570	17
Kareeberg	2398	1114	1686	70	1114	100
Siyancuma	9538	4757	6377	67	4645	98
Siyathemba	4189	2122	996	24	949	45
Thembelihle	3604	1591	866	24	866	54
Ubuntu	4176	1880	2080	50	1819	97
Renosterberg	2532	1589	2378	94	1552	98
Umsobomvu	6009	3981	5606	93	3981	100
Total	41270	21621	28782	70	19496	90

Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2007

Identified issues

- Lack of implementation and verification of indigent registers and policies.
- Indigent and credit control policies are in place, but not necersanilly being implemented.

2.30 Institutional & management

Indigents policy

All the local municipalities in Pixley ka Seme have indigents policies, which are applied. The national subsistence norm of R1 100 per household is used to define indigence. However, municipalities in the Pixley have applied a range of cut off incomes to qualify as 'indigent'. These range from R1 100 to R1 500 per month. Most of the municipalities use the median of two old age pensions per household as the cut-off point to prevent the aged from being excluded as indigents.

Table 34: Indigent policies

Municipality	Indigents - Approved policy and subsidy applied
Emthanjeni	Yes
Kareeberg	Yes
Renosterberg	Yes
Siyancuma	Yes
Siyathemba	Yes
Thembelihle	Yes
Ubuntu	Yes
Umsobomvu	Yes
DMA07	No

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2008/09

Indigent households apply to be registered at the municipal offices in person. This is an on-going process and indigents must reapply either on a bi-annual basis.

The process is ongoing and some of municipalities attribute the tardiness in registration to lack of awareness of qualification criteria and that indigents need to re-register regularly.

Verification of household income and indigent status is done in several ways for example:

- Councillors and ward committees verify information
- Visits are undertaken to the indigent's property to assess compliance to the criteria

As far as can be established from the available information, the equitable share has been applied to any rural people or persons living on farms, and all municipalities do have indigent policies that take households living in rural and farming areas into account.

Table 35: Indigent policies per municipality

Municipality	Qualifying criteria and Extent of subsidy	Application process & Number of HH registered	Process and verification	Validity period	Exclusions
Emthanjeni	R0-1100 HH income pm 100% subsidy to Max R95 on: • Water • Sewerage • Refuse	HH must apply with: • Proof of income • Affidavit	R10 per month must be paid and account is presented to pay point together with excess over R95	1 year, then reapply	• More than 1 property owned • Names are supplied to the National Credit Bureau
Kareeberg	R0-1240 HH income pm Carnarvon R120 pa rates & taxes R135.58 pm without electricity R211.38 with electricity Van Wyksvlei R76.98 R85 pa rates & taxes Vosburg R 90 rates & taxes R104.82 without electricity R184.08 with electricity All electricity is for 100 units	HH must apply 61% of households are registered as indigents.	Account is credited monthly. Arrear remains on account unless settled.	1 year	No exclusions or restrictions.
Renosterberg	R0-1200 HH income pm 100% subsidy to Max R86 on: • Water • Sewerage • Refuse	HH must apply with: • Proof of income • Affidavit	Account is credited monthly. Arrear remains on account unless settled.	1 year	None
Siyancuma	<R800 =100% subsidy to Max R86 <R1200 = 50% to Max R43	HH must apply with: • Proof of income • Affidavit	Account must be presented at the pay point where difference between amount on account and subsidy	6 months then reapply	• More than 1 property owned • Names are supplied to the National Credit Bureau
Siyathemba	<R800=100% subsidy to Max R95 R801-1200 = 50% subsidy to Max R47.50 R1201-1500=25% subsidy to Max R23.75 Only applied to: • Water • Electricity • Sanitation • Refuse Not for rates and taxes.	HH must apply with: • Proof of income • Affidavit Councillors verify information Committee approves the applications	Must present account for payment	Reviewed every 3 months Confirmed every 6 months	• More than 1 property owned
Thembelihle	<R1100	HH must apply. Ward co-ordinators to assist households	Account credited monthly	6 months, then reapply	None

Municipality	Qualifying criteria and Extent of subsidy	Application process & Number of HH registered	Process and verification	Validity period	Exclusions
Ubuntu	Richmond = <R800 Victoria West = <R1200 Loxton = <R1100	HH must apply	Account credited monthly	6 months, then reapply	None
Umsobomvu		HH must apply with: • Proof of income • Affidavit A HH survey is also undertaken to determine who will qualify	Municipality will pay the subsidy to the max amounts into the account of the HH. Excess must be paid by HH.	6 months	• More than 1 property owned • Names are supplied to the National Credit Bureau

Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

2.31 Physical Infrastructure

2.31.1 Water supply

The policy

Basic water supply, also referred to as the RDP standard, is defined in the White Paper Water Supply and Sanitation, 1994, as:

- The consumption of 25 litres per capita per day
- Access to water should be within 200 meters of each household
- Minimum flow at source of 10 litres per minute
- Water available on a regular daily basis
- 98% assurance of the supply
- System must be effectively operated and maintained
- Water must be safe to drink

Level of service

According to the IDPs of Local municipalities less than half of the total households were provided with a water tap in their own houses and about 36% had access to one outside the house but on their sites. In the farms/ rural areas some households rely on natural water sources and boreholes as an alternative source. The

boreholes are not sustainable and an alternative source will have to be found to supply water to these households.

Critical problems regarding water supply:

- Bulk water supply is expensive
- Bulk water supply is not sufficient, alternative source needs to be identified
- Additional water supply source required in some municipalities
- Upgrading of purification plants in all municipalties

Progress in delivery of water

The table below indicates household water supply in the region. From the table it is evident that the water supply in respect of distance from households is good, although some towns' data is unknown which requires attention.

Table 36: Level of residential water supply

Municipality	House Connection	Yard tap	Water Tank	Communal Standpipe	Borehole	None	*Below RDP*	*% Below RDP*	Total
Emthanjeni	3 638	2 778		72	120	276	124	2%	6 888
Kareeberg	1 030	1 036		28	180	4	4	0.7%	2 282
Renosterberg	1 476	495		114		2	2	100%	2 087
Siyancuma	3 219	1 514	244	1 097	366	6	4	1.4%	6 450

Municipality	House Connection	Yard tap	Water Tank	Communal Standpipe	Borehole	None	*Below RDP*	*% Below RDP*	Total
Siyathemba	1 728	2 216		24	331	5	93	100%	4 299
Thembelihle	1 480	229		1					1 710
Ubuntu	929	1 627		469	336	40	69	69%	3 134
Umsobomvu	582	5 293		7	110	331	331	100%	6 213
PIXLEY									

Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

2.31.2 Water Backlogs

Even though many urban residents in the region have access to water supply, some local municipalities are still having water backlogs. Siyancuma local municipality has the highest backlog. The table below gives a reflection of the current water backlogs in the region.

Water backlogs for the District are as follows:

Table 37: Water Backlog by local municipality

Municipality	Water Backlog	Cost to provide water at R10,500 per HH	MIG allocation 53% ringfenced for water & sanitation	Funding need/shortfall
DMA Pixley Ka Seme	0	0	7 449,79	0
Emthanjeni	124	1,302,000	12 133,253	0
Kareeberg	4	42 000,000	8 217,653	0
Renosterberg	2	21,000	8 517,653	0
Siyancuma	982	10,311,000	16 034,903	645,097
Siyathemba	93	976,500	8 821,265	0
Thembelihle	0	0	9 838,051	0
Ubuntu	69	724,500	9 944,755	0
Umsobomvu	331	3,475,500	12,409,107	0
Total	1 605	16 ,852,500	93 365,777	645,097

Source: Department Technical Services 2008/09

2.31.3 Progress on free basic water delivery

As noted earlier, the introduction of free basic water for all residents has created a practical difficulty. Estimates for the Northern Cape proved that such a policy is almost impossible, because too much income is lost if the first 6 kilolitres of water is free to all, and the next category over 6 kiloliters must recover the lost income. This results in the next categories of step tariffs being unaffordably high. Should consumers resist high increases, water utilisation rates may drop which in turn results in the budgeted income targets not being reached.

It thus implies that the only manner in which 6 kiloliters of water can be provided free is by utilising the equitable share and only applying it to indigent residents. It should also be borne in mind that 6 kilolitres is based on 8 persons per household, which is a higher than the average number of persons per household in the Northern Cape. It is also importatn for municipalities to pay attention to those households who do not yet have a basic supply. Implementation of programmes/ projects should be intensified to ensure that those households who do not yet have infrastructure to receive basic water are a priority.

2.31.4 Water Resources

Each town, village or settlement in Pixley ka Seme has a unique setting as far as landscape, geology, water occurrence and environment is concerned. However, there are certain aspects of the environment that apply to the whole area. These aspects are therefore discussed here and should be read with each town's separate discussion. For planning purposes, aspects related to water resources and aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal and pollution is distinguished.

Aspects related to water resources that we should take into account when planning or managing water resources are:

- The landscape and rocks or geology of the area.
- The water-bearing properties of the rocks in the area such as success rate, expected yields and water quality.
- Rainfall and recharge which tell us about the sustainability of the resources. Recharge in the area is estimated to be about 10 to 15 mm per annum.
- Groundwater management and protection principles which include protection against depletion of resources or degradation of quality.
- Education and awareness programs for users in aspects such as occurrence, conservation and pollution of groundwater, should be part of water management.

Aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal or other pollution sources that should be taken into account when planning, developing or managing such activities are:

- Rock type or geology, which plays an important role in the feasibility and design of specific sanitation systems for specific settlements and indirectly affects the costs of a sanitation system and if ignored it can affect the health and lifestyle of a community.
- Shallow rock or deep soils occur within the confines of a development.
- The soils are sandy or clayey resulting in excavations collapsing or remaining open and stable.
- The soils and rocks are permeable and absorb water or are impervious so that no water penetrates them.
- A temporary or permanent shallow ground water table exists which serves as a water supply for the population and may be easily polluted.
- The rock formations upon which the development is located contain zones of groundwater storage, which are of regional, national or even only of local importance (aquifers). If the water in them is polluted and becomes unusable or requires treatment before it can be used may result in acute water shortages or high cost implications.
- No development upstream of a water source should be planned without professional advice regarding the potential impact on the resource.

The geohydrological and geotechnical considerations are very site specific and it is recommended that a professional consultant or officer from DWAF be consulted on these aspects.

2.31.5 Sanitation

The policy

According to the White Paper on Basic Household Sanitation, 2001, basic sanitation is defined as follows: “The minimum acceptable basic level of sanitation is:

(a) Appropriate health and hygiene awareness and behaviour;
(b) A system for disposing of human excreta, household waste water and refuse, which is acceptable and affordable to the users, safe, hygienic and easily accessible and which does not have an unacceptable impact on the environment; and
(c) A toilet facility for each household.

The Constitution defines basic sanitation as an on-site ventilated dry sanitation system, which is then referred to as the RDP standard against which levels of service are measured.

In the past, sanitation has been seen as a technical issue of toilet building, providing sewers, maintenance etc, whilst other aspects required by the White Paper have been ignored.

Identified issues

The following with regard to sanitation were identified:

- Purification works in many local municipalities are too small and pumps need upgrading.
- Sewage pumps also need to be upgraded.
- Some oxidation dams are too small ans need extensions.

Level of service

The IDP of Pixley ka Seme for 2003-2005 indicates that in 2002 there were 20 427 households (45.8%) in Pixley that had sanitation facilities that were below RDP standards. This is worse than the overall Northern Cape situation. Pixley also has a great number of bucket toilets that need to be replaced. Because of the serious water shortages, most of the bucket toilets are being replaced with dry sanitation systems.

Progress in delivery

Sanitation level of supply to residential sites and non-residential sites has been extracted from the DWAF database. Sanitation level of supply to residential occupied sites is detailed in the tables below. There are an estimated 19% of households with below RDP sanitation at present. Bucket sanitation which has not been phased out in many towns mainly accounts for this situation.

Table:38 Sanitation level of supply on residential sites:December 2007

Town	Flush	Septic Tank	Conservancy Tank	UDS	VIP	Bucket	Pit	None	Unknown	Below RDP	% Below RDP	Total
Britstown		3	445	103	374	17			15	32	3	989

De Aar	4 938	3	2			32				32	0.6	5 007
Hanover	136	20	91	182		400			1	401	32	1 231
Emthanjeni	**5074**	**26**	**538**	**285**	**374**	**449**			**16**	**465**	**35.6**	**7 227**
Carnavon	624				1	759				759	35	2 143
Vanweiksvlei	129				241					0		370
Vosburg	276					35			1	36	12	312
Kareeberg	1 026				242	794			1	795	39	2063
Petrusville	341		230			536				538	61	879
Phillipstown	112	2				509				509	60	853
Vanderkloof	391									0	0	391
Renosterberg	844	2	230			1 047				1 047	49	2 123
Belmont	9									0	0	9
Buckland									235	24	9	259
Campbell		11		155		229			1	230	66	351
Die Erwe		190								0	0	190
Douglas	2 604				30	1 276				1 276	33	4 910
Plooysburg		14			9				87	87	77	113
Salt Lake					10	2				2	14	14
Schmidsdrift					180	61				61	25	241
Griekwastad	334		505			456				456	35	1 295
Siynacuma	2 947	215	505	155	229	2 114			323	2 226	37	7 366
Marydale	33		194		290	185			7	192	21	901
Niekershoop			146		251	222				222	26	841
Prieska	2 994				59	2			104	106	3	3 265
Siyathemba	3 027		340		600	409			111	520	1	5007
Hopetown												
Orania	159									0	0	159
Strydenburg	70		126		20	240			5	245	56	441
Thembelihle	229		126		20	240			5	245	28	865
Loxton	60									60	50	120
Richmond												
Victoria West	318	379				166			3	169	16	1 057
Ubuntu	378	379				166			3	229	6	1 155
Colesberg	1 161		712		1 487	700			1	701	17	4 017
Norvalspont	238								4	0	0	238
Noupoort	1 911								5	4	0.2	1920
Umsobomvu	3 310		712		1 487	700			13	705	11	6175
PIXLEY	**16 835**	**622**	**2 451**	**440**	**2 952**	**5 919**			**472**	**6 233**	**19**	**32 001**

Source: PkS IDP 2008/09 and DWAF

The information in the table below indicates the following:

- 1 674 buckets are still remaining in pixley ka seme region
- The amount allocated (R59 873 000) for bucket eradication in the region is adequate 93 365,777

Table 39: Bucket eradication on formal stands and costs per local municipality

Municipality	Buckets onformal stands	Ringfenced bucket funds MIG & PIG	Funding Need/shortfall	Adequate funding
DMA Pixley ka Seme	0	7 449,792	R0	Yes
Emthanjeni	16	12133,253	0	Yes
Kareeberg	44	8217,653	0	Yes
Renosterberg	1	8517,653	0	Yes
Siyancuma	937	16 034,903	6 457,097	Yes
Siyathemba	112	8 821,265	0	Yes
Thembelihle	1	9 838,051	0	Yes
Ubuntu	558	9 944,755	0	Yes
Umsobomvu	5	12 409,107	0	Yes
Total	**1 674**	**93 365,777**	**6457,097**	**Yes**

Source: PKS Infrastructure Implementation Plan 2008

All local municipalities are currently implementing sanitation projects to address the sanitation backlog.

The sanitation programme in the Northern Cape was initiated in 1996. During October 1996, Mvula Trust submitted a business plan for the implementation of a sanitation programme in the Northern Cape. This plan's focus was on creating awareness amongst communities about the importance of health and hygiene and the role that appropriate sanitation

plays. The aim was to change the focus from a toilet-building programme to household demand programme where health and hygiene awareness was the key concern.

A sanitation programme which started in 1997/98 by DWAF was primarily meant to address the sanitation backlogs who at this stage was the only department addressing this need. Since then the Dept of Housing and Local Government has implemented a bucket eradication programme. DWAF and Dept of Housing and Local Government have reached an agreement that where Dept of Local Government constructs toilets, DWAF will undertake the awareness programme. This awareness entails health and hygiene issues and includes operation and maintenance of the toilet and the implication that the choice of toilet type has for the household.

2.31.6 Electricity

The Pixley ka Seme IDP of 2007/08 indicates that much of the district households 32 239 or 75% households have access to electricity for lighting and cooking purposes. As much as the existing situation is encouraging, it is however very important to note that quite a number of households (25%) are still using candles and paraffin as alternative power sources for meeting their power needs.

Table 40.: Electricity (households)

MUNICIPALITIES	MUNICIPALITY		ELECTRICITY OTHER		GAS		PARAFFIN		CANDLES		OTHER		UNSPECIFIED		TOTAL
	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	7 439	84.2	95	1.1	13	0.1	241	2.8	1 846	21.6	0	0	25	0.3	8 508
Kareeberg		80.4	170	6.2	4	0.1	119	0.04	773	28.2	1	0.03	18	0.6	2 738
Thembelihle		69.3	48	1.7	6	0.2	375	13.2	593	20.9	0	0	10	0.3	2 837
Siyathemba		86.3	13	2.4	2	0.04	115	2.5	788	17.3	1	0.02	29	0.6	4 542
Renosterberg		71.9	90	3.8	1	0.04	326	13.7	439	18.5	0	0	8	0.3	2 370
Ubuntu		78.9	149	3.5	9	0.2	362	8.5	1 036	24.5	0	0	20	0.5	4 232
Siyancuma		68.4	97	1.4	18	0.2	318	4.5	261	37.3	3	0.04	63	0.9	7 013
Umsobomvu		81.0	616	11.3	71	1.3	876	16.1	387	7.1	2	0.03	21	0.4	5 450
District (Total)	**32 230**	**75**	**847**	**2.2**	**124**	**0.3**	**3 772**	**10**	**6 129**	**16.3**	**7**	**0.01**	**204**	**0.54**	**37 690**

Sources: PkS IDP 2008/09

Identified issues

The following issues regarding electricity were identified:

- Implementation of free basic electricity is a problem.
- Eskom is the service provider to mainly the rural area and previous disadvantaged areas.
- Many sites that are earmarked for housing development do not have access to electricity.

2.32 Refuse removal

From planning and environmental point of view, solid waste is supposed to be collected two days per week in residential areas while those from industrial and commercial areas should be collected on a daily basis. The table below indicates that of the district total households (37 690) majority of them, 24 596 or 65.3 % have some form of formal refuse removal which is regularly collected on a weekly basis. At local or town level, however, the table also indicates that in some municipalities, e.g. Ubuntu, Kareeberg, and Siyancuma municipalities many households still dump refuse in their own dumping grounds. It is important to note here that the use of this form of removal represents great risk to public health, besides the unaesinetic impact it produces to the physical environment. The District and local municipalities have compiled their integrated waste management plans that are currently being used for wate management in the region. That of the District municipality is attached in the integration section of this IDP.

Identified issues

The following issues were identified by local municipalities:

- High cost of waste removal.
- Most of the waste disposal sites do not comply with legal requirements.
- There is a greate need for vehicles and equipment.
- Current disposal sites need to be upgrated.

Table 41.: Refuse Removal

MUNICIPALITIES	UNSPECIFIED		OTHER		NO DISPOSAL		OWN DUMP		COMMUNAL		MUNIC. OTHER		MUNIC. WEEKLY		TOTAL
	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	129	1.5	0	0	320	3.8	703	8.3	156	1.8	253	3	6 937	82	8 498
Kareeberg	35	1.3	0	0	122	4.5	771	28.2	87	3.2	2	0.1	1 721	63	2 738
Thembelihle	31	1.1	0	0	249	8.8	541	19.1	33	1.2	11	0.4	1 972	70	2 837
Siyathemba	60	1.3	0	0	58	1.3	820	18.1	702	15.5	20	0.4	2 882	64	4 542
Renosterberg	15	0.6	0	0	90	3.8	548	23.1	129	5.4	6	0.3	1 582	67	2 370
Ubuntu	41	1	1	0	192	4.5	1 169	27.6	405	9.6	7	0.2	2 417	57	4 232
Siyancuma	146	2.1	5	0.1	294	4.2	1 940	27.7	1 286	18.3	301	4.3	3 041	43	7 013
Umsobomvu	52	1	0	0	252	4.6	963	17.7	117	2.1	21	0.4	4 045	74	5 450
District (Total)	509	1.4	6	0	1 577	4.2	7 455	19.8	2 915	7.7	621	1.6	24 596	65	37 680

Sources:PkS IDP 2007/08

2.33 IMPROVEMENT IN BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY (SUMMARY)

According To Statistic South Africa, there has been substantial progress in basic service delivery in the district as shown in the table below.

The 2007 figures compared to the census figures of 2001 show that there has been progress particularly in the provision of piped water and electricity to households but while those living in informal housing have increased there are still many living in informal dwellings.

Overall electricity usage has increased, with 75% of households now using electricity for lighting, cooking and heating in 2001 as against 65% in 1996.

In 2007 households having access to piped water has increased to 96.7% from 90.6% in 2001.

The number of households living in formal housing increased to 87% from 85.6% in 1996.

Summary of access to service delivery

Table: 42 Households' percentage of access to services in 2001 to basic services by local municipalities

CATEGORY	MUNICIPALITY	1996				2001			
		NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITH ACCESS	%	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITHOUT ACCESS	%	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITHOU ACCESS	%	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITHOUT ACCESS	%
	Emthanjeni	8 138	95.3	402	4.7	8744	99.0	87	1.0
	Kareeberg	2 506	91.7	227	8.3	2 382	97.7	56	2.3
Water	Renosterberg	2 216	93.4	156	6.6	2 459	99.4	15	0.6
	Siyancuma	5 918	84.4	1 095	15.6	8 709	94.3	523	5.7
	Siyathemba	4.234	93.1	312	6.9	4 088	98.3	72	1.7
	Thembelihle	2 547	89.8	289	10.2	3 431	98.6	48	1.4
	Ubuntu	3 788	89.4	449	10.6	4 068	96.0	169	4.0
	Umsobomvu	5.214	95.6	240	4.4	5 794	98.3	102	1.7
	DMA	1 068	82.8	22	17.2	97888.7	124	124	11.3
	Pixley Ka Seme	35 629	90.6	3 392	9.4	40 653	96.7	1 196	3.3
	Emthanjeni	5 412	63.4	3 128	36.6	7 439	84.2	1 393	15.8
	Kareeberg	1 822	66.7	911	33.3	1 960	80.4	478	19.6
	Renosterberg	1 590	67.0	782	33.0	1 780	71.9	694	28.1
Electricity	Siyancuma	3 996	57.0	3 017	43.0	6 318	68.4	2 916	31.6
	Siyathemba	3 565	78.4	981	21.6	3 594	86.3	569	13.7
	Thembelihle	1 853	65.3	983	34.7	2 411	69.3	1 068	30.7
	Ubuntu	2 819	66.5	1 418	33.5	3 341	78.9	894	21.1
	Umsobomvu	4 110	75.4	1 344	24.6	4 773	81.0	1 123	19.0
	DMA	588	45.6	702	54.4	623	56.5	479	43.5
	Pixley Ka Seme	25 755	65.0	13 266		32 239	75.0	9 614	25.0
	Emthanjeni	4 582	53.7	3 958	46.3	6 164	69.8	2 668	30.2
	Kareeberg	1 401	51.3	1 332	48.7	1 348	56.3	1 089	44.7
	Renosterberg	1 102	45.5	1 270	53.5	1 324	53.5	1 149	46.5
Sanitation	Siyancuma	4 364	62.2	2 649	37.8	6 073	65.8	3 158	34.2
	Siyathemba	3 009	66.2	1 537	33.8	3 176	76.3	984	23.7
	Thembelihle	1 844	65.0	992	35.0	2 184	62.8	1 296	37.2
	Ubuntu	1 873	44.2	2 364	55.8	2 284	53.9	1 951	46.1
	Umsobomvu	2 722	49.9	2 732	50.1	3 246	55.1	2 648	44.9
	DMA	785	60.9	505	39.1	524	47.5	578	52.5
	Pixley Ka Seme	21 682	55.4	17 339	44.6	26 323	60.0	15 521	40.0
	Emthanjeni	7 599	89.0			8 005	91.0		
	Kareeberg	2 534	92.7			2 302	94.9		
	Renosterberg	1 980	83.3			2 246	90.9		
Housing	Siyancuma	4 819	68.7			6 764	73.4		
	Siyathemba	3 833	84.4			3 726	89.4		
	Thembelihle	2 418	85.4			2 709	77.9		
	Ubuntu	3 760	88.6			3 951	93.1		
	Umsobomvu	4 486	82.3			4 819	82.0		
	DMA	1 250	96.3			986	90.0		
	Pixley Ka Seme	32 679	85.6			35 508	87.0		

2.34 Telephones

Access to communication has improved in recent years with the installation of cellphone networks. However, access to these services in poorer communities and farm areas remains a problem.

On the whole the district is well served by a network of automatic and manual telephone exchanges. The main towns have exchanges linked to the smaller sub-centres with local manual exchanges. Local IDP's indicated that most of these exchanges, especially those in the farms are outdated and are in need of upgrading. Telkom is presently installing an electronic telecommunication system which will serve over a large area in the district. The new network is scheduled for completion very soon depending on the availability of funds.

2.34.1 Telephone Access

According to the table below most households in the district, approximately 66.2% do not have telephones at their homes although many of them have expressed need for the service. The existing situation results in many households still depending on public phones and other means of telecommunication. The public telephones according to Telkom authorities are vandalised frequently. The situation calls for a need to protect these facilities as they will be of help to the residents who depend on them.

It is perhaps interesting to note, as the table indicates, that only in Emthanjeni Municipal Area that a substantial number 2 875 (33.7%) of the households have telephones at their homes.

Table 43: Telephone Access by Local Municipalities

MUNICIPALITIES	UNSPECIFIED		OTHER		NO DISPOSAL		OWN DUMP		COMMUNAL		MUNIC. OTHER		MUNIC. WEEKLY		TOTAL
	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	129	1.5	0	0	320	3.8	703	8.3	156	1.8	253	3	6 937	82	8 498
Kareeberg	35	1.3	0	0	122	4.5	771	28.2	87	3.2	2	0.1	1 721	63	2 738
Thembelihle	31	1.1	0	0	249	8.8	541	19.1	33	1.2	11	0.4	1 972	70	2 837
Siyathemba	60	1.3	0	0	58	1.3	820	18.1	702	15.5	20	0.4	2 882	64	4 542
Renosterberg	15	0.6	0	0	90	3.8	548	23.1	129	5.4	6	0.3	1 582	67	2 370
Ubuntu	41	1	1	0	192	4.5	1 169	27.6	405	9.6	7	0.2	2 417	57	4 232
Siyancuma	146	2.1	5	0.1	294	4.2	1 940	27.7	1 286	18.3	301	4.3	3 041	43	7 013
Umsobomvu	52	1	0	0	252	4.6	963	17.7	117	2.1	21	0.4	4 045	74	5 450
District (Total)	509	1.4	6	0	1 577	4.2	7 455	19.8	2 915	7.7	621	1.6	24 596	65	37 680

Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

2.35 Postal Services

There are 8 fully fledged post offices and about 5 retail postal agents that are serving the whole of Pixley district including the farms. All the post offices are located in the main towns. According to the Head of De Aar Post Office all the post offices are in good conditions and the security in them is being stepped up. The information also shows that the towns are better served with postal facilities than the rural areas which experience periodic delays in mail delivery, due to the absence of proper facilities to convey such mail.

The findings from De Aar Post Office revealed that postal services in towns are also ploughed by many problems. Some residential areas in towns where the houses are not numbered and where the streets do not have names experience delays and non-deliverance of mail in some cases.

2.36 Transportation

The people in the towns use micro-busses, private cars as well as walking to go to their places of employment. As far as public taxis are concerned they operate mostly during morning hours when the workers are going to work and in the afternoon when they are going back from work to their respective homes. On Saturdays the taxis operate from morning to 13h00 when businesses are open. There are no taxis on Sundays.

Presently there is only one mini-bus that operates between Prieska and De Aar railway station twice a week. The route between De Aar and Phillipstown is also served by a mini-bus which operates on a daily basis.

As a result of there being no adequate public transport, most of the people who want to undertake long distance trips rely on railway passenger services which operate between Johannesburg and Cape Town.

The use of bicycles is also very popular but users express that there is no planning for cyclists as there are no fully developed tracks in the whole region. As a result of this scenario cyclists are always in conflict either vehicular traffic or pedestrians.

As mentioned earlier, the vicinity of the townships to the places of employment which is concentrated in the Central Business District (CBD) of all the towns, also encourage people to walk to their respective work places. In the event of the existing situation a full development of pedestrian walkways and crossing points will be helpful in the elimination of pedestrian and vehicular conflicts in towns, especially in areas where lack of such facilities can be a source of danger to pedestrians.

The table below shows that the main mode of transport in the province and in the Pixley ka Seme region (37.3%/61377) is on foot as the majority of the population does not have access to modern transportation. Only 6.9% (11289) of the

population have access to privately owned vehicle and 2.6% (4237) make use of public transport, in the form of a bus, taxi or train. The use of taxi's/minibuses is notably lower than in the province.

Table 44: Mode of Transport, 2001

Mode of Transport	Northen Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
On foot	31.9%	37.3%
By car as a driver	4.4%	3.5%
By bus	2.9%	1.3%
By minibus/taxi	3.3%	1.2%
By bicycle	0.8%	0.7%
By motorcycle	0.2%	0.2%
By train	0.1%	0.1%
By car as a passenger	4.2%	3.4%
Other	0.8%	0.3%

Source: PKS Socio- Economic Profile, 2008

The lack of public transport throughout the district calls for a need to compile Integrated Transport Plans by the district and local municipalities that will be used by all stakeholders for promoting public transport in the regio

2.36.1 Airstrips

Table 37 indicates that there are fourteen airstrips serving the district. As noted in some local IDP's all the airstrips have dirt runways except the one that is situated at the military base in De Aar which has a concrete runway. A ground survey, however, revealed that most of them seem not to have been in use for some time as no maintenance is done on the runways. The improvement of the land strips could be favourable for the purposes of more effective exploitation of the district tourism potential.

Table 45: Airstrips by Local Municipality

Municipality	Area	Airstrips
Emthanjeni	De Aar	2
	Hanover	1
	Britstown	1
Kareeberg	Carnavon	1
	Van Wyksvlei	-
	Vosburg	-
Thembelihle	Hopetown	1
	Strydenburg	-
Siyathemba	Prieska	1
	Marydale	-
	Niekerkshoop	1
Renosterberg	Petrusville	1
	Vanderkloof	-
	Phillipstown	-
Ubuntu	Victoria – West	1
	Richmond Farms	1
	Hutchinson	-
	Merriman	-
	Loxton	1
Siyancuma	Douglas	1
	Campbell	-
	Griekwastad	-
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	1
	Noupoort	-
	Norvalspont	-
District Total		**14**

2.37 Education

The table below shows the education system in South Africa and the level of education by population of the district. The table shows that a significant of proportion 24.7 % of the population has no qualification and 52.3 % had only primary and secondary level of qualifications. Of the total population 5.0 % are matriculants while only 2.6 % have a degree. The existing situation can only be explained by a substantial number of previously disadvantaged population groups who did not have equal access to education in the past era.

According to the Municipal Profiles of 2002, the primary school population represented 46.3 % of the total population of the district. There are 49 primary schools and 18 secondary schools and combined schools in the district. While the actual number of schools is generally satisfactory according to standard, an acute shortage of schools is experienced in the remote areas of the district. In many cases only one school is serving a wide region in the rural areas.

Inadequate schools in rural areas involved long walking distances by children to reach the schools.

As far as provisions of facilities and / or services are concerned, many local IDP's have noted that most schools in the regions are characterised by lack of essential services such as water, electricity and sanitation.

De Aar Campus which used to be a satellite of Northern Cape College in Kimberley is the only tertiary institution in the district. The institution offers courses like Marketing Management, Hospitality Services, Public Relations, ICDL, etc. It has 375 students in De Aar and 50 in Colesberg. The existing actual number of tertiary institutions is not considered sufficient for long term education needs of the district.

Crèches

Presently there are 20 crèches in the district and they are situated in the main towns such as De Aar, Victoria-West, Hopetown, etc. The crèches are established and run by the Department of Education. The high number of established crèches is an indication of how the Department of Education is committed to meeting the educational needs of young children in the district.

Identified issues

The following issues were identified during the IDP Representative Forum Meeting:

- Shortage of institutions for higher learning.
- Lack of transport for farm schools .
- Illiteracy.
- Good secondary pass rate.
- Brain drain from the region.

Table 46: Illiteracy (Highest Level Reached) by Local Municipalities

MUNICIPALITIES	UNSPECIFIED		NONE		PRIMARY		SECONDARY		MATRIC		TERTIARY		UNDER 5 YEARS		OTHER		TOTAL
	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	1 229	3.2	7 541	19.3	12 395	32.2	9 048	23.5	2 731	7.1	1 212	3.2	4 024	10.5	255	0.7	38 435
Kareeberg	187	1.6	3 508	30.6	3 894	34	1 669	14.5	625	5.4	315	2.7	1 229	10.7	46	0.4	11 473
Thembelihle	527	4	3 835	29	4 514	34	1 938	14.6	634	4.8	326	2.5	1 430	10.8	56	0.4	13 260
Siyathemba	481	2.5	4137	21.4	7 256	37.5	3 688	19.1	1 011	5.2	498	2.6	2 144	11.1	136	0.7	19 351
Renosterberg	65	0.7	2 756	29.2	3 441	36.5	1 447	15.3	500	5.3	262	2.8	947	10	18	0.2	9 436
Ubuntu	562	2.9	5 192	26.5	7 022	35.8	2 995	15.3	825	4.2	690	3.5	2 239	11.4	76	0.4	19 601
Siyancuma	3 105	9.1	8 851	26	11 841	34.8	4 350	12.8	1 148	3.4	644	1.9	3 972	11.7	102	0.3	34 013
Umsobomvu	531	2.1	6 460	25.5	9 117	36	4 764	18.8	1 147	4.5	568	2.2	2 658	10.5	118	0.5	25 363
District (Total)	**6 687**	**4**	**42 280**	**24.7**	**59 480**	**34.8**	**29 899**	**17.5**	**8 621**	**5**	**4 515**	**2.6**	**18 643**	**11**	**807**	**0.5**	**17 0932**

2.38 Stormwater drainage

Stormwater drains channel waters from the settlement area to the catchments thus removing water away from roads. They should be designed along roads and should form a hierarchy.

Information gathered from the local IDP's indicates that the stormwater drains in most towns are not fully developed and most roads are without drainage systems or where they exist they are filled with sand or rubbish. This situation poses a traffic hazard through eroded and flooded roads.

In Ubuntu Municipal Area, e.g,. the information from the IDP regarding roads and drainage are as follows:

- ⇨ The roads in all towns are gravel roads of a low standard.
- ⇨ They become inaccessible during the rainy season.
- ⇨ The lack of decent drainage system results in the flooding of properties during the rainy season.

This situation is also prevalent in most towns within the district.

2.39 Roads

As has been motioned earlier road coverage in the region is good and major improvements in terms of maintenance have occurred. However, the information that was obtain from the Department of Infrastructure and Technical Services and local IDP's indicate that apart from the main roads that are in good conditions the roads that are serving the rural areas remain of very poor quality. Thus accessibility into the rural areas is still difficult as a consequence of which efficient transport and communication in the region has been impeded. It was also noted from the information that poor conditions of these roads impact on effective service delivery in the rural areas.

Road Maintenance

The district municipality is only responsible for the maintenance of gravel/dirt roads in the region. The total length of these roads is shown in the table below

Table 47: Roads Maintenance

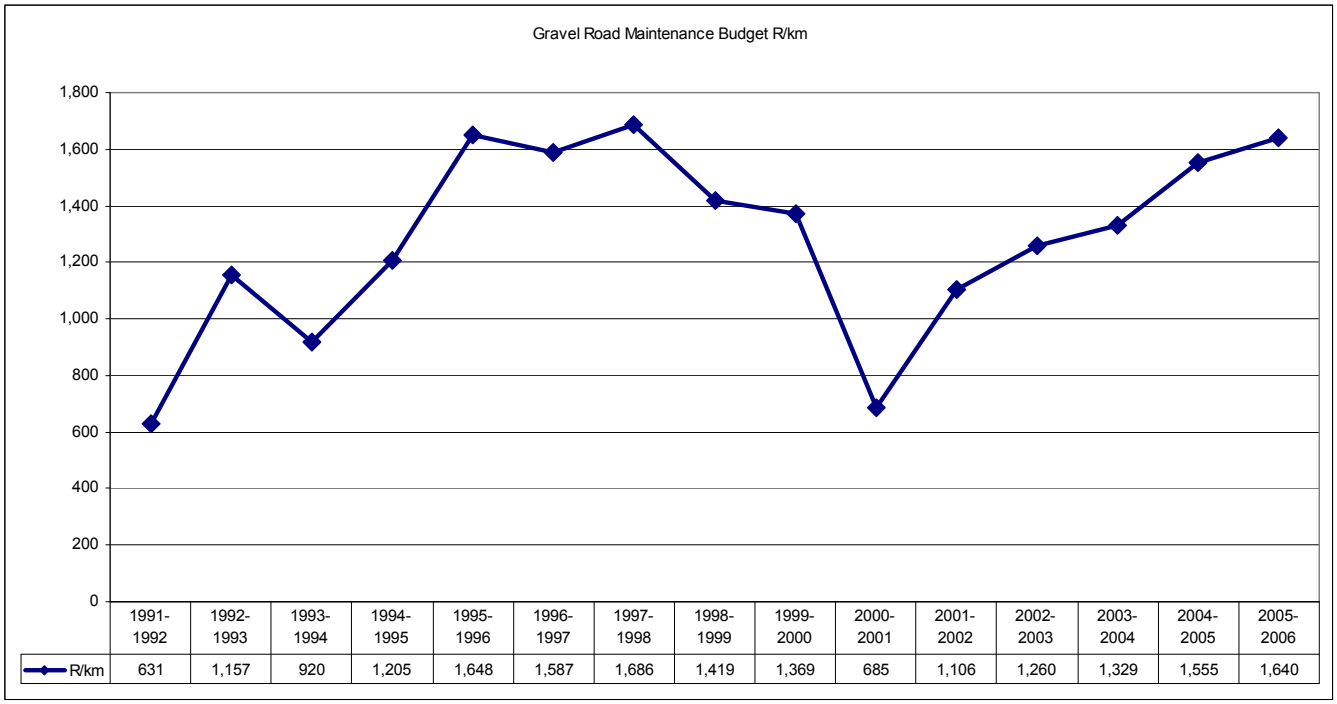
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality			
		Average daily traffic	
Road Type	Length	All	Heavy
Gravel Divisional	5,694	20	2
Gravel Main	2,594	45	5
Gravel Trunk	113	36	4
Total	8,401	27	3
Minor Roads	24,000	5	1

***Source: Department of Technical Services**, 2008*

Funding

The funding allocations for the maintenance of gravel roads in the district from 1991 to 2006 are shown in the table below

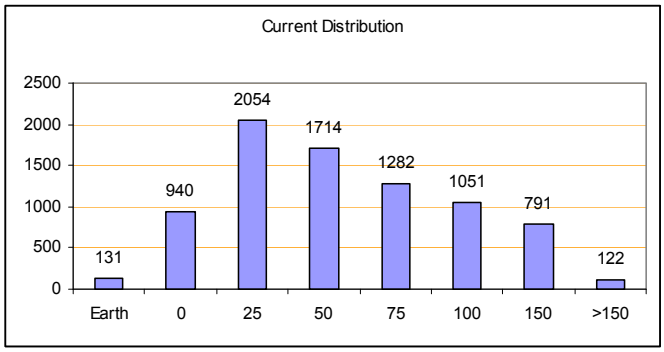
Figur 8: Gravel Road Maintenance Budget

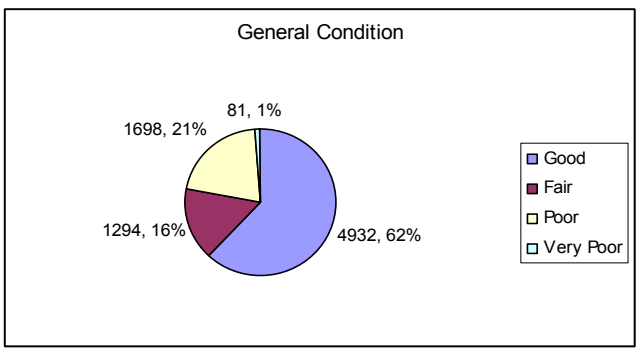


	1991-1992	1992-1993	1993-1994	1994-1995	1995-1996	1996-1997	1997-1998	1998-1999	1999-2000	2000-2001	2001-2002	2002-2003	2003-2004	2004-2005	2005-2006
R/km	631	1,157	920	1,205	1,648	1,587	1,686	1,419	1,369	685	1,106	1,260	1,329	1,555	1,640

During the meeting we had with Mr H Greeff, the Head of Technical Services, it was noted that the poor condition of gravel roads is due to lack of capacity and resources of the district and local municipalities to maintain them. It was also noted that due to funding contaitns as demonstrated in the above table, all gravel works were stopped in 1998 and since then the gravel road network lost on average 50% of the gravel wearing course. Currently the backlog on regraveling is estimated at R70 million for the district. A regraveling programme according to Mr Greeff will be welcomed by the District Municipality as many complaints have already been received by his department regarding the worsening condition of the road network.

The information from the gravel road management system report indicates that about 1,072km of the major network in the district are without any gravel and thus can be defined as dirt/earth roads, and the average condition of the gravel road network can be rated as fair with 22% of the roads in a poor to very poor category. Therefore regular upgrading or maintenance of these roads is required in order to keep them in a good condition.





2.39.1 Road Priorities

According to the infrastructure development implementation plan the District Municipality is to regravel and upgrade all road networks in the district. The roads to be regravelled and upgraded are showned in the road priority list in the annexure.

The following photos show some of the roads in the region and common problems that are caused by a thin gravel wearing course.

Potholes developed on Main Road MR 803 Hopetown – Douglas

Drainage problems as road is below natural ground – MR 767 Carnarvon – Prieska

Rocks visible due to lack of gravel wearing gravel wearing coarse Divisional Road 3123 Heuningnskloof

Regraveling done labour intensively near Salt Lake on MR 803

2.39.2 Blading Maintenance

According to the National Department of Transport guidelines, gravel roads should be maintained according to certain standards and blading frequencies. If the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality has to comply with this provision/regulation the district municipality would therefore need 26 grader areas. Currently due to budget constraints the district municipality has only 15 grader areas of which 5 are outsourced to a private contractor.

2.39.3 Routine Maintenance

According to the information obtained from the Department of Infrastructure and Technical Services the District Municipality has only 2 routine maintenance teams for the whole district and therefore it is unable to deliver an effective service to the community. In order to provide and facilitate sustainable infrastructure development, a private partnership has been established in 2006 between the department, district municipality and farmers associations Douglas, Prieska, Marydale and Griekwastad areas for the routine maintenance on roads.

2.40 Resources

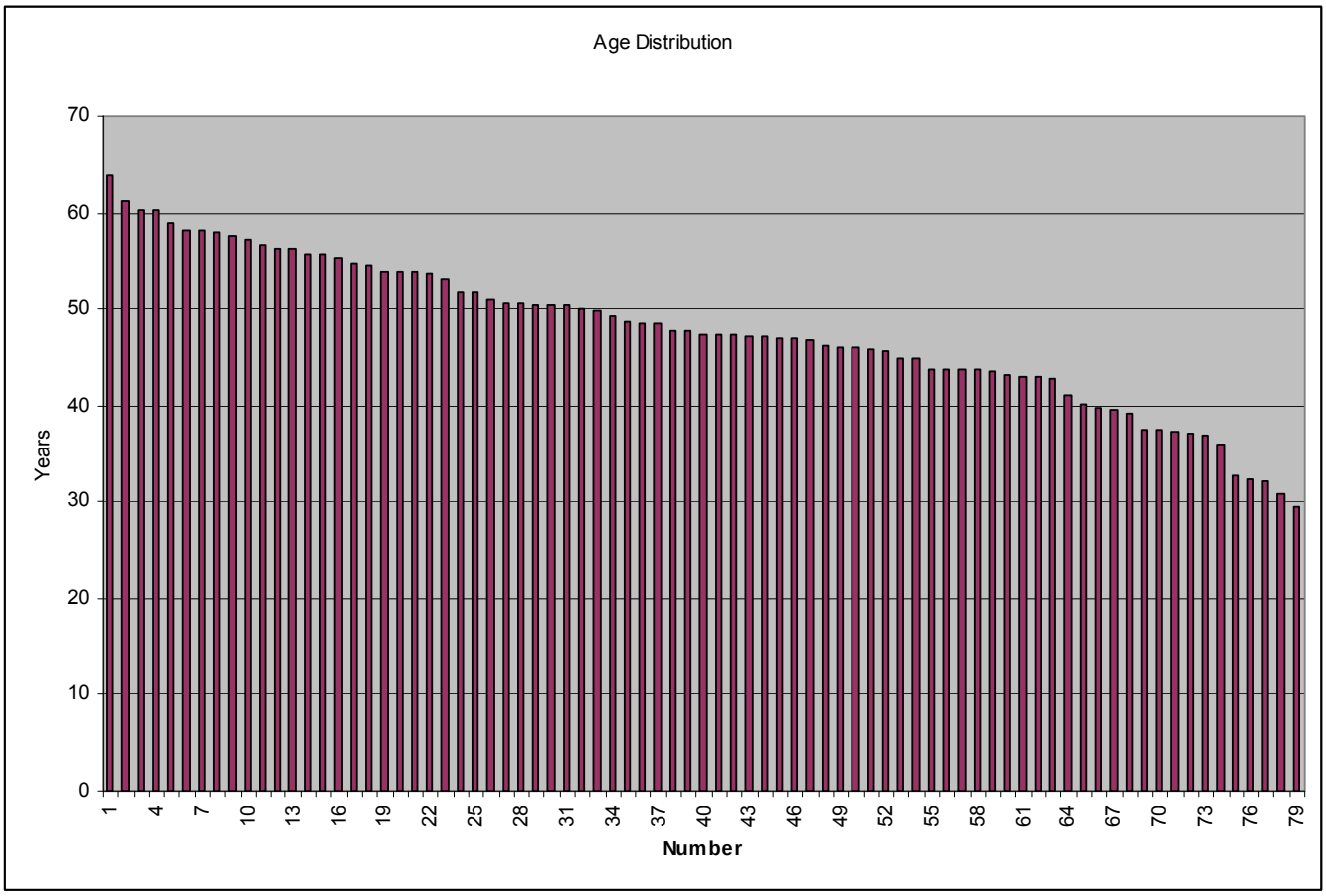
2.40.1 Plant Condition

Most of the plant that are used currently by the department of infrastructure and technical services for road maintenance and upgrading were purchased during the apartheid government. This implies that on average the plants are 25 years old. It was noted in the discussion that we had with the department that the availability of the plant is ±45%, thus had a negative impact on service delivery. In normal conditions a grader will be able to blade about 1000km of roads per year but with a 45% availability it is only possible to blade 450km which means that some of the roads could not be bladed on time. Construction plant is also a major problem and has to be replaced if major or heavy maintenance, e.g. regraveling and road rehabilitation is to be done in the district. There was a strong conviction from these problems that the District Municipality has the labour to do the work but without the plant that is in a good condition it would be impossible to effectively maintain the roads.

2.40.2 Personnel

The personnel component of this department also remains a problem regarding serivce delivery in the region. As was noted from the information that was provided by the department during the IDP review, in 1999 before emalgamation the Bo-Karoo Divisional Council had 135 staff members that were working in the Technical Services and since then a moratorium was placed on the appointment of staff. Currently the section has 73 staff members with age distributions as shown in the figure below. As can be seen from the figure below, almost a third of the workers will retire over the next ten years leaving the District Municipality with capacity problems. The ramification of this problem is that there is a need to recruit new workers that will effectively drive Technical Services and Infrastructure Development in the region.

Figure 9: Age distribution



2.41 Community Facilities

Libraries

The table below shows that presently there are some sizable number of libraries in the district which are owned and run by local municipalities. The only toy library in the district as a whole is situated in Nonzwakazi and it is run by the Department of Education. According to the information we received from the local municipalities, most of the libraries especially those that are located in the historically disadvantaged communities or townships have limited resources.

Community Halls

All the main towns and some previously disadvantaged towns have community halls. The existing community halls are used for various activities such as musical shows, meetings, conferences, churches, funerals, etc.

Identified issues

The identified issues regarding roads, streets and stormwater are as follows:

- Most of the road network in the rural areas is dirt roads. Poor maintenance of them impact on the accessibility of the district.
- Stormwater systems are not in place in most areas.
- Poor maintenance of the dirt roads also impact on effective service delivery in the rural areas.
- Some street network is in poor condition due to lack of capacity and resources by District and Local Municipalities.

Recreational Facilities

As noted in some of the local IDP's, the situation with regard to this facility is as follows:

- ❖ Main towns in the district enjoy a high level of provision of recreational facilities. The facilities provided by local municipalities in some of hese areas include rugby pitches, swimming pools, tennis, squash courts, etc. As far as the maintenance of these facilities is concerned, our ground survey revealed that they are regularly maintained by local municipalities.

- ❖ Only in the main towns that parks are fairly distributed and regularly maintained.

- ❖ In the townships recreational facilities such as soccer pitches, swimming pools, etc. are also provided but most of them are presently in terms of standards not well developed. A ground survey shows that the soccer pitches are just open areas with no infrastructure of any sort. Furthermore, the survey also revealed that in some townships there are no sporting facilities and residents have to go somewhere else for sports.

- ❖ Parks in the townships are mostly overgrown and unkempt. This situation makes the existing parks attractive dumping sites and lead to unsafe and polluted areas within the townships.

Religion Facilities

Church goers in the district are well catered for with many churches of various denominations well distributed in towns. Some of these churches, however, are well developed while others are very old, not well developed and needed rehabilitation.

Cemetery

The available records on this facility show that all the towns are well served with cemeteries, some of which are very old and full. Various smaller cemeteries also exist in the farms. It is only in Umsobomvu municipal area that the existing cemeteries seem to be inadequate as was noted in their IDP. Therefore the municipality will either improve or extend the existing ones or identify new sites for cemeteries.

It is important to not, however, that some of the cemeteries in the region are presently in a poor state as they are not regularly maintained. Furthermore, there are also cases where grave property like flower vases were stolen. In the event of this situation screening of these cemeteries from the public is recommended in order to protect the homes of the deceased.

Table 48: Community Facilities by Local Municipalities

Municipality	Area	Crèches	Primary Schools	Secondary Schools	Combined Schools	Tertiary Institutions	Libraries	Community Halls	Recreation
Emthanjeni	De Aar	3	8	4	-	1	3	3	Yes
	Hanover	2				-			
	Britstown	2				-			
Kareeberg	Carnavon	-	1	1	1	-	2	-	Yes
	Van Wyksvlei	-	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
	Vosburg	1	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
Thembelihle	Hopetown	1	2		1	-	1	2	No
	Strydenburg	1	1	1	-	-	2	1	No
Siyathemba	Prieska	-	4	2	-		2	3	Yes
	Marydale	1	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
	Niekerkshoop	-	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
Renosterberg	Petrusville	1	2	1	-	-	1	2	No
	Phillipstown	1	2	1	-	-	1	2	No
	Vanderkloof	1	1	-	-	-	1	1	No
Ubuntu	Victoria-West / farms	3	10	2		-	2	3	Yes
	Richmond	2	2	1		-	1	3	Yes
	Hutchinson	-	1			-	-	1	-
	Merriman	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Loxton	1	1	-	-	-	1	1	Yes
Siyancuma	Douglas								
	Campbell								
	Griekwastad								
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	1	5	2	-	-	1	3	Yes
	Noupoort	1	3	1	-	1	1	2	Yes
	Norvalspont	0	1	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
District (Total)		**22**	**49**	**16**	**2**	**2**	**23**	**31**	

PKS IDP 2007/08

2.42 Summary of identified problems/issues

Physical

- Dust pollution does occur in the region as a result of sparse vegetation and low variable rainfall.

Demographics

- Declining population is a challenge.
- There is a reasonably low population growth rate in the district. The average growth rate is 1% per annum.
- The younger age group which is the future labour force of the district is demanding services such as education, shelter, recreational facilities and employment.
- Thefts and other illegal activities are a result of many problems e.g. unemployment that are dictated by unpleasant economic conditions of the district.
- A review of the existing level of education by population indicates a clear shortage of skilled manpower in the district.
- The majority of the households in the district who live below the Minimum Living Level (MLL) of Poverty Datum Line (PDL) are really faced with financial hardships.

Social and community facilities

- Inadequate schools especially in the farms results in many young people having to travel long distances to areas where the schools exist.
- The existing post-secondary tertiary institution in De Aar is inadequate.
- Some of the health centres in the region are ill-equipped and under-staffed.
- Insufficient health centres
- Aftercare facilities and support services to patients
- Hospice
- Public transport services for patients
- General lack of Public transport
- Functional District Aids Council
- Recreational facilities in the townships do not have basic services and infrastructure.
- The findings also revealed that recreational facilities in the historically disadvantaged communities or neighbourhoods are poorly developed.
- The slow rate of implementation of housing projects by local municipalities has left them with a considerable backlog of housing problems.
- Lack of privacy and overcrowding in homes are a result of housing backlog.
- The high and rising number of informal dwelling units in the district is also a result of housing backlog
- A substantial number of the existing plots and/or houses needed to be serviced with basic services e.g. water.
- The social dimension of all local municipalities is characterized by high and rising levels of poverty (43.5%) which is caused by:

- ⇨ Landlessness;
- ⇨ Unemployment;
- ⇨ Vulnerability (i.e. deprivation, insecurity, defencelessness and exposure to risk);
- ⇨ Lack of control over any resources;
- ⇨ Limited or no access at all to basic services e.g. water and shelter and
- ⇨ Lack of income opportunities

- ❖ Some cemeteries are presently in a poor state.
- ❖ The ground surveys also revealed that quite a number of graves in some cemeteries have been vandalized.
- ❖ The existing number of libraries is inadequate and many of those that are presently operating are not very resourceful.
- ❖ Refuse removal services do not exist in areas such as Victoria-West, Richmond and Loxton.

Infrastructure and public utilities

- ❖ Some households still rely on boreholes and natural sources as an alternative source of water to meet their water needs.
- ❖ Many water and sewerage reticulation facilities needed upgrading.
- ❖ Levels of sanitation are still below RDP standards
  - ⇨ Less than half of the total households in the district had access to flush toilets.
- ❖ More regular solid waste collection is required in all the municipal areas.
- ❖ The dumping of refuse by some households in their own dumping grounds presents a great risk to public health.
- ❖ Electricity supply within the district is not a major problem. However some few households (26.3%) are still using candles and paraffin as an alternative sources of power for meeting their power needs.
- ❖ The report of survey has also shows that there is need to urgently upgrade some of the existing electricity distribution networks as they are in a poor condition.
- ❖ Street lighting is problematic in most of the municipal areas.
- ❖ Communication systems are well distributed in most of the municipal areas, however some of the systems especially those in the rural areas are in need of upgrading.
- ❖ Most of the residents who do not have telephones at their homes depend on public telephones which are being vandalized.
- ❖ Lack of storm-water drains especially in the historically disadvantaged townships is really a serious problem.
- ❖ Storm-water drains in most of the towns are not fully developed.
- ❖ Gravel and some tarred roads in the townships are in a poor condition and need to be upgraded.
- ❖ Inadequate public transportation system calls for a need to have an integrated regional transport plan.
- ❖ Pedestrian walkways are inadequate in all the municipal areas.
- ❖ No cycle tracks in all the towns.

Socio-economic conditions

- Unemployment is rife in all the local municipalities. The current unemployment rate in the region ranges from 13% to 32%.
- The level of income is far below the Minimum Living Level (MLL) or Poverty Datum Line (PDL) for majority of the people hence there is a high number of people who are not able to pay for their municipal services.
- The rapid growth of informal settlements in many municipal areas is a result of many social and economic problems such as landlessness and housing backlog.
- Increase of HIV infections amongst the youth
- Alcohol and substance abuse
- Street children
- Communities need more police stations
- Police visibility
- Intensification of HIV/AIDS programmes in the region
- Rise in teenage pregnancies
- Current land ownership and land development patterns strongly reflect the political and economic conditions of the past era. Racially based land policies were a cause of insecurity, landlessness and poverty amongst black population and a cause of inefficient land administration and land use. Therefore land reform programmes that are to be implemented within the IDP framework must deal with the inequitable distribution of land that is still being experienced in the district.
- Limited or no land available to stimulate small and medium sized economic activities in the region.
- Very little of the land is owned by provincial and national governments, local authorities and parastatal organizations.
- Almost all the visible active/arable lands within the district are owned by the white population. This situation clearly indicates that there is a need for Local and District municipalities to be more proactive in the implementation of land reform programmes as outlined in the White Paper on Land Policy so as to open up land which is needed for stimulating the kind of economic growth that will ensure a better life for all. Furthermore, it is perhaps important for all local municipalities to also appraise all land reform programmes that are currently being implemented to see if they are in line with the objectives of the national land reform policy.

Safety and security

- Increase in rape and demestic violence
- Shortage of police resources (vehicles and manpower)
- Inadequate police stations (poor access due to long distance from the township)
- Low crime rate, but high levels of drug and alcohol abuse with related family abuse occure in the region.
- Youth delinquency is a problem due to the lack of recreation activities in the region.

Other Problems

Other problems/issues that were also identified by municipalities are shown in the table below.

Table 49: Other problems /issues identified in the local IDP's

Municipality	Physical	Demographics	Social	Infrastructure	Economic
Emthanjeni De Aar Britstown Hanover			❖ Water quality is hard and presents problems for bathing, washing and electric appliances.		
Kareeberg Carnavon Van Wyksvlei Vosburg			❖ No community hall ❖ No crèches or day care centres ❖ No crèches or day care centres.		
Thembelihle Hopetown Strydenburg			❖ Shortage of service sites ❖ Increased fight against HIV/AIDS, crime and unwanted pregnancies	❖ Maintenance problems	❖ Stimulation of the informal sector
Siyathemba Prieska Niekerkshoop Marydale			❖ No crèches or day care centres ❖ No one-stop centre ❖ No tourist information centre ❖ Inadequate guest houses and coffee shops ❖ No drive-in cinema ❖ No crèches or day care centres ❖ No sports facilities ❖ Fighting HIV/AIDS is a serious problem ❖ No sports and recreational facilities		❖ Need resources required for the extension of vegetables project
Renosterberg Petrusville Phillipstown Vanderkloof			❖ Postal collection and delivery is inadequate ❖ Postal collection and delivery is		

			inadequate ❖ Fire vehicle and equipment is not in a good state and it needs overhaul and upgrading. ❖ Fire hydrants are required in Keurtjiekloof and Waterkant.		
Ubuntu Victoria-West Richmond Hutchinson Loxton Merriman			❖ No libraries ❖ No libraries ❖ No secondary schools ❖ No secondary school ❖ No community hall		
Siyancuma Douglas Campbell Griekwastad			❖ Weak conservation of property ❖ Nepotism ❖ HIV/AIDS ❖ Crime		
Umsobomvu Colesberg Noupoort Norvalspont			❖ No clinics ❖ No libraries ❖ No crèches ❖ No secondary schools ❖ No libraries ❖ No community halls		

Source: PKS IDP 2008/09

2.43 Municipal-wide prioritised needs

The analysis of the local IDP's revealed that there are a wide range of prioritised needs in each municipal area. The needs that were identified and prioritised by municipalities in collaboration with their representatives forums are as follows.

Table 50: Prioritised needs by local municipalities

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
Siyathemba • Prieska	• Housing • Stormwater drainage • One Stop centre • Legal advice centre • Tourist centre (information office) • Technical school • Drive in cinema • Alpha library • Upgrading of present infrastructure	• Dry and packaging of fruit and vegetables • Dry cleaners • Metro branch • Leather tannery • Guest houses and coffee shops • Recreational facilities • Upgrading of clinic • Transhex mine LED • Power outlet for after hours sales of electricity	• Housing • Sanitation • Access to government services • Stormwater drainage • Health services • HIV/ AIDS • One Stop service centre • Maintenance of present services within the municipal area • Land	• Economic development • Sports and recreational facilities • Illiteracy • High mast lighting • Public transport to service municipal area.
Siyancuma • Ward One	• Health • Employment • Housing	• Agricultural facilities		• Housing • Water and sanitation • Health • Roads • Sports and

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
• Ward Two • Ward Three • Ward Four • Ward Five	• Health • Roads • Water • Electricity • Sanitation • Houses • Job creation • Health services • Sanitation • Skills development centre (14-35 youth) • Employment • HIV/IADS • Employment • Dusty roads • Housing • Basic services • Education • Sports facilities and recreational centre • Projects and job creation • Schools and crèches • Housing • Roads • Day care centre • Sports facilities • Information centre and library • Electricity • Recreation centre • Removing of cattle in the area • HIV/ AIDS	creational facilities • Agricultural facilities • Water and sanitation • Housing • LED • Housing • Water and sanitation • Roads • Day care centres • LED • Information centre and library • Sport facilities • Employment and poverty alliviation • Housing • Electricity • Education and youth development
Thembelihle	• Upgrading of the N12 as a transport facility	• The widening of bridges over the road • Upgrading of roads • Entrance into towns • Fencing of the road reserves • Reduction of speed through the build-up areas. • Improved road sign
	• Improvement of urban roads and stormwater	• Upgrading of stormwater and roads in all urban areas, with special reference to the lower income areas, provision of new roads to future development areas • Upgrading of the main entrance road to Deetlefsville in Strydenburg
	• Provision of facilities within the rural areas for the inhabitants	• Link roads] • Sewer and water facilities • Electricity • Housing • Schools • Health services • Safety and security • Sport facilities • Community hall
	• Institutional building	• Structuring human resources • A well organised and effective administrative system • An effective financial system which include the budget • Coordinated services delivery to communities • Functional infrastructure e.g. buildings and equipment
	• Community development	• Poverty relief and job creation • Capacity building • Empowerment • Community halls • Cemeteries • Health and emergency

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs	
		• Sport and recreational facilities	services
	• Provision of improved sewer facilities.	• Provision of proper internal sewer in the existing informal areas • Phasing out of bucket and tank system • Upgrading of the main sewer purification plants	• Installation of re-use of purified water • Sanitation for the small holdings to be developed in Hopetown
	• Upgrading and provision of proper electrical facilities	• Upgrading of the Strydenburg and Hopetown distribution system • Supply of equipment to do maintenance with.	• Internal electrification of informal erven and small holdings to be developed. • Installation of pre-paid meters • Provision of area lights
	• Upgrading, provision and maintenance of water facilities	• Upgrading of the water quality and short term bulk resources for Strydenburg • Storage and bulk water supply to Hopetown and Strydenburg • Supply all informal erven with metered water	• Upgrading of the bulk water supply system and purification thereof. • Provision of water to small holdings to be developed. • Provision of water to the municipal grazing camps.
	• Upgraded refuse removal system	• Provision of a new dumping sit and improved refuse removal ir Hopetown and Strydenburg	
	• Proper fire brigade system	• Provision of fire brigade system	
	• Upgraded health services	• Upgrading of local municipalities • Upgrading of the ambulance services • Paramedics to be available for accidents on the N12 • Upgrading of mobile clinic services. • Public to be made health aware. • Increased birth control	• Clinics to cater for a wide spectrum of services • Health facilities for the disabled • Better trained personnel. • Centre to care for AIDS people (Hospice). • Need for direction signs to the clinics.
	• Improved social life and condition.	• Care for the orphans • Care for the street children • Improved security services • Social distrust amongst the communities	• Address abuse of women • A better disciplined youth • Alcohol and drug abuse.

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs	
	• Sports facilities	• Provision of sport facilities for the disabled and a multi-purpose sport centre	
	• Improved environmental appearance of the town.	• Poor state of residential parks. • Dirty environment, etc.	• Poor maintenance on parks.
	• Housing • Formalization of informal settlement in Hopetown	• More formal houses and erven • Provide self help erven. • Develop small holdings • Church sites and business erven. • More RDP houses. • Upgrading of two room houses in Deetlefsville	• Town houses in lower income areas • Housing for farm workers • Improved professional planning policies for the future. • Upgrading of single rooms in Steynville
	• Improved educational facilities	• Provision of ABET education • Provision of hostel in Hopetown • School facilities in town and farms	• Provision of day care centres. • Provide library facilities
Ubuntu	• Improved institutional facilities	• More central municipal offices • Improved municipal facilities to provide a better service • Improved telephone services to the rural area.	• Provision of more post boxes. • One-Stop centre • Professional future planning to be implemented
	• Infrastructure and housing	• Provision of basic services like: o Water o Sanitation o Transport o Electricity o Telecommunication o Housing	
	• Spatial development and land reform	• More land for use by the emerging farmers	• Optimal use of the commonage
	• Environment	• Compilation and implementation comprehensive environmental management plan to protect the region and to ensure sustainable development	
	Economic sector • Development of agricultural sector • Development of tourism	• Training and capacity building of every farmer. • Maintenance of existing infrastructure	• Cooperation between emerging and commercial farmers

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
	sector	• Compilation of an Integrated Development Plan • Compilation of the Apollo Project.
	• Poverty relief and empowerment	• Provision of basic services like sanitation and domestic water • Job creation
Umsobomvu	• Local Economic Development (LED) • Houses • Upgrading of streets • Street lighting • Clinic at Kwa-Zamuxolo community • Doctor in town • Fencing of cemetery • Land for farming • Home Affairs office • Paving of roads • Police Station • Upgrading of sports ground • Crèche • Training centre • Repair of old houses • Transport for disabled people • Upgrading of community hall • Toilets inside houses	• LED, tourism and poverty alleviation • Sanitation • Bulk water • Roads, streets and storm water management • Health and HIV/AIDS • Electricity • Education and youth development • Land and land reform • Crime and security • Disaster management • Sport and recreation • Environment and waste management • Cemeteries
Kareeberg • Carnavon	• Services • Administrative facilities • Tarring of the road between Vosburg and Carnavon • Spatial development, land ownership and housing	• Water • Sewer system • Electricity • Solid waste removal • Educational • Land for farming • Housing • Roads and stormwater • Cemetery • Fire station and equipment • Recreation
• Vosburg	• Services • Administrative facilities • Tarring of the road between Vosburg and Britstown and Vosburg and Carnavon • Spatial development, housing and land ownership	• Water • Sanitation • Electricity • Land for farming- • Housing • Solid waste disposal • Roads, stormwater and transport
Emthanjeni • De Aar	• Environmental conservation • Sanitation - phasing out bucket system • Housing • Dust roads • Tarring of all roads in town • Sports and recreational facilities • Area lighting • Upgrading of existing high mast lighting • Upgrading of community halls • Upgrading of club 757 at Nonzwakazi • Upgrading of cemeteries • Water upgrading	• Sustainable environment • Water and sanitation • Housing • Roads • Street and area lighting • Education • Community hall/ Youth centre • Shelters for farm workers • Upgrading of emergency services along N1 • Sports and recreational facilities • Stormwater drainage • Upgrading and fencing of cemeteries • Electricity • Installation and upgrading of electrical

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
	• Schools • Stormwater drainage • Upgrading of emergency services along N1 • Information and training centre and HIV/ AIDS • Zoning scheme • Church sites • Public transport in rural areas • Cherry farm development • Development of stalls and businesses along N1 for sale of crafts • Job creation]sports facilities • Karoo water project, a water canal from the Orange River to De Aar.	• Construction of shelters for farm workers while shopping and waiting for their transport • Refuse removal • Fencing of disposal site • Hostel • Information about available bursaries and loans for children of needy families • Tourist centre (information office) • Development of fruit and vegetable garden • Travelling farm shops for workers	• 24 Hour ambulance services • A full time doctor in Hanover and Britstown • HIV/ AIDS • Effective spatial planning • Post office • Economic development (LED) • Job creation	network • Upgrading of clinics in municipal area • Health services • Hostel • Bursaries/ study loans • Public transport • Speed humps and upgrading of road signs
Renosterberg	• Job creation • Housing • Health services • Community hall • Sports facilities • Employment • Economic development • Repair of old houses • Land for development • Upgrading dump site • Hostels • Public utilities	• Sports and recreational facilities • Education • Library • Stormwater drainage in RDP developed areas and townships • Upgrading of roads • HIV/ AIDS • Public transport • Water upgrading and maintenance	• Housing • Water and sanitation • Roads • Stormwater drainage • Health services • HIV/ AIDS • Education • Upgrading and maintenance of services within the municipal area • Sports and recreational facilities • Postal collection points in Renosterberg	• Economic development (LED) • Land • Public transport to service municipal area • Refurbish community centres in Petrusville, Phillipstown and Vanderkloof • Establish library in Vanderkloof • Re-open hostels in Petrusville

2.44 In-dept analysis of the district needs

The following gives an overview of the district needs and the core issues that were identified and analysed in more dept in the IDP review process.

2.45 Potentials

Whilst the problems noted above exist there are some potentials which, if properly exploited, will assist in the development of the district. The following are the potentials that have been identified in this plan.

Physical

- ❖ The existence of the Orange River and the three dams which are situated on the borders can provide the district with a potential for recreational facilities.
- ❖ The waterbodies can be developed to be park/ recreation areas and will thus enhance the environmental condition of these areas.

Demographic

- ❖ The younger age group can be an opportunity in the development process of the district as it will provide labour reserve for various economic activities.

Social

- ❖ The basic infrastructure and land for recreational facilities is already in existence and only upgrading is required in many instances.
- ❖ Some of the existing schools can be upgraded to become secondary/ high schools

Infrastructure

- ❖ Water supply within most of the towns is not a major problem, and any future plan to increase water supply for domestic, commercial and industrial uses can easily be accommodated with the system.
- ❖ Electricity supply and telecommunication infrastructure for development are available and will stimulate economic growth if fully developed.
- ❖ Although De Aar railway station is a minor one on the national railway network, its input in regional development is essential because it is used, as indicated earlier, for a large amount of freight traffic between e.g. Cape Town and Johannesburg. For this particular reason the potential of the station will stimulate economic growth in the region if the station is fully rehabilitated.

Economic

- ❖ Job creation opportunities exist given the existence of the N1 and N12 routes if the combinations of capital and labour intensive investments are used for rehabilitating the roads.
- ❖ Apart from the vast arable land for livestock farming there are few natural resources which might have potential as a base for regional development. One of these could be utilisation of various fascinating tourist attractions that exist throughout the district.
- ❖ Mining – Diamonds, tiger's eye and uranium.

2.46 Comparative and competitive advantages

The identifiedd comparative and competitive advantages of the district are:

- ♦ Abundance of semi-precious stone tigger's eye.

- ♦ Diamonds and uranium deposits.
- ♦ Good physical infrastructure.
- ♦ Geo-politication position of the region.
- ♦ Arable land

2.47 Conclusion

The analysis phase of this plan has outlined how the present state of affairs of the district is. These development issues that range from population, physical, land uses, social, infrastructure, and economic will help in the formulation of goals, development objectives, strategies and projects which will guide the social, economic and spatial developments in the district.

2.48 Developmental SWOT Analysis

During the IDP review process the following strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats were identified for the district in terms of its current development status and future potential. This is necessary as it informs the development strategies which will be adopted by the Council for the region. The following observations were made:

TABLE 51: SWOT ANALYSIS

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
o Competent staff o Sound financial management o Job creation o Mutual confidence o Clean administration o Agriculture – irrigation o Tourism potential o Infrastructure – conducive to development o Part-time involvement in community o Good relationship between political office bearers and officials o Establishment HIV/AIDS council o Officials are positive, motivated & dedicated o Managerial systems in place o Support of public o Shared love of PKS region o Disaster management centre – Forum & System o Low crime rates o Existing physical infrastructure o Office equipment (ICT) o Political stability o Very strong senior / middle management o Experienced staff o Good policies in place and good inter-government relationship o Transparency	o Economic development o Lack of gender equity in senior management level o Lack of funds for maintenance of 8 000 km gravel roads o 2nd largest area but poorest district municipality in Northern Cape in terms of DORA awards o Lack of office space o Municipal health o Proficiency in English o Insufficient support for upcoming farmers with regard to land o Capacity to execute our mandate with regard to municipal health o Inadequate social and economic conditions o Poor housing o Lack of investment o Budget constraints o LED o Scarce skills backlog o Depopulation of district o Punctuality

Opportunities	Threats
o 3 dams o 3 rivers o Government co-operation for economic development o Good infrastructure – roads – better marketing o Agricultural processes o Industries o Improved fire fighting services o Expansion of control centre o Mining processes o Mineral resources o Linking tourism initiatives to national & provincial o Bucket free environment o Interaction with community o Industrial and economic potential o Adding value to products produced in region o Golf estate o Pollution free environment o Interesting life style as tourism potential e.g. clay & straw houses in Van Wyksvlei o Marketing of N12, N1, N9 & N10 routes o Karoo / Pixley water project o Tourism development o No toll gate o Gariep spatial development initiative o Water canal potential o Timeous revelation of future funding: MTEF o Public Transport System for Communities o Tollgates on N1 route between Hanover and Richmond o SKA/KAT project	o Declining population o Sustainable Income for Municipality o High turnover of Councillors o High personnel cost o Alcohol abuse o Drug Abuse o Closing of businesses o Inadequate funding o Illiteracy o Landlessness o Migration o Poor payment culture o TB o Field fires o Replacement of levies will negatively affect cash flow o Job evaluation delays make most of the staff members despondent o Inadequate public transport o Nation without a vision o Unemployment o Impact of HIV/Aids o High levels of poverty o Disinvestment o Future of District Municipalities o Poor investment incentives o Underutilised infrastructure o Lack of training in technology o Lack of state organs for welfare o Poor housing structures o Declining of the water table

Source: Pks Strategic Plan 2008/09

Service delivery and infrastructure

The current status and progress with service delivery.

The current status and progress with service delivery in the region are as follows:

- The district area has successfully reduced the number of households without basic service infrastructure.
- 85% of the buckets were replaced with acceptable alternatives.
- The District provided 176 rural households with water, 1109 rural households with sanitation and provided 31 bulk electricity connections to rural households to ensure that the living conditions of farm workers who are vulnerable is improved.
- All formal households are supplied with water and informal settlements are provided with a basic level of service.
- Electricity is also supplied to every household were the local municipalities are the distributors.
- Gravel roads are bladed on a yearly programme.

Housing

2.49 Housing delivery progress

The information in the table below indicates that 9715 units (67.4%), of 14413 planned housing units were completed in the District between April 1994 to January 2009.

The progress in the local municipalities is as follows:

Emthanjeni
About 84.3% of 1046 planned units which represents 1241 units were completed and more than 914 subsidies have been allocated to specific beneficiaries.

Kareeberg
About 20.4% of 638 planned units were completed, which represents 130 units.

Renosterberg
About 61.0% of 976 planned units were completed, which represents 595 units.

Siyancuma and Siyathemba
About 70.7% which represents 3395 units of 4802 planned units were completed.

Thembelihle
About 74.3%, which represents 782 units of 1053 planned units were completed.

Ubuntu
About 44% which represents 574 units of 1309 planned units were completed.

Umsobomvu
About 74% which represents 2651 units of 3632 planned units were completed.

Housing subsidies committed and built from 1994 to 2008 are shown in the table below:

Table 52: Housing built by local municipalities from 1994 to 2008

Municipality	Subsidies Committed	Houses Built	Houses outstanding
Emthanjeni	1241	1046	195
Kareeberg	638	130	508
Renosterberg	976	595	381
Siyancuma	4802	3395	1407
Siyathemba	762	542	220
Thembelihle	1053	782	271
Ubuntu	1309	574	735
Umsobomvu	3632	2651	981
PKS total	14413	9715	4698

Source: Local Municipalities and DHLG (regional office)

Infrastructure progress and current backlogs (Pre 1994 – Post 1994)

The infrastructure progress and current backlogs during the period indicated above are as follows:

Table 53: Progress on backlogs – water

Municipality	Water Formal	Water Informal	MIG Projects Registered	Progress
Emthanjeni	0	0	No	
Kareeberg	0	115	In process	
Renosterberg	0	0	Yes Bulk water supply	Construction
Siyancuma	1501	1174	Yes	No report
Siyathemba	179	0	No	Registration process – SDF
Thembelihle	113	424	No	Implementation
Ubuntu	250	129	Yes	Implementation
Umsobomvu	22	80	Yes Bulk water supply	

Source: PKS DM, Technical Services 2008

Table 54: Progress on backlogs – Sanitation Pre 1994

Municipality	Sanitation Formal	MIG Projects Registered	Progress	Expected completion
Emthanjeni	0	Yes	Completed	Apr 2008
Kareeberg	745	Yes	620 – Practically completed 125 – 18% completed stopped busy appointment of new contractor Oxidation ponds - started	Sept 2008 July 2009? March 2009
Renosterberg	0	Yes	Completed	Dec 2007
Siyancuma	570	Yes	Toilet structures completed Network – contractor appointed	Jul 2008 Apr 2009?
Siyathemba	0	Yes	Completed	Dec 2007
Thembelihle	0	Yes	Completed	Dec 2007
Ubuntu	105	Yes	Completed	Apr 2008
Umsobomvu	0	Yes	Completed	Dec 2007

Source: Technical Services

Table 55: Progress on backlogs – Sanitation Post 1994

Municipality	Sanitation Formal	Sanitation Informal	MIG Projects Registered	Expected achievement
Emthanjeni	0	58	No	2010
Kareeberg	180	73	Yes	Dec 2008
Renosterberg	25	27	Busy	2009
Siyancuma	1248	1032	No	2011
Siyathemba	94	179	Busy	2011
Thembelihle	113	324	Busy	2009
Ubuntu	250	86	No	2011
Umsobomvu	0	80	No	2009

Source: Technical Services 2008

At the end of June 2006, the District expenditure on MIG funds for the 2005/06 Financial Year was standing at 100%.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

MIG allocations

Table56: MIG allocations from 2004/05 to 2008/09

Allocation per Municipality	2004/05 R'000		2005/06 R'000		2006/07 R'000		2007/08 R'000		2008/09 R'000	
	Total	%	Total	%	Total	%	Total	%	Total	%
Ubuntu					1445	4			2068	10
Emthanjeni					2357	7	2648	16	3272	16
Kareeberg					3470	10				
Renosterberg					4721	14				
Thembelihle					1085	3			2010	10
Siyathemba					3326	10				
Siyancuma			6532	22	3902	11	4385	26	5417	26
Umsobomvu					7524	22	2771	17	3423	16
PKS DM	12503	100	22620	78	6214	18	69983	42	4549	22
Total	12503	100	29152	100	34044	100	16787	100	20739	100

Source: PKS Socio-Economic Profile 2007

The information obtained from the head of Technical Services indicates the followings:

2004/05
The District Municipality received funds for the 2004/05 financial year on behalf of all the local municipalities.

2005/06
The District Municipality received R29620 million for 2005/06 financial year, of this allocation Siyancuma local municipality received 22% of the total allocation. The District Municipality received 78% of the total allocation, this allocation included funds for all the local municipalities within the district.

2006/07
The 2006/07 district's total MIG allocation is R34 044 million. The amount includes allocations to the District Municipality and to the local municipalities. Umsobomvu got the biggest allocation of R7524 million and Thembelihle got the lowest allocation of R1085 million.

Progress with the expenditure of MIG funds

The tables below indicate that the Pixley Ka Seme District municipality seem to be capable in spending its MIG funding and shows the best performance of all the municipalities – municipalities that were struggling to spend MIG funding are Renosterberg and Ubuntu municipalities.

Table 57: Percentage MIG expenditure

Municipality	MIG %2005/6 allocation spent at end June 2006	MIG % 2006/7 allocation spent at end May 2007	%MIG 2007/8 allocation spent at end May 2007
Emthanjeni	n/a	72 %	0 %
Kareeberg	n/a	0 %	0 %
Pks DM	100%	100 %	42 %
Renosterberg	n/a	38 %	0 %
Siyancuma	25%	100 %	0 %
Siyathemba	n/a	100 %	41 %
Thembelihle	n/a	100 %	0 %
Ubuntu	n/a	55 %	No Data
Umsobomvu	n/a	90 %	0 %

Source: PKS DM feasibility study on bulk water supply 2007

Table 58: MIG Expenditure report

Municipality	Total – National Allocation	Percentage spent	Total – National Allocation	Percentage spent	Reasons for Variance
	2007/08	Spent as % of total available	2008/09	Spent as % of total available	
Ubuntu	1 538	88.44%	4 291	0.00%	No report for May, June, July. According to lm R1.35M was spend. Proof outstanding
Umsobomvu	5 335	59.65%	5 646	0.00%	Municipality doing recon of expenditure. Outstanding proof
Emthanjeni	8 417	76.19%	5 494	0.00%	Bucket project reported R500,000+R1669421.50 over registered MIG Value. Report received for July 08
Kareeberg	37 485	26.47%	3 340	0.00%	Report submitted. Projects under construction or in tender phases. Revised figures received for Dec 07- Rectified together with May expenditure
Renosterberg	7 513	43.65%	3 506	0.00%	Municipality spend 06/07 financial years funds. Project went out on tender in November, no contractor was responsive. Project had to be re-advertise and his busy with adjudication process. Project amount is estimated at R18M and is running over two financial years. Report received for July 08
Thembelihle	2 952	48.12%	4 232	0.00%	Sport project under

					construction. Solid waste in final phase of tender process. Report received no expenditure July 08
Siyathemba	3 441	100.00%	3 673	16.53%	
Siyancuma	19 894	91.47%	7 639	0.00%	Report received for July 08. Project mig 162 budget maintenance to be done expenditure of R436771.08 cannot be reported.
PKS District Municipality	**2 238**	**100.00%**	**2 919**	**0.00%**	

Source: PKS DM, Technical services 2008

Table 59: Expenditure per project category by Local Municipality since 2004/05 Financial year

Municipality Name	Project Category	MIG Funds	Total Expenditure	% Expenditure
Emthanjeni				
	Sanitation	R5,272,497	R0	0.00%
	Solid Waste Removal	R1,883.628	R499,993	26.54%
	Water	R3.815,227	R3,815,227	100.00%
	Total	**R10,971,352**	**R4,315,220**	**39.33%**
Kareeberg				
	Stormwater	R236,949	R0	0.00%
	Water	R7,160,790	R5,355,657	74.79%
	Total	**R7,397,739**	**R5,355,657**	**72.40%**
Pixley ka Seme				
	Other	R1,506,150	R1,506,150	100.00%
	Roads	R5,000,000	R4,553,323	91.07%
	Sanitation	R10,000,000	R10,000,000	100.00%
	Total	**R16,506,150**	**R16,059,473**	**97.29%**
Renosterberg				
	Multi purpose sport centre/fields	R3,800,000	R0	0.00%
	Sanitation	R3,213,090	R78,890	2.46%
	Water	R12,151,393	R3,122,507	25.70%
	Total	**R19,164,483**	**R3,201,397**	**16.70%**
Siyancuma				
	Roads	R1,532,000	R0	0.00%
	Sanitation	R13,896,802	R4,560,099	32.81%
	Street/Community Lighting	R1,000,000	R934,681	93.47%
	Water	R1,000,000	R0	0.00%
	Total	**R17,428,802**	**R5,494,780**	**31.53%**

Siyathemba				
	Sanitation	R7,800,000	R0	0.00%
	Total	**R7,800,000**	**R0**	**0.00%**
Thembelihle				
	Sanitation	R9,251,602	R495,444	5.36%
	Solid Waste Removal	R1,421,053	R0	0.00%
	Water	R26,415,138	R0	0.00%
	Total	**R37,087,793**	**R495,444**	**1.34%**
Umsobomvu				
	Sanitation	R4,737,982	R0	0.00%
	Stormwater	R319,200	R319,200	100.00%
	Water	R7,569,092	R5,123,780	67.69%
	Total	**R12,626,274**	**R5,442,980**	**43.11%**
Grand Total		**R128,982,593**	**R40,364,952**	**31.29%**

Source: PKS DM socio-economic profile 2007

The above table indicates the expenditure per sector since the inception of the MIG programme in the 2004/05 financial year. Some of the projects were implemented over the MTEF with the funding that was allocated to Pixley ka Seme District Municipality.

Emthanjeni Local Municipality allocated the bulk of their funding to sanitation.

Kareeberg Local Municipality allocated the bulk of their funding to water.

Renosterberg Local Municipality allocated the bulk of their funding to water.

Siyancuma Local Municipality allocated the bulk of theit funding to sanitation.

Siyathemba Local Municipality had only one sanitation project, the reported expenditure was zero.

Thembelihle Local Municipality allocated the bulk of their funding to water.

Umsobomvu Local Municipality allocated the bulk of their funding to water.

Table 60: Summary of expenditure per project category for the District

Sector	MIG allocation R' million	Expenditure per Sector R' million	Expenditure as a percentage of the total allocation per sector
Roads	R6,532,000.00	R4,553,322.78	70%
Water	R58,111,640.00	R17,417,170.70	30%
Sanitation	R54,171,973.00	R15,134,433.45	28%
Storm Water	R556,149.00	R319,200.00	59%
Mulit purpose comm	R3,800,000.00	R0.00	0%
Streetlighting/Community	R1,000,000.00	R934,681.47	93%
Solid Waste disposal	R3,304,681.00	R499,993.36	15%
Project Management Unit	R1,506,150.00	R1,506,150.00	100%
Grand Total	**R128,982,593.00**	**R40,364,951.76**	**31%**

Source: PKS socio-economic profile 2007

The above table summarises the expenditure on the allocations per sector for the District since the 2004/05 financial year up to 30 June 2006.

The bulk of the funding in the District was allocated to water and sanitation; the expenditure for water is currently at 30%. Sewerage received the second largest allocation and expenditure is currently at 28%. Roads received the third highest allocation and expenditure is currently at 70%.

The District Municipality and Siyancuma Local Municipality were the only receiving municipalities during the 2005/06 financial year.

2.50 Commitments on projects

The next table indicates the commitments of 2006/07 and 2007/08 MIG allocations as at 30 June 2006:

Table 61: Commitments on MIG Allocation of 2006/07 and 2007/08

Municipality	2006/07 (R'000)		2007/08 (R'000)	
	Allocation	Commitment	Allocation	Commitment
NC071: Ubuntu	1,445	0,00	0,00	0,00
NC072: Umsobomvu	7,524	7,524	2,771	12,742
NC073: Emthanjeni	2,357	2,357	2,648	2,916
NC074: Kareeberg	3,470	237	0,00	0,00
NC075: Renosterberg	4,721	4,721	0,00	0,00
NC076: Thembelihle	1,085	1,085	0,00	0,00
NC077: Siyathemba	3,326	3,326	0,00	0,00
NC078: Siyancuma	3,902	3,902	4,385	2,696
DC7: Pixley ka Seme	6,214	6,214	6,983	1,513
Total	**34,042**	**29,366**	**16,788**	**19,867**

Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2007

Table 62: Operation and Maintenance

Municipality	Town	Description	Progress
Emthanjeni	De Aar	Sewage treatment works – pumps and blowers are operational - electricity	Tender invited for the appointment of SP for upgrading of power supply
	Hanover	Oxidation ponds need to be upgraded	Tender invited for the appointment of sP
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	Repair of borehole pumps, booster pumps etc.	Investigation was done busy with project implementation
	Noupoort	Water shortages will be address by pipeline from Orange River. Oxidation ponds need to be upgraded	Bulk water supply. Tender out for the appointment of Project Manager No progress
	Norvalspond	Oxidation ponds need to be upgraded	LM is implementing of the registered MIG project Tender out. ROD not received
Siyathemba	Prieska	Water treatment works – refurbishment of works funded from O&M funds.	Project completed
	Marydale	Old reservoir roof need to be sealed Telemetric system for borehole pumps Sanitation – Upgrading of VIP's Upgrading of oxidation ponds	LM is busy compilling MIG applications
Thembelihle	Hopetown	Water treatment works need to be upgraded Oxidation ponds are overloaded and need to be upgraded	Consultant appointed Tender advertise recently
	Strydenburg	Old oxidation ponds that is used by Abattoir	Nothing so far – Request an Investigation by the EHP – monitor outflow
Kareeberg	Vanwyksvlei	Oxidation ponds need to be upgraded	
Renosterberg	Vanderkloof	Water network – Pipe bursts Sewage works – Process Sewer Main - Kleurtjieskloof	Water and Sanitation Master plan just completed Water and sanitation issues were identified – Technical Reports and MIG application
	Phillipstown	Sump of sewer pump station overflows due to blockages. A separate intake	Pumps were replaced, grid installed and retention ponds constructed

		chamber with a grid need to be build to be cleaned daily	
Ubuntu	Victoria - West	Bulk water storage capacity	LM appoint service provider to do Water master plan for town to determine the cause for water shortages
	Richmond	Bulk water storage capacity	LM appoint service provider to do Water master plan for town to determine the cause for water shortages

Source: PKS DM, Technical services 2008

Table 63: O&M support unit report

LM	Activity	Budget Amount (excl VAT)	Actual Expenditure	Balance	Comments
	Install pressure relieve valves to minimize pipe damage due to water hammer			R0	This item may be replaced with Noupoort telemetery system
	Installation of a new pump set a van der Waltsfontein booster station after the investigation has been carried out through the WSACDP.	R100,000		R100,000	Claim will be sumitted next month for buying of a new motor.
	Allow for spare pipes, clamps, tools, small pump, generator set, etc. to assist during emergency repairs, especially at night.	R80,000	R85,041	-R5,041	Project completed. Invoices submitted.
Umsobomvu	Noupoort Telemetery system	R50,000		R50,000	Quotations closed and are currently evaluated. Orders will be placed in October.
TOTAL UMSOBOMVU		**R230,000**	**R85,041**	**R144,960**	
Renosterberg	Chiorinators Phillipstown,	R23,000		R23,000	Chiorinators ordered. Claim will be submitted

	Petrusville				soon.
TOTAL Renosterberg		**R23,000**	**R0**	**R23,000**	
	New pipeline (Cost of material)	R16,000	R16,000	R0	Funds claimed. Waiting for payment from DWAF.
	Reservoir at Van Wyksvlei	R29,000	R27,500	R1,500	Work completed and funds claimed. Waiting for DWAF payment.
Kareeberg	Pumps	R55,926	R59,755	-R3,829	Funds claimed. Waiting for payment from DWAF.
TOTAL Kareeberg		**R100,926**	**R103,255**	**-R2,329**	
	New tank for vacuum tanker Marydale	R20,520	R61,309	-R40,789	Project completed and Paid
	New tank for vacuum tanker Niekerkshoop	R20,520		R20,520	Project completed and Paid
	Oxidation pond Marydale (aftappunt)	R5,500		R5,500	Project completed and Paid
	Replace chlorinator Prieska WTW	R15,850	R38,354	-R22,504	Project completed and Paid
	Replace chemical dosing pump Prieska WTW	R13,280		#VALUE!	Project completed and Paid
	Replace no return valves Prieska setting tanks	R29,940	R18,240	R11,700	Project completed and Paid
	Service pumps Prieska WTW	R38,900	R50,411	-R11,511	Project completed and Paid
	Service switchgear	R18,250		R18,250	Project completed and Paid
	Replace platform in river	R22,900	R9,630	R13,270	Project completed and Paid
	ABS water pump and flygt pump Prieska WTW	R39,124	R39,125	-R1	Project completed and Paid
	Paint buildings at Prieska WTW (labour LM)	R26,200	R28,795	-R2,595	Paint bought Work will start soon
	Replace roof of reservoir at Marydale and other safety measures	R16,900		R16,900	Not a priority any more.Funds used on abovementioned items

	Bulk water meter	R13,660	R15,572	-R1,912	Ordered and waiting for installation
Siyathemba	New transformer for WTW	R115,763	R0	R115,763	Transformer is ordered.Delivery in February 2009
TOTAL Siyathemba		**R397,307**	**R261,435**	**R135,872**	

LM	Activity	Budgeted Amount (excl VAT)	Actual Expenditure	Balance	Comments
	Fix in all tarred areas (include labour, bithchimin and materials	R45,000		R45,000	Project in execution
	Fix the stormwater walls	R15,000	R15,000	R0	Project completed
	Labour of the extended time	R22,950	R24,985	-R2,035	Project completed
Thembelihle	Additional pipes and fittings needed for an area where the olp pipeline is to deep to link to the new line	R14,000	R12,768	R1,232	Project completed
TOTAL Thembelihle		**R96,950**	**R52,753**	**R44,197**	
	Replace the water pump at Hutchinson	R45,000		R45,000	Quotations closed and are currently evaluated.Orders will be placed in October.
	Replace two booster pumps at Richmond old reservoir	R85,000		R85,000	Quotations closed and are currently evaluated.Orders will be placed in October.
	Repair of old reservoir (fence and roof)	R30,000		R30,000	Quotations closed and are currently evaluated.Orders will be placed in October.
Ubuntu	Purchase bulk water meters	R38,323		R38,323	Quotations closed and are currently evaluated.Orders will be placed in October.
TOTAL Thembelihle		**R198,323**	**R0**	**R198,323**	
TOTAL O&M		**R1,046,506**	**R502,484**	**R544,022**	

Unit					
Budget		R1,000,000			
Available budget		-R46,506			

Source: PKS DM, Technical services 2008

Table 64: Issues raised at District Water and Sanitation Forum

Issues raised at District Water and Sanitation forum

- **Challenges**
  - Appointment of SP to compile technical reports and MIG applications
  - Rollout of MIG programme and project implementation – increase expenditure
  - Attendance of LM – increase to 50%

- **Planned for all Municipalities**
  - Training for water and sanitation operators on these plants – apply for funds for funds from DBSA
  - Spatial development – apply for funds from DBSA
  - Development of water and sanitation services masterplans – apply for funds for funds DBSA
  - Appointment of SP at District level helping LM with project ID, technical reports and MIG applications

Source: PKS Technical Services, 2008

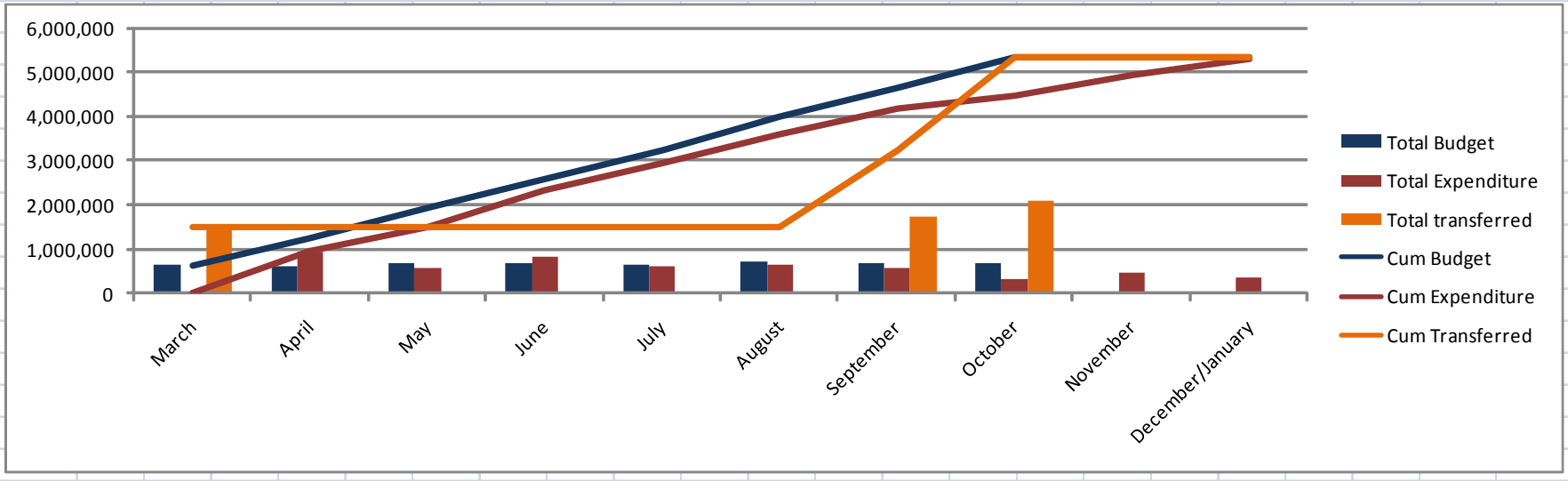
2.50.1 Construction and maintenance teams

All construction and routine maintenance activities of the teams were stopped, due to the unavailability of plant and funds.

2.50.2 Regravelling projects

The Department allocates R5.3 million to the District for the regravelling of gravel roads labour intensively within the District. The graph below shows the budget expenditure against the actual expenditure for the project.

Roads	March		April		May		June		July		August		September		October		November		December/January		Total		Balance
	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	Budget Amount	Actual Expend	B-A
DR3299	641,085		352,597	934,971																	993,681	934,971	58,710
MR777			256,434		512,868	220,736		398,400		102,802											769,302	721,938	47,364
MR811					160,271		673,139	361,850		388,000		260,750									833,410	1,010,600	-177,190
MR803						349,575		58,253	448,759												448,759	407,828	40,931
DR3123									192,325		737,248		673,139	463,810	32,054	311,840		463,085		369,325	1,634,766	1,608,060	26,706
MR802										138,500		397,630		98,010	641,085						641,085	634,140	6,945
Total	641,085	0	609,031	934,971	673,139	570,311	673,139	818,503	641,085	629,302	737,248	658,380	673,139	561,820	673,139	311,840	0	463,085	0	369,325	5,321,004	5,317,537	3,467
Amount transferred		1,500,000												1,737,000		2,084,003						5,321,003	0



The project was completed recently and in total 66kms of road was regravelled. The next tables give an indication of the labour used during the implementation phase of each project.

Table X

Road	Permanent workers	Temporary Workers			
		Total	Youth	Women	Disabled
DR3299	11	5	4	0	0
MR777	10	6	4	2	0
MR803	10	6	4	2	0
DR3123	11	58	47	36	0
MR802	13	65	40	34	0
MR811	13	11	7	4	0
Total Jobs created	68	151	106	78	0

Photographs of the projects

MAIN ROAD 803

Economic Growth

Development Inifiatives

As noted earlier, the economic growth of the District averaged 1.3% between 1995 and 2003 (CSIR, 2004). This is substantially lower than the national average of 2.5% and presents a significant barrier to meeting the material needs of many communities in the district. Local people are faced with rising levels of poverty, economic stagnation, unemployment and a geographically imbalanced settlement structure. The Pixley ka Seme District Municipality in 2006 developed a District Growht and Development strategy to contribute to an improvement in its rate of economic growth and provide better opportunities to meet these challenges and address poverty

Much of the identified potential for growth lies in export, and the District Municipality has articulated plans to support the SMME sector offering it the potential to participate in both the growth initiative above and to contribute to the export process.

2.51 LED Strategy

Pixley ka Seme District Municipality have conducted a detailed economic development investigation of every town in the district municipal areas within the framework of its DGDS and has enhanced the process of economic analysis that is to underpin the strategy. This analysis suggests that the comparative advantage of the district lies in agriculture and tourism, with further contributions made by retail and distribution sectors. The Municipality's draft strategy for local economic development will improve exploitation of these key sectors of the local economy.

The strategy exploits the comparative advantages of the region underpinning these with a number of cross cutting activities. The research undertaken to date suggests that there is considerable scope to further develop the key agricultural and tourism sectors. A more detailed analysis is required to achieve this, integrating work in these two sectors with infrastructure developments to both unlock economic and commercial potential and to stimulate the district economy. To benefit the poor, these strategies must be supported by effort to stimulate the establishment and growth of SMMEs. Availability of water is a major constraint, and long term and strategic perspective needs to be taken through the development of the Pixley Ka Seme bulk water supply project.

Objectives of the strategy as identified in DGDS include the following:

- Create an environment which is conducive for investment, especially in the main towns which have adequate infrastructure;
- Focus on the agricultural sector so as to promote social and economic development In the region;

- Develop and implement LED strategies as part of the municipality's IDP;
- Support and develop SMME's on all stages of business development;
- Diversify the economy of the region;
- Develop and use the existing and potential income-generating sectors in order to maximise the revenue levels of the Pixley Ka Seme District and local municipalities;
- Promote local economic development and job creation;
- Promote a vibrant tourism industry;
- Promote trade and industry;
- Promote human and natural resource development; and
- Create an enabling environment that allows public/ private partnerships between different stakeholders in community building.

Pixley Ka Seme has for long had a lively and proactive approach to LED. This has resulted in a pragmatic draft of LED strategy and in the securing of funding of R 3 million rand to begin to implement it. The DM's developing relationship with the **dplg** has provided it with additional support and information to broaden its perspectives in developing its approach to LED. A range of potential development initiatives have been identified that seem consistent with the area's likely comparative advantage. The DM is aware of the institutional requirements required to support its emerging strategy, and in this regard, it was also given further consideration to the capacity required to implement its approach.

A tightening and improved focus of the LED plan as currently set out in the DGDS is currently underway. As part of its development iniciatives it is also looking how it will develop and manage specific work or action plans to implement the strategy. The Growth and Development Summit that was held in 2006 provides an appropriate forum for this. It is also important to mention that the DM stills maintains its relationship with the **dplg's** LED support unit with a view of aligning its strategy with national economic perspectives and to fully integrate it into the broader context of the District's IDP.

Job Creation

2004 - 2007

Since 2004, the District municipality created 1 080 temporary jobs through a R3.2 million budget for job creation of which 50 % were female employees. A total of 178 jobs were created through the MIG budget of R7 961 568. The eradication of buckets project assisted in the creation of another 735 jobs that included 5 disabled, 204 women and 61 youths. The majority of the projects were also performed by BEE Companies. The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) created 616 jobs, which included 350 women, 231 youths and 3 disabled (IDP Hearings Presentation Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality).

2008 – 2009

As noted under regravelling projects, as at December 2008, 403 people were employed during the regravelling of roads as shown in the table below:

Table 65: Job creation in regravelling project as at Dec. 2008.

Road	Permanent workers	Temporary workers			
		Total	Youth	Women	Disabled
DR3299	11	5	4	0	0
MR777	10	6	4	2	0
MR803	10	6	4	2	0
DR3123	11	58	47	36	0
MR802	13	65	40	34	0
MR811	13	11	7	4	0
Total jobs created	68	151	106	78	0

Source: PKS Technical Service 2009

Tourism

The District Municipality identified the following activities that will be linked to develop synergy and impact with the proposed municipal tourism plan and the existing Spatial Development Framework (SDF):

- Corridor development on the Orange and Vaal rivers.
- Assessing the further development of Renosterfontein and Doornkloof game reserves.
- Adding value and local incomes from game hunting.
- Enchanced promotion and site development of the district's Anglo Boer war battlefields.
- Better mapping and marketing of San Rock paintings.
- A development plan for water sports facilities at Xhariep dam.

It is imperative to note here that the District Municipality has built on this work by undertaking a strengths and weaknesses analysis of tourism pontial during the 2008/09 IDP review process. The results of this need is to guide further planning.

Agriculture

As noted in the DGDS, Agriculture is the largest single industry although little down stream added value currently takes place. A substantial process of value chain analysis is currently being undertaken so as to identify coustraint to adding more value locally and removing these. Priority is given to sheep and wool (cashmere) and potato sector.

The following iniciatives were identified by the economic development investigation:

- Kalahari goat project with potential to benefit 700 emerging farmers.
- Establishment of 12 emerging farmers on a communal basis.
- Goat farming.
- Community farms.
- Pistachio nuts.
- Production of flower bulbs.
- Organic meat production.
- Pixley ka Seme bulk water supply scheme to support 400 emerging irrigation farmers.

High impact projects
High impact projects as identified by the DGDS are:

- Tourism
- Revitalisation of the rail network
- Uranium
- Refurbishment and maintenance of roads (1600km)
- Tiger's eye

Rural Development

The district and its local municipalities identified the following objectives and projects that are aimed at addressing the developmental challenges of the region:

Identified Objectives
- Stimulating economic development
- Social development
- Development of the skills base in the region
- Addressing infrastructure backlogs
- Land reform
- Promoting development and employment activities in the designated Rural Services Centres as identified by the integrated settlement structures.

Identified anchor projects:
- PKS bulk water supply scheme to support 400 emerging irrigation farmers
- Pistachio nuts
- Agro-tourism
- Production of flower bulbs
- Mohair meaving
- Organically produced meat
- Goat farming
- Kalahari goat project

Proposed institutional changes:

- Community and/or stakeholder participation in rural development
- Capacity building
- Human resource development
- Communication strategy
- Compilation of a rural development strategy

SMME Development

The LED programme as set out in the previous IDP's recognises the dependence of growth on the SMME sector, and facilitating SMME Development is identified as a key strategic area for the District Municipality Currently the district and its Local Municipalities offer support and development to the sector at each level, from project indetification to project implementation. A 3 day (19-21) Nov 2008 small business workshop was organized by District Municipality for the emerging SMMEs in this regard. Support mechanisms include a business development centre, business incubators and hives, support for marketing and networking. These efforts are to be underpinned by efforts to produce a more entrepreneuriel culture. Through these mechanisms, guidance will be given to emerging and growing businesses in identifying the competitive advantages of the district, and in assisting enterprises to identify trading activities that are aligned with this.

LED Section

The LED section that is currently being placed in the office of the Municipal Manager was established in 2008.

The LED manager who is to head the section was also appointed. The roles and responsibilities of the manager include among others, facilitation and co-ordination of all LED iniciatives to promote local economic growth and sustainability.

PKS Bulk water supply project

The District Municipality with the financial assistance from DWAF is currently implementing its bulk water supply project so as to address the problem of water scarcity in the region. The project covers the following areas:

Scheme 1: Orange river – Colesberg – Noupoort
Scheme 2: Merriman – Richmond
Scheme 3: Vanderkloof – Petrusville – Phillipstown – De Aar – Britstown – Vosburg
Scheme 4: Prieska – Copperton – Van Wyksvlei – Carnarvon.
Scheme 5: Hopetown – Strydenburg
Scheme 6: Orange river – Griekwastad
Scheme 7: Orange river – Niekerkshoop
Scheme 8: Orange river – Marydale
Scheme 9: Hutchinson – Victoria-West

The project cost of each scheme is shown in Pixley ka Seme District Municipality bulk water supply report that was compiled in 2007.

Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development

As the location of Pixley Ka Seme District makes it difficult to recruit and retain highly skilled staff for the medium to long-term, the District Municipality is currently compiling its institutional development plan to address this challenge. The first draft of the plan identified alternative strategies for retaining specialized staff especially in specialized technical areas such as environmental health/management specialists and engineers.

The District Municipality is very instrumental in supporting local municipalities with institutional capabilities in the following areas:

- IDP review;
- Budget-planning alignment;
- Identification and project implementation;
- LGnet information services;
- Internal audit services;
- Administrative support;
- Performance management system (PMS)

Core issues regarding institutional transformation.

The following core issues were identified:

- Insufficient staff component to undertake all services required from the community as per legislation;
- Insufficient funds to finance infrastructural development within the region;
- External funding and governmental assistance would be of utmost importance to ensure the sustainability of local municipalities;
- Insufficient funds for the implementation of IDP;
- Optimising human resources of the Council is a problem due to the lack of financial revenue.

Financial Viability and Management

The District Municipality budgeted for total expenditure of R80.453 million for 2008/09 financial year. Of this amount R5.861 million is for capital expenditure and R75.592 million for operating expenditure. It budgeted for total operating revenue of R80.453 million.

The expenditure on salaries and wages as a percentage of total operating revenue is 24.84%, which is below the norm of 30% of operating revenue determined by National Treasury. Repairs and maintenance at 1.34% of total operating revenue is substantially lower than the norm of 10-12% of operating revenue, also determined by National Treasury.

There is no provision for bad debt and the collection of rates and service charges included in budgeted annual revenue is 0%. This indicates that budgeted annual revenue may be collected effectively, which will strengthen the financial viability of the District Municipality.

Capital expenditure as a percentage of total expenditure consisting of operating and capital expenditure is approximately 7.28%. It should be noted that ±76% of capital expenditure is financed through capital grants and this accounts for the significantly high capital expenditure. The majority of capital expenditure is on infrastructure for the provision of water, sewerage and housing.

The benchmark for grant dependency is 84.81% of operating revenue but most of the local municipalities and the District Municipality receive substantial amounts of operating grants. Operating grants are 84.81% of the total operating income.

Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality collects its revenue within 45 days of debtors being billed as part of its financial viability strategy.

Good Governance and Community Participation

For the promotion of public participation, there are forums such as District Mayors forum, District Municipal Managers and Treasurer's forum, the various Farmers unions and the Tri- District alliance. The District Council has been training the Ward Councilors after the local government elections and the Community Development Workers (CDWs) programme has been implemented.

With regard to the implementation of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act (2005), the launch of the Provincial IGR Structure in April 2006 was followed by the establishment of district forums. Both technical and political structures are functional. The Pixley Ka Seme IGR District Forum meets at least 4 times a year.

Imbizo Programme

The imbizo programme is used by the Council to promote good governance and public participation in the region. The Council meets the Communities every month where developmental challenges are discussed.

Other systems or meetings used by the Council to promote good governance in the region are:

- Scheduled Council meetings;
- Mayoral Committee meetings;
- Committee meetings
- Advertisements
- Newsletters
- Local radio station (Ulwazi FM)
- Adherance to Batho Pele principles

2.52 Performance Management

The dplg has published the Local Government Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers (Heads of Departments) directly accountable to them, for implementation with effect from 1 August 2006. The Regulations aims to link the assessment of performance of senior officials to the municipal IDPs. The regulations also seek to provide a uniform framework that can be applied by local, district and metropolitan municipalities whilst recognizing their unique conditions.

The regulations provide for practical mechanism and enablers in implementation, monitoring and evaluation of service delivery and development. To attract and retain skilled managers in municipalities, on the one hand, and the need to provide clarity on remuneration and conditions of employment, on the other hand, the regulations propose specific principles in this regard. It is further proposed that the Employment Agreement for Municipal Managers be based on the five Key Performance Areas of Local Government.

In compliance with the regulations, the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality and its local municipalities have put in place their Performance Management Systems. The Performance Management Systems have the following:

- A performance Management System (PMS) Policy Framework;
- A monitoring and review mechanism for the PMS and have established institutional arrangements and/or organizational structures to manage the PMS;
- PMS incorporates the General Key Performance Indicators as set out by the dplg;
- Balance Scorecard model or framework for PMS; and
- Targets that are linked to the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP).

Since 2003 when the Performance Managerment Systems were put in place, the Department of Housing and Local Government and Pixley District Municipality have been assisting the Local Municipalities in providing for practical mechanisms and enablers in implementation, monitoring and evaluation of service delivery and development. The primary objective of the assistance is to ensure effective implementation of the systems.

2.53 In-dept analysis of the district needs

The following gives an overview of the district needs that were identified in the local IDPs and the core issues that were identified and analysed in more dept during the review process:

TABLE 66 : SANITATION PROVISION

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Eradication of bucket system on formal sites; ♦ Upgrading of waste water treatment plant; ♦ Upgrading the network capacity; ♦ Capacity building for maintenance; ♦ Awareness campaigns and sanitation; ♦ Recycling of waste water	♦ Lack of proper sustainable sanitation systems;	♦ Communities do not want to accept alternative systems to water borne sanitation due to a lack of knowledge on other sanitation systems;

Table 67: BULK WATER SUPPLY

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Water bulk supply ♦ Water purification ♦ Feasibility of bulk water supply from Orange river. ♦ Water quality control	♦ Insufficient bulk water supply for residential, industrial, agricultural and municipal use. ♦ Poor quality of water	♦ Continuous in the demand of potable water ♦ Lack of proper planning of water supply by local municipalities ♦ Scarcity of water in the region ♦ Lack of sustainable water supply source to many areas within the district ♦ High demand for water and lack of water supply impacts on the quality of water ♦ The poor quality of some water sources adds to quality of poor potable water ♦ Some purification plants are in bad conditions.

TABLE 68: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT (LED), TOURISM AND POVERTY ALLEVIATION

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Implementation of DGDS; ♦ SMME promotion; ♦ Attraction and retention of investors in the region; ♦ Development of development corridors; ♦ Value-adding to raw materials ♦ Agricultural products ♦ Mining ♦ Upgrading infrastructure (Railway lines) ♦ Establishment of and support to emerging farmers ♦ Tourism development ⇒ Gariep dam ⇒ Vanderkloof dam ⇒ One stop filling stations, truck stops, etc. ⇒ Arts and crafts mancets ⇒ Explore agri-tourism ⇒ Guest houses and accommodation ⇒ Nature reserves, game farms and historical sites ⇒ Capacity building programmes for HDI's in tourism industry; ⇒ Development of tourism routes identified in SDF. ♦ sport events ♦ Water sport	♦ Limited economic growth; ♦ Diversification of agricultural sector; ♦ High levels of poverty and unemployment.	♦ Limited value-adding to the district products due to lack of manufacturing industries; ♦ Lack of investments in the region; ♦ Few emerging farmers that can contribute to economic growth; ♦ Lack of SMME promotion and development; ♦ Ageing infrastructure in urban areas that can discourage investment; ♦ The full potential of tourism sector that has been fully exploited also contribute to low economic growth; ♦ Lack of good security; ♦ Lack of access to basic services; ♦ High level of unemployment due to few job opportunities; ♦ Disinvestment in the region.

TABLE 69 HOUSING

District Needs	Issues To Be Addressed	Contributing Factors
♦ Compile District Municipality housing plan and/or strategy ♦ Fast tracking implementation of Ouboks housing project (2 220 housing units) in Colesberg ♦ Facilitate land availability for new housing development	♦ Slow delivery of housing in the region ♦ Development of informal settlements	♦ Limited surveyed and serviced land due to a lack of funding ♦ Lack of co-ordination of housing delivery ♦ Lack of capacity at district and local levels to plan for future housing development ♦ Insufficient funds for housing delivery

TABLE 70: ROADS, STREETS AND STORM WATER MANAGEMENT

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Maintenance and upgrading of access roads to economic and social facilities and linkage roads in the region; ♦ Storm water management system throughout the region; ♦ Upgrading and maintenance of streets.	♦ Poor maintenance of roads.	♦ Ageing or old equipment to maintain roads; ♦ Insufficient funds and shortage of skilled Labourers; ♦ Little or no planning for future development to secure funding for new developments

TABLE 71:HEALTH AND HIV/AIDS

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Functional District Aids Council ♦ District Health facility ♦ Hospice for terminally ill, street children and disabled ♦ 24 hour clinics ♦ Voluntary testing and counseling centres ♦ Mobile clinics	♦ Partnership against HIV/AIDS ♦ Inadequate health facilities	♦ No proper health infrastructure ♦ No functional District AIDS Council ♦ Lack of access to 24 hour health facilities ♦ Lack of access to mobile clinics ♦ Lack of trained medical professionals

TABLE 72: ELECTRICITY

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Implementation of free basic electricity ♦ Access to electricity or alternative source of energy for all ♦ Undertake a desktop survey on alternative source of energy ♦ Upgrading and maintenance of electricity network ♦ Provision of area lighting	♦ Lack of access to electricity to all.	♦ Poor maintenance and upgrading of electrical network ♦ Slow implementation of free basic electricity ♦ Very few new households connections

TABLE 73: EDUCATION, YOUTH AND DEVELOPMENT

District Needs	Issues To Be Addressed	Contributing Factors
♦ Higher learning institutions ♦ Youth skills development programmes ♦ Life skills and ICT development centres ♦ Equipment of the multi-purpose centre in De Aar ♦ Day care centre	♦ Limited or no access to higher learner institutions.	♦ Lack of IT skills in the region ♦ Poor qualification and skills of the community limit their entry to institutions of higher learning ♦ Very few training facilities exist in the region ♦ Lack of funds to learners; ♦ Very few day care centres exist in the region

TABLE 74: LAND AND LAND REFORM

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
♦ Access to farm land for emerging farmers ♦ Land availability for residential development and transfer of ownership ♦ District Land Committee ♦ Serviced land to be made available for development ♦ Compilation of a land audit	♦ Insufficient land available for development ♦ Land for development is not properly serviced	♦ Lack of proper planning ♦ Lack of a land audit ♦ Lack of proper land use management at local municipal level ♦ Lack of funding at local level to install infrastructure to areas made available for development

TABLE 75: CRIME, SECURITY AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT

District Needs	Issues To Be Addressed	Contributing Factors
♦ Address family and child abuse ♦ Establish and promote victim support centre ♦ Forming crime prevention partnerships with all relevant stakeholders ♦ Effective CPF's ♦ Review the existing disaster management plan ♦ Appointment of more staff in Disaster management Unit ♦ Building capacity of disaster management officers	♦ High level of family and child abuse ♦ High level of alcohol abuse	♦ Domestic violence ♦ Women and child abuse ♦ Lack of funding to develop institutional capacity of the disaster management unit ♦ Lack of equipment for disaster management.

TABLE 76 : SPORT AND RECREATION

District Needs	Issues To Be Addressed	Contributing Factors
♦ Upgrading of sport facilities ♦ Promotion of sport activities ♦ Upgrading of parks ♦ Functional district sport council	♦ Poor sport and recreational facilities	♦ Lack of upgrading of sport facilities in the region

TABLE 77: ENVIRONMENTAL AND WASTE MANAGEMENT

District Needs	Issues To Be Addressed	Contributing Factors
♦ Implementation of the Integrated Environmental Management Programme ♦ Address roaming of livestock in urban areas ♦ Appointment of Environmental Health Officers ♦ Monitoring and co-ordination of waste sites ♦ Building capacity of Environmental Health Officers.	♦ Poor management of both urban and rural environments ♦ Poor management of waste in urban areas.	♦ The lack of capacity and financial resources ♦ Lack of equipment due to lack of funding ♦ Lack of capacity of District Municipality to effectively undertake this function ♦ Lack of policies and by-laws

TABLE 78: CEMETERIES

District Needs	Issues To Be Addressed	Contributing Factors
♦ Assist local municipalities with maintenance and upgrading of cemeteries ♦ Facilitate release of land for new extensions	♦ Upgrading of cemeteries ♦ Extension of cemeteries	♦ Possible effects of HIV/AIDS

CHAPTER 3

3. Development priorities

3.1 Priorities

Informed of the developmental challenges of the region and the performance of the District Municipality in its IDP process as indicated above, the development priorities of the Council during the 2009/10 financial year were identified as follows:

- Sanitation
- Bulk water supply
- LED, tourism and poverty alleviation
- Housing
- Roads, streets and storm water management
- Health and HIV/Aids
- Electricity
- Education and Youth Development
- Land and land reform
- Crime and security, including disaster management
- Sport and recreation
- Environmental and waste management
- Rural development
- Cemeteries

3.2 Development strategies

3.2.1 Goals and objectives

These are planning intensions for resolving or addressing the various problems/ issues identified in the analysis phase. Goals and objectives focus on the broader sectoral issues while development strategies focus on the specific means to achieve the goals. The following are the goals, objectives and strategies that have been formulated in an attempt to address the problems/ issues identified in this plan.

3.2.2 Vision

We, Pixley ka Seme District Municipality, commit ourselves to be a developmental municipality where the quality of life of all people in the district will be improved

3.2.3 Mission statement

We strive to achieve:-

- Effective and efficient service delivery
- Optimal human and natural resource development
- Local economic growth and development, job creation and poverty alleviation
- A vibrant tourism industry
- To participate in the fight to reduce the infection rate and lessen the impact of HIV/aids and other communicable diseases
- A safe, secure and community friendly environment

3.2.4 Corporate Culture and Values

- Driven by the aspirations of our people, we will respect and uphold the constitution of the Republic of South Africa and , to this end, observe human rights and participate in co-operative governance
- We subscribe to the principles of Batho Pele and total quality management
- We commit ourselves to the Codes of Conduct for councillors and officials in the Municipal Systems Act and to the principles of sound financial management
- We believe in integrity in the relations with all our stakeholders
- We commit ourselves to a corruption free municipality
- We endorse a “people-driven” approach and, to this end, commit ourselves to ensuring public participation in local government
- We commit ourselves to promote racial, gender and all other forms of equality and to empower all people in the district
- We regard the personnel of our municipality as our most important resource
- We will respect the views and inputs of all members of the council

3.3 Key Performance Areas (KPA’s)

Key Performance Areas and Objectives were set for Pixley ka Seme DM

- Financial Management
    - Recover the Budgeted Income
    - Reduction of Debt
    - To manage expenditure and income in accordance with the approved budget and MFMA

- Social and Economic Development

    - Contribute to the effort of the relevant Line Departments to improve the safety and security of communities
    - Contribute to the effort of the relevant Line Departments to reduce the spread and impact of HIV/ Aids in the municipal Area
    - To promote local economic development in the Municipal area
    - To create job opportunities
    - To promote tourism in the District
    - The promotion of the Provincial Tourism Master Plan
    - Effective and efficient environmental health unit

- Institutional Transformation

    - To establish a new organisational structure
    - Implement a performance management system
    - To adhere to the Municipality's employment equity plan
    - To develop the Municipality's human resources
    - To integrate and develop by-laws, policies and procedures
    - To have a strategic Planning session
    - Human Resource Management
    - To improve the moral and team spirit
    - Effective and efficient Disaster Management Unit
    - Housing

- Democracy and Governance

    - To promote a culture of open communication with all internal and external stakeholders
    - To promote active community participation
    - Programme of information sharing
    - District IGR

- Infrastructure and Services

    - To Plan, provide infrastructure and Services
    - To Manage the Planning and Development Function of the District Municipality according to the IDP taking into cognisance the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
    - The Management of the Provincial Department of Transport Roads Function

- Internal Audit

    - To have an efficient and effective system of Internal auditing the activities of the municipality

3.4 Our Strategic Plan For 2008/09 Financial Year

As the Dsistrict Municipality is yet to prepare its strategic plan for 2009/10 financial year, the Council decided to include the current strategic plan in 2009/10 IDP as most of the deliverables are to be implemented in 2009 and beyound. The deliverables are as shown in the table below:

Table 79: Strategic Plan: 2008/09 Deliverables

MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND ORGANIZATIONAL DEVELOPMENT	HOUSING DELIVERY	MUNICIPAL HEALTH
• 100% of all critical vacant posts to be filled. • Targeted recruitment to increase the number of women in the middle management level. • Appointment of at least two disabled people during the financial year. • Timely submission of the EE Report, Annual Training Report and the Work Place Skills Plan • Approval of the SDBIP one month into the new financial year. • Upgrade and improve the functionality of the website, posting of the budget 2008/09, quarterly news bulletin, economic sector plans, the annual report and the SDF. • Finalize the Delegation of Powers and Functions Policy. • Introduce a framework for Employee Health and Wellness Programme. • Manage and improve the implementation of the PMS quarterly coaching sessions and an annual performance review report. • Drafting of Individual Career Development Plans for all the employees. • Keeping a functional and approved Record Management System. • Support the successful establishment of the 5 Youth Advisory Centres. • Support the successful implementation of the National Youth Service Programme.	▪ Implementation of the Housing Policy and the Housing Plan. ▪ Successful implementation of the Ouboks Project in terms of the project plan timeframes. ▪ To put all systems in place to get Level 2 and 3 Accreditation. ▪ Strengthening of the institutional capacity of the Housing Unit.	▪ Recruit at least two extra EH Practitioners to improve the quality of municipal health service. ▪ Put a plan for a systematic takeover of the municipal services without compromising the fiscal stability of the District Municipality. ▪ Implementation of the MH 2010 Implementation Plan.

DISASTER MANAGEMENT	GOVERNANCE AND COMMUNITY PARTICIPATION	INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT
▪ Conduct a review on the response-time of the Centre. ▪ Look at the creative ways to increase the disaster response capacity of the local municipalities. ▪ Conduct a risk analysis on disaster threats in the district. ▪ Review of the Disaster Management Framework ▪	▪ Strengthen the implementation of the Quarterly Bulletin. ▪ Improve the newsworthy content of the bulletin. ▪ Render efficient administrative support on the implementation of Mayoral Committee Meets the People. ▪ Render efficient Secretariat Services to the Lake! Gariep Inter-municipality Forum. ▪ Render efficient support to the work of Council Committees. ▪ Explore possibilities of convening the Council Committee Meeting on different days.	**WATER** ▪ Conduct a study on the actual backlogs on portable water. ▪ Solicit funding for the bulk water supply in the district ▪ All formal stands to have piped water on site by the end of 2009. **BUCKET ERADICATION** ▪ Eradication of all bucket on formal stands by end June 2008. ▪ 100% of all schools with adequate sanitation by the end of 2009. ▪ Draft and submit a business plan for the eradication of dry sanitation in the district the primary focus areas: - Colesberg, and - Britstown. GRANT FUNDING ▪ 100% Expenditure of MIG and the PIG or any other grant allocated to the DM for investment in service infrastructure. ▪ Grant spending primary focus on sanitation and water. ELECTRICITY ▪ Assist municipalities to ensure that there is 95% of all indigent households have access t free basic electricity. ▪ Intensify our programme to ensure access to electricity for farm dwellers. ▪ Actively take part in the campaign to promote efficiency in energy consumption. ROADS ▪ 4 000 km of gravel road to be bladed. ▪ Explore seriously the possibilities of implementing extensive programme of EPWP during the implementation service infrastructure projects. ▪ Implement the outcome of the fleet management study that was conducted in the DM. ▪ Work towards ensuring that 80% of our plants is relatively operational. ▪ Cut the over-expenditure by 50% in the mechanical section of the Technical Services. OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE ▪ The O an M Unit to compile Operation and Maintenance Plans for the local municipalities.

INTERNAL AUDIT UNIT	DEPARTMENT OF FIANACE	**SHARED SERVICES**
▪ At least execute 36 quarterly internal audits in all 9 municipalities. ▪ 36 Audit Committee meetings to take place. ▪ Assist municipalities in the recruitment and training of Internal Audit Committee Members. ▪ Always ensure quality assurance in the work and conduct of the Internal Auditors as required by the AG. ▪ Assist all 8 municipalities with the formulation and implementation of Fraud Response and Prevention Plan. ▪ Assist all 8 municipalities with Risk Management	EXPENDITURE MANAGEMENT ▪ Avoid unauthorized expenditure. ▪ Avoid wasteful expenditure ▪ Respond to all audit queries both internal and external. ▪ Avoid over-expenditure. ▪ Establishment of the Supply Chain Management Unit. ▪ Keep personnel expenditure below the national norm. ▪ Implement early warning system. **PROCUREMENT** ▪ Establish a fully functional Supply Chain Management Unit. ▪ Strict compliance with the Supply Chain Management Policy. ▪ Conduct risk management. **FINANCIAL STATEMENT AND SYSTEM** ▪ Submission of the GAMAP/GRAP financial statements by the end of August 2009. ▪ Unqualified audit opinion for the financial year 2008/09. ▪ Ensure proper maintenance and operation of the financial systems. **FINANCIAL REPORTING** ▪ That accurate and professional reports as prescribed by the MFMA are submitted monthly, quarterly, mid-term and annually to the MEC, Council and Treasury.	**IDP SUPPORT** ▪ Promote inter-governmental planning**.** ▪ **Efficient management of service providers.** ▪ **Ensure that all municipalities in the district have credible IDP.** ▪ **Assist municipalities with the IDP Review process as prescribed by legislation.** ▪ **Ensure that all building plans applications received are responded to within on e month.** ▪ **Strengthen IDP support to municipalities ate least 4 of the 8 municipalities must have credible IDP's in 2008/09** **HUMAN RESOURCE** ▪ **Ensure that all municipalities submits their Workplace Skills Plans.** ▪ **Assist and support municipalities in the implementation of WSP.** ▪ **Assist and support municipalities with the compilation and implementation of EE Plans.** ▪ **Give administrative and logistical support to the District DIGR.** ▪ **Training of the municipalities and identified training programmes.** **LEGAL AND PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SERVICES** ▪ **Give credible and incisive legal advice to all municipalities in the district.** ▪ **Assist municipalities with litigation and drafting of legal documents.** ▪ **Assist and support all municipalities with the compilation and implementation of the PMS.** ▪ **Assist municipalities I establishment of the Performance Audit Committees.** ▪ **Monitor the implementation of the PMS in all municipalities in the district.** ▪ **Assist municipalities in drafting of by-laws.**
LOCAL ECONOMIC D EVELOPMENT		

2010 TOURISM POTENTIAL ▪ Investigate the possibility of having Non-commercial Public Viewing Area in all municipal capital towns in the district. ▪ To fast-track the issue of the appointment of the Tourism Office for the district by the DEAT. ▪ To strengthen our role in the Lake! Garieb initiative. ▪ Investigate the possibilities of hosting Pixley Ka Seme Cultural Festival with Emthanjeni Municipality. **DGDS** ▪ Finalize the DGDS Implementation Plan which focuses on the five anchor projects. ▪ Support the Manhattan investments in Siyancuma. ▪ Complete the Standard Investment Incentives for the district. This should have clear incentive packages for the investors in the district. ▪ Exploit the implementation of service infrastructure projects to implement EPW: - Water pipeline project in Renosterberg - The Ouboks project. ▪ There should be conscious effort to give preference to SMME in the implementation of the SCM Policy. ▪ Fully explore the economic potential of the mineral deposits in Siyancuma and Siyathemba Municipalities. ▪ Fully explore the economic and tourism opportunities and potential Square Kilometer Array Telescope in the outskirts of Carnarvon.		

3.5 Development objectives, strategies, outputs and targets

As a municipality that is totally committed to the development of this region, the following objectives, strategies, outputs and targets have been developed to address the problems and issues identified in this IDP:

TABLE 80: SANITATION

Development Objective		**Strategy**		**Output**		**Target**	**Alignment**
S1	Provide acceptable and /or sustainable sanitation to all	S1.1	Replace bucket system with alternative and acceptable sanitation system on format settlements	S1.1.	Mobilize and educate community on all alternative sanitation systems	Sept. 2009	♦ National Policy on Sanitation ♦ DWAF, DHLG
				S1.1.2	Eradicate all bucket system on formal settlements	Dec 2010	"
		S1.1.2	Implementation of bucket eradication on project in the region.	S1.2.1	Implement, monitor and co-ordinate bucket eradication project	Dec 2010	"
				S1.2.2	Implement and monitor MIG project on sanitation	June 2009	"
		S1.1.3	Replace bucket system at all schools	S1.1.3.1	100% of all schools with adequate sanitation	Dec 2009	"

TABLE 81: BULK WATER SUPPLY

DEVELOPMENT OBJEVTIVES		STRATEGY		OUTPUT		TARGET	ALIGNMENT
W1	To provide sufficient bulk water	W1.1	Increase access to water supply in the region.	W1.1.1	Implement the proposed bulk water supply from the Orange river	June 2010	♦ DWAF ♦ DBSA
				W1.1.2	Solicit funds from DWAF for the implementation of the project.	Dec 2009	"
				W1.1.3	Funding for the construction of a 200ml water pipe from Copperton to Vanwyksvlei is solicited.	June 2010	DBSA

Source: PKS strategic plan 2007/9

TABLE 82: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT (LED)

Development Objectives		Strategy		Output		Target	Alignment
LED1	To promote Local Economic Development in the region	LED1.1	Implement the District Growth and Development Strategy (DGDS)	LED1.1.1	Local Economic Development Strategy is implemented	June 2010	♦ National Policy on LED ♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ PGDS
				LED1.1.2	Launching of DGDS	December 2009	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM

							♦ LMs
				LED1.1.3	Increase of economic growth (1-3% to 2%)	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM ♦ LMs
				LED1.1.4	1 000 jobs created in the formal and informal sector	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM ♦ LMs
				LED1.1.5	Compile business plans for 5 anchor projects identified in DGDS	Dec 2009	♦ District Municipality ♦ Local Municipalities
				LED1 1 6	LED Advisory Committee/Forum established and functional	December 2009	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM ♦ LMs
		LED1.2	Create an enabling economic environment for investment	LED1.2.1	Upgrade and maintain infrastructure	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED1.2.2	Rehabilitate De Aar Railway station	June 2009	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ Dept of Transport ♦ DM and LMs
				LED1.2.3	Improve telecommunication	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Communications

					and technology networks		
				LED1.2.4	Compile and adopt investment promotion and incentive policy	December 2009	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM
				LED1.2.5	Ensure accessibility of banking services.	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED1.2.6	Visible safety and security	June 2010	♦ Safety and Security
				LED1.2.7	Employable workforce	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED1.2.7	Sufficient serviced sites for commercial and industrial investments.	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
LED2	Increase SMME promotion	LED2.1	SMME support services offered in the region	LED2.1.1	SMME skills training programmes are compiled and implemented.	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED2.1.2	LED strategy implemented	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED 2.1.3	Establishment of mentorship programmes.	Dec 2009	♦ DM
				LED2.1.4	Informal business in urban areas promoted	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM ♦ LMs

LED3	Increased support of emerging farmers	LED3.1	Work with relevant stakeholders to unlock access to finance and land for emerging farmers	LED3.1.1	Established Local Business Services Centres	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED 3.1.2	Land Audit report is compiled	Dec 2009	♦ Dept. of Agriculture ♦ DM
				LED3.1.3 LED 3.1.4	Make agricultural land available for emerging farmers	June 2010	♦ Dept Land Affairs and Agriculture
					Mentorship programmes established	Dec 2009	♦ Dept Land Affairs and Agriculture
LED4	Increased tourism promotion	LED4.1	Compile Tourism Market Strategy to attract investments and tourists	LED4.1.1	Tourism units established	Dec 2009	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED4.1.2	District Tourism master plan compiled	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED4.1.3	Participate and support Lake Gariep development initiatives and Tri-District Alliance	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM ♦ LMs
				LED4.1.4	Secure funding for the construction of a cultural village in Colesberg		♦

LED5	Value-adding to district's products	LED5.1	Undertake feasibility studies on viable value-adding industries	LED5.1.1	Feasibility studies on viable industries to be undertaken	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
				LED5.1.2	Studies on uranium deposits in the region is commissioned	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
LED6	Reduce employment and poverty by 50% respectively in the region by 2014	LED6.1	Employ 300 people in EPWP projects and 100 youth in the National Youth Service Programme	LED6.1.1	300 people employed in EPWP and 100 youth in NYSP	Dec 2009	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
		LED6.1.3	Creation of job opportunities in the formal and informal sector	LED6.1.2.1	1 000 jobs in the formal and informal sector created	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs
		LED6.1.4	Increase food security in the region	LED6.1.3.1	Indigents are registered with DOSD	Continuous	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ Dept of Social Services
				LED6.1.3.2	Urban agriculture is promoted	Continuous	♦ Dept. of Economic Affairs ♦ DM ♦ LMs
			Urging young men and women to participate in the economic activities	LED6.1.4.1	SMME promotion	Continuous	• ***Dept of Economic Affairs*** • ***DM*** • ***LMs***

TABLE 83: HOUSING

Development Objectives		**Strategy**		**Output**		**Target**	**Alignment**
H1	Provide housing for all by 2014	H1.1	Implement housing delivery project in the region	H1.1.1	Develope housing sector plans and housing strategy for the District and local municipalities	Dec 2009	♦ National Housing Policy ♦ DHLG ♦ DM ♦ LMs
				H1.1.2	Build 2220 housing units in Colesberg	2008-2011	♦ National Housing Policy ♦ DHLG ♦ DM ♦ LMs
		H.1.2	Facilitate and co-ordinate housing delivery project in the region	H1.2.1	Established district co-ordination committee	Dec 2009	"

Table 84 ROADS, STREET AND STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

DEVELOPMENT OBJEVTIVES		**STRATEGY**		**OUTPUT**		**TARGET**	**ALIGNMENT**
RS1	To improve conditions of roads, streets and storm water drainage in the region	RS1.1	Co-ordinate the maintenance and upgrading of roads, streets and storm water network.	RS1.1.1	Prepare infrastructure maintenance plant	Dec 2009	♦ Roads Department ♦ DM ♦ LMs
				RS1.1.2	Implement and monitor MIG,EPWP and PIG projects.	June 2009	"
		RS1.2	Find ways and means of replacing the ageing plants being need by Technical Services for upgrading of roads and streets.	RS1.2.1	Replacement and/or maintenance of plants used by Technical Services.	June 2010	"

TABLE 85: HEALTH AND HIV/AIDS

Development Objectives		Strategy		Output		Target	Alignment
HIV1	Reduce the level HIV/AIDS infections amongst young men and women.	HIV1.1	Strengthen the Council programme of mass mobilization to reduce the impact of HIV/AIDS.	HIV1.1.1	Set up the municipality's HIV/AIDS campaigns in conjunction with dept. of Health.	Dec 2009	♦ National Aids Policy ♦ Dept of health
		HIV1.2	Ensure greater interface between sector departments.	HIV1.2.1	Partnership against HIV/AIDS.	June 2009	"
		HIV1.3	Ensure access to Health Services	HIV1.3.1	Improved district health facilities.		"
				HIV1.3.2	24 hour health facilities		"

TABLE 86: ELECTRICITY

DEVELOPMENT OBJEVTIVES		STRATEGY		OUTPUT		TARGET	ALIGNMENT	
E1	Access to electricity by all households by 2014	E1.1	Fast track process of delivery of free basic electricity.	E1.1.1	Monitoring the implementation of free basic electricity.	June 2010	♦ ♦	Dept. of Minerals ♦ and Energy.
		E1.2	Co-ordinate the maintenance and upgrading of existing electrical networks	E1.2.1	Ensure local municipalities develop and adopt infrastructure maintenance plan.	June 2010		"

TABLE 87: EDUCATION, YOUTH AND DEVELOPMENT

Development Objectives		Strategy		Output		Target	Alignment
Y1	Improve the well-being of young men and women	Y1.1	Development of education. Sport, health and recreation facilities in the region.	Y1.1.1	Recreational facilities upgraded and maintained.	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Education
		Y1.2	Access to vocational training	Y1.2.1	Access to Youth Advisory Centre.	June 2010	"
		Y1.3	Urging young men and women to participate in the economic activities.	Y1.3.1	SMME promotion	June 2010	"
				Y1.3.2	Skills development	June 2010	"
				Y1.3.3	Youth Advisory Centre to disseminate information on education and youth development	Continuous	"

TABLE 88: LAND AND LAND REFORM

Development Objectives		Strategy		Output		Target	Alignment
L1	Provision of land for agricultural, commercial, industrial and residential development and transfer of ownership.	L1.1	Identify land acquisition opportunities.	L1.1.1	Land audit is compiled	Dec 2009	♦ National Land Policy ♦ Dept of Land Affairs
				L1.1.2	Sufficient land is made available for development	June 2010	"

TABLE 89: DISASTER MANAGEMENT

Development Objectives		Strategy		Output		Target	Alignment
DM1	To reduce the risk of disasters and to cope with disasters.	DM1.1	Review the current disaster management plan.	DM1.1.1	Disaster Management Plan adopted by Council	Dec 2009	♦ National Government Policy on Disaster Management ♦ Safety and Security
		DM1.2		Improve capacity of Disaster Management Unit to deliver the function effectively.	Capacity of the Unit is built.	June 2010	"

TABLE 90: SPORT AND RECREATION

Development Objectives		Strategy		Output		Target	Alignment
SR1	Maintenance of sport and recreation facilities in the region.	SR1.1	Co-ordination of sport and recreation facilities programmes	SR1.1.1	Compile business plan for local municipalities.	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Arts and Culture
		SR1.2	Co-ordinate sport activities in the region.	SR 1.2.1	Secure funding	Dec 2009	"
				S1.2.2	Encourage upgrading of sport facilities to host regional, provincial and national events.	June 2010	"

TABLE 91: ENVIRONMENTAL AND WASTE MANAGEMENT

Development Objectives		**Strategy**		**Output**		**Target**	**Alignment**
ENV 1	Improve poor management of environment and waste in the region.	ENV1.1	Co-ordinate planning and management of environment and waste.	ENV1.1.1	Adopt and implement Integrated waste management Programme by Council	June 2010	♦ Dept. of Environmental

TABLE 92: RURAL DEVELOPMENT

Development Objectives		**Strategy**		**Output**		**Target**	**Alignment**
RD1	To improve the quality of life of every citizen in the rural areas.	RD1	Promoting development and employment activities in the rural areas.	RD1	Compile and adopt a rural development strategy by Council.	June 2010	• Department of Economic Affairs • Departmet of Land Affairs and Agriculture. • Department of Education • Department of Social Welfare • DHLG • DTI • Dept of Transport • District and Local Municipalities • NGOs.

TABLE 93: Priority: Safety and Security

Development objective	**Strategy**	**Output**	**Target**	**Alignment**

SS1	Promote safe and sucured environment in the region	SS1	Forming crime partnership to reduce the level of crime in the region	SS1	Effective CPFs in urban and rural areas	Continuos Continuos	• Provincial policy framework on integrated local crime prevention • National drug mater plan • Safety and Security SAPS, DM, LMs, NGOs
				SS2	Police visibility in towns	Continuos	
				SS3	Community safety plan is compiled	June 2010	

TABLE 94: CEMETRES

Development Objectives		**Strategy**		**Output**		**Target**	**Alignment**
C1	Ensure safe and maintenance of cemeteries in the region.	C1.1	Monitor the upgrading and maintenance of all existing cemeteries.	C1.1.1	By-laws and policies are implemented by Local Municipalities.	June 2010	♦ National and Provincial Government Programmes
				C1.1.2	Assist in securing land for new extensions to cemeteries.	June 2010	"

Identified implementation agencies

The implementation of an integrated development plan is not as straight forward and clear as that of a structure plan (development plan of a town). The implementation of an integrated development plan compels actions in various sectors both government and private. In order to coordinate some of the development priorities contained in the IDP of the District Municipality potential implementation agencies/institutions for some priorities have been identified as shown below:

Table 95 Proposed implementation agencies

Development priorities	**Implementing agency**
Sanitation	DWAF, DPLG and DHLG
Bulk water supply	DWAF and DBSA
Local Economic Development (LED)	Dept of Economic Affairs District and Local Municipalities Dept of Minerals and Energy Dept of Roads, Transport and Public works DHLG Dept of Environmental Affairs and Tourism Dept of Safety and Security Dept of Land Affairs and Agriculture
Housing	DHLG District and Local Municipalities
Roads, street and storm water management	Dept of Roads and Public Works District and Local Municipalities
Health and HIV/Aids	Dept of Health District and Local Municipalities
Electricity	ESKOM Local Municipalities Dept of Minerals and Energy
Education and youth development	Dept of Education sports and recreation District and Local Municipalities
Land and Land reform	Dept of Land Affairs and Agriculture
Disaster management	Dept of Safety and Security District and Local Municipalities
Sport and recreation	Dept of Arts and culture District and Local Municipalities
Environmental and waste management	Dept of Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Rural Development	Dept of Economic Affairs Dept of Land Affairs and Agric Dept of Education Social Welfare DHLG DTI Dept of Transport District and Local municipalities NGOs
Safety and Security	Dept of Safety and Security SAPS SANDF District and Local Municipalities
Cemeteries	DHLG Local Municipalities

Conclusion

The above institutional arrangements should have explained the relation between the identified development priorities and implementation. The development priority's impact on implementation varies, they can be considered as follows:

i. Imperative (binding) in a limited number of cases concerning eg, land reform issues that fall under the jurisdiction of the relevant authority (provided the priorities are confirmed by the authority.

ii. Recommendations to other bodies in their capacity as implementing agencies. The majority of the priorities fall into this category.

iii. Indicative i.e. illustrating possible developments and suggesting relevant action to be taken by organizations and individuals concerned. Priorities for market based activities (commercial agriculture, trade and industry) are usually indicative.

The strength of the proposed development priorities (irrespective of the nature) and the likelihood of them being implemented is to a large extent depending on the validity of motivation attached to them. Economic resources available will of course also set limits to what can be realized. It should however be remembered that a number of the priorities are meant to promote economic development and thus also to create income opportunities for public and private enterprises.

Chapter 4

4.1 Integration

The integration phase is one of the critical components of an IDP as it strengthens the sustainability of the process. Therefore, the main purpose of this phase is to develop an integrated planning framework that outlines among others, plans, projects and/or programmes that will be implemented during the 2009/10 financial year and beyond. Due to the tickness of the plans or programmes that have already been prepared, some of them are included in volume 2 and volume 3.

The following sector plans and programmes that are included in this section are:

See Annexure

1. Spatial development Framework (SDF)
2. District Growth and Development Strategy (DGDS)
3 Poverty alleviation plan
4. Gender Equity Plan

4.2 Performance Management System

In terms of section 40 of the Municipal Systems Act a municipality, after consultation with community, must develop and implement mechanisms, systems and processes for the monitoring, measurement and review of performance in respect of the key performance indicators and performance targets set by it. In compliance with this regulation the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will adopt the following planning procedures to monitor, measure and review its performance.

4.2.1 Monitoring

Each key performance area prioritised in the IDP will be assigned a champion in the form of a lead manager. The manager assigned to a particular priority area will measure and monitor progress on the indicators on an on-going basis.

4.2.2 Performance Measurement

At the end of each financial year the Executive Mayor in collaboration with the Municipal Manager shall request all HODs and/ or managers responsible for the priority areas to measure all performance indicators and performance targets within his/ her priority area. The envisaged reports from this process will be submitted to the management team who will then assess them and produce a port that will be submitted to the Council for consideration. Performance measurement is very important in our municipal planning practice because it will enable us to determine the total improvement brought by outputs in accordance with the outcome of the indicators.

4.2.3 Review

The Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will after measuring its performance, assess whether it is doing better or not in terms of its mandatory functions, vision and mission statement as indicated in the IDP. The review process will be consistent with the best value, review framework of challenge, compare, consult and compete. Therefore the review process will invariable calls for the municipality to challenge the current level of performance, compare it to others, consult with communities and find ways and means of competing with others to provide best value in service delivery. Based on the above the municipality shall carry out its review process as follows:

Table 96: Lines of Accountability

Supervisors	Review performance of employees reporting directly to them.
Line/ functional/ sectoral managers	**Review performance of their respective area regularly, monthly or quarterly**
Portfolio committee	**Manage and review performance on the municipality's priorities and functions respective to their portfolio**
Municipal manager and his management team	**Review performance of municipality constantly, at least quarterly.**
Executive Mayor	**Review the performance of the administration**
Council	**Review the performance of municipal council, its committee and the administration.**
The public	**The public/ communities or clients will be given necessary information and opportunities to review the performance of the municipality and public representative (Councillors)**

4.3 Performance reporting

Section 46 of the MSA 2000 stipulates that a municipality must annually prepare a report that covers all priority areas in the performance management framework. In order to comply with this provision, the performance report of the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will be covering the following aspects or areas of its performance management system.

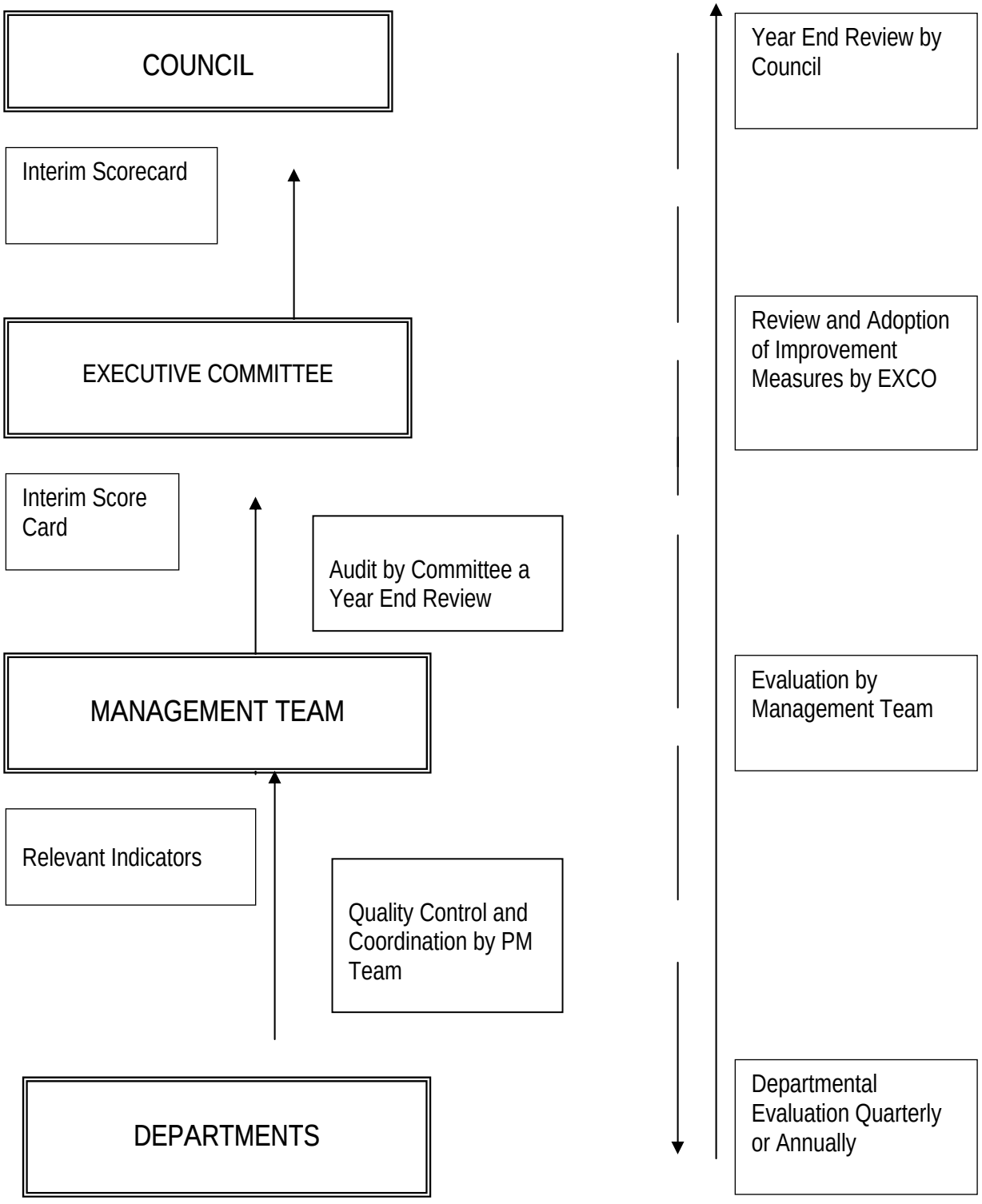
- The performance of the municipality during the financial year and a comparison with targets and performance in the previous financial year
- The development and service delivery priorities and the performance targets for the following financial year
- Measures that are to be taken in the following financial year
- Financial statement(s) for the financial year
- An audit report of the financial statements and the report of the performance measures

After compiling the report it will then be presented at a community meeting for discussion. The MEC for Local Government and Housing and Audit-General will be notified about the meeting before it is held.

4.4 Reporting and Reviewing

In summary the process of reporting and reviewing that will be adopted by the municipality for assessing its annual performance is illustrated in the figure below:

Figure 10: Process of reporting and reviewing



The proposed format for the reports and performance management scorecard are shown below:

4.5 Draft format for reporting

Table 97: Performance report for the period ……. for priority area ……..

Objectives	Indicators	Baseline	Target	Current Measurement	Measurement date and source	Reasons for performance status	Corrective action proposed

***NB:** Baseline measurement is a measurement of the indicator at the start of the period under evaluation.*

Table 98: Performance management scorecard

Performance Area	Scorecard				
	20%	40%	60%	80%	100%
	1	2	3	4	5
Individual and Team Performance					
Public participation					
Organisational performance					
Political management					
Institutional transformation					
Etc.					
Total					

2008/9 SCORECARD

The 2008/9 scorecard is attached in volume 2 of this IDP

4.8 DISTRICT GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY (DGDS)

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Pixley Ka Seme, as with other districts in the Northern Cape, has a base of mineral resources, including diamonds, copper, manganese and iron ore deposits, uranium and tiger's eye. Mineral-based activities, whether large- or small-scale, have the potential to stimulate economic diversification and industrial and rural development provided a number of issues are successfully addressed. The implementation of effective mining strategies can generate upstream and downstream activities that present viable investment opportunities and promote local economic development and poverty alleviation.

In addressing the inherited situation of poverty in the district, the available base of mineral resources can play a significant role. However, the mere existence of a resource base is not a sufficient condition to create a viable local economy and effectively engage poverty. The number of countries, especially postcolonial African countries, that have a huge and often easily exploitable resource base but experience excessive levels of poverty, evidences this.

However, mineral resource endowments have been beneficial for the economic development of many countries, including nations such as Australia, Canada, Chile, Botswana and Malaysia. One of the world's poorest countries when it gained independence in 1966 with a per capita income of less than $100, Botswana today has a per capita income exceeding $3 500. The diamond revenues has transformed the country from one with only 6km of tarred roads at the time of independence to a country with some 6 000km of tarred roads today.

In adopting the value chain model and making the recommendations as noted later in this document, we have aimed to answer the following key questions:

- What steps do we take to get a fuller and scientific understanding of what mineral resources are available in Pixley Ka Seme?
- How do we promote the mining of these minerals in such a way that investment is attracted into the District that allows jobs to be created, communities to benefit, empowerment issues to be addressed and the economic profile of the District to improve?
- What strategy do we use to ensure that beneficiation of the minerals takes place locally with full local involvement whilst attracting financial and infrastructure investment into the District?
- How do we ensure that empowerment and local groups supply goods and services required by mining companies and support mining companies to meet their procurement obligations?
- What are the secondary industries that could be developed to ensure sustainable economic development once mineral resources are exhausted?
- How do we promote PPPs, District Municipality capability, gender development, financing and the correct institutional base to effectively exploit existing mineral resources?

For more than a century, South Africa's mineral industry, largely supported by gold, diamond, coal and platinum production, has made an important contribution to the national economy. It has provided the impetus for the development of an extensive and efficient physical infrastructure and has contributed greatly to the establishment of the country's secondary industries. However, given the skewed policies of apartheid the benefits of the mining and minerals processing sector was limited to the white community and white owned businesses.

Recent legislative changes in the country provide the Pixley Ka Seme District with a number of opportunities for using its resource base as an anchor for future economic growth. The mineral industry has historically been a critical component of the Northern Cape Province's economy. In 2003, the Northern Cape contributed R 10.8 billion (7.8%) by value of total mineral sales nationally. This was made up largely of sales of iron ore, manganese ore, base metal concentrates, and uncut diamonds. Legislative changes in the country affecting mining and minerals processing include:

i) Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28, 2002)
This Act allows for State sovereignty over all mineral and petroleum resources in the Republic, promotion of economic growth and development of these resources and expanding of opportunities for the historically disadvantaged. In addition, the Act ensures that holders of mining and production rights contribute to the socio-economic development of the areas in which they are operating.

ii) The Broad-Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry The Charter commits all stakeholders in the mining industry to transferring a minimum of 26% of assets to black ownership within ten years.

iii) Scorecard for the Broad Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry The Scorecard provides measurable criteria for Charter elements, with sufficient certainty to comfort markets and at the same time flexible enough to allow management to run companies in a responsible and lucrative manner. In effect, the Scorecard amplifies on the Charter and turns it into a practical document.

iv)The Royalty Bill The Bill proposes royalties on gross mining revenue ranging from 1-8% to be paid quarterly once new order mineral rights have been accorded to mining companies.

v) The Beneficiation bill (draft) This bill remains unpublished but aims to promote local beneficiation of minerals mined in the country.

vi) The Diamond Amendment Bill The Diamond Amendment Bill provides for the separation of the diamond regulatory functions from the promotional functions, which are currently both the responsibility of the South African Diamond Board. The Precious Metals and Diamonds Regulator would be responsible for regulating the diamond trade as well as the management and

administration of diamond and precious metals beneficiation in totality. The State Diamond Trader will be responsible for ensuring the supply of rough diamonds to South African based businesses and facilitate the sale of rough and polished diamonds. All unpolished diamonds for export are to be offered at the state controlled Diamond Exchange and Export Centre and export duty will be payable on diamonds that can be economically cut in South Africa.

In Pixley Ka Seme, policy makers will have to identify critical growth paths that enable the viable mining and beneficiation of existing resources and the building of complementary industries using the mineral resources as a ratchet to encourage the growth of sectors like agriculture, transport and tourism. Proposals are made in this document to support policy makers at a district level. These proposals are guided by the following key strategic objectives:

- Promoting the sustainable economic growth of the district and empowerment of its citizens.
- Promoting effective and efficient mining and beneficiation of the district's mineral resources.
- Promoting gender development as a major theme cutting across all initiatives and interventions.
- Contributing to the objectives of the ASGI-SA and Northern Cape PGDS.
- Positioning the District as a target for mining related investments.
- Promoting job creation, human capital development, and SMME development as a platform for advancing BEE in the district.
- Enhancing good governance and effective overall management of the DMMS.

It is crucial that the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality takes the leadership and facilitates the implementation of a proactive set of interventions. Such a management role is key to providing the ignition and motivation for the successful roll out of a comprehensive mining and minerals strategy for the district.

Whilst there are a large number of minerals that could possibly be targeted as part of the Pixley Ka Seme district strategy, the focus here is on diamonds, Tiger's Eye stones, salt and uranium. The reason for this is that these dovetail well with the provincial strategy of cutting, polishing and jewellery manufacture and contributing to national strategic requirements, especially as regards nuclear energy.

In proposing mining and minerals processing related interventions, we have used a value chain model which comprises of the following elements: exploration; mining (including sorting, valuation and sales); processing and beneficiation (e.g. diamond cutting and polishing, uranium processing, product distribution and sales); manufacture (design, manufacture and distribution); and retail sales. Graphics of the model are presented in the annexure on mining.

1. THE DIAMOND SECTOR

A small number of major players control the mining and marketing of diamonds. Africa produces 61% of the world's diamonds but has less than 1% of the

diamond manufacturing industry and no real influence in the marketplace beyond the extraction of diamonds. As noted later in this section, the biggest returns are made in the processes of cutting, polishing and manufacturing jewellery and African countries, including South Africa, play a limited role at these levels. The diamond analyst Chaim Even Zohar notes that is today's terms, roughly US$1bn of rough will be converted into US$16 after cutting and polishing and US$60bn once jewellery is manufactured. This shows the extent to which Africa and South Africa is losing out in the value chain given the present low levels of beneficiation and retail of manufactured jewellery

South Africa ranks fourth in the world in terms of value of rough diamond production and fifth in terms of caratage produced with production for 2004 of 14,4 Mct valued at US$1.2 Billion. The two major producers in South Africa are De Beers and Transhex, with De Beers accounting for 95% of local production by mass. In the South African context, in 2004, the Northern Cape produced 38% (by volume) of South Africa's diamonds. The province has averaged over 35% of the country's production over the past 10 years. What is of particular significance is that in 2004 the Northern Cape provided in excess of 97% of the country's alluvial diamonds, and over 68% of the marine diamond production.

The domestic cutting industry numbers some 200 or so "factories" employing about 2100 people. Many of the operations are small with foreign-owned firms dominating the business. Cutting factories are dominated by the likes of India, who have historically been cutting smaller stones, and Belgium and Israel, who have focussed on larger and fancy stones.

In India there are 30 000 factories employing about 900 000 people. Israel has 500 factories employing some 7 500 cutters. Belgium is also a significant player with 300 factories employing 1 500 people. China has entered the cutting and polishing market and presently has just under a 100 factories and employs 5 000 people – this is expected to grow rapidly.
Clearly the benefits of African mining are experienced more in other countries than in the African countries themselves. However, a number of initiatives are being undertaken in Africa to reverse this situation. The New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD) has launched the Diamond Producers of Africa (DPA) initiative aimed at developing a common platform for African diamond producing countries to retain as much of the benefits in member countries.

1.1 Pixley Ka Seme diamonds resource base There is little reliable data on reserves in the district. The data noted in the annexure is as extracted from publications and information published by the Department of Mineral and Energy Affairs, Council for Geoscience, Mintek, Diamond Core Resources and Trans Hex and is based on current exploration and mining projects. It is by no means an exhaustive description of the district's resources but simply provides a pointer on the grade and extent of resources in the diamondiferous areas from Hopetown to Douglas and from Douglas to Prieska.

Transhex notes that generally diamonds from the Orange River deposits have an average stone size of 1.5 to 2.5cts (2.6cts per stone – Trans Hex's Saxendrift

Mine with a selling price of US$1,000/ct (late 1990's to early 2000's). An overview of the key exploration and mining projects is noted in the attached annexure and focuses mainly on the resources in Silverstreams, Saxondrift, Uitdraai, De Kalk and the Muishoek project. The main players here are Diamond Core Resources, Samadi Resources and Transhex.

2. TIGER'S EYE SECTOR

Relative to the rest of the world, Tiger's Eye deposits are unique to the Northern Cape. The deposits occur near iron-banded formations, which form due to unique climatic and mineral characteristics of the region and are mined open cast.

The mining of Tiger's Eye is conducive to small-scale mining as seams can be found within five metres of the surface. SA laws prohibit the export of rough Tiger's Eye - the processing of these stone (cutting, polishing, jewellery manufacturing) should be done within the country. There are, however, some barriers to development, including:

- The lack of verified data regarding reserves in the area.
- Poor infrastructure especially in areas where the reserves are most likely situated.
- Illegal exportation of rough Tigers Eye stones
- Skills shortage in both the before- and after markets.

These problems are serious, but if they can be economically overcome, Pixley Ka Seme could benefit from economic growth through mining and beneficiation and the creation of jobs and complementary sectors like tourism. The new mining legislation presents an excellent opportunity to re-evaluate the industry and to find methods to revitalise it.

In addressing the situation that Tiger's Eye rough is being illegally traded, it is important to take note of recommendations made by community representatives that temporary licenses be granted to local groups to for a window period to allow communities to generate the finances required to apply for licences and get their houses in order (see attached report on Mining and Minerals Processing Mini Summit). Community groups have been historically mining Tiger's Eye and strategies should be worked out that enhance the community capability to mine and beneficiate Tiger's Eye in an efficient and economic basis.

Investment attraction and community development to effectively allow communities to more effectively participate in mining and beneficiation of Tiger's Eye should be prioritised.

2.1 Tiger's Eye reserves in the Pixley Ka Seme District South Africa's tiger's eye deposits are amongst the few in the world that are economically important and mineable. Deposits of gem-quality tiger's eye occur only in the banded-iron formations of the northern part of the province.

3. THE URANIUM SECTOR

With the general worldwide acceptance of the Kyoto agreement, global attention is turning towards less environmentally harmful forms of energy. Very near the top of the list of contenders for an environmentally friendly and sustainable energy source is uranium as found in nuclear power plants such as Koeberg. In America, an estimated 20% of all energy is supplied from nuclear power plants, while 16% of the world's energy comes from this source.

Vastly less uranium is needed in comparison to other fuels, e.g. one drum of uranium oxide (U_3O_8) contains the equivalent in energy of 25 000 barrels of crude oil. South Africa has recently announced intentions to build four to six new nuclear power plants. Currently, 6% of all South Africa's power comes from the Koeberg Power Station. Locally, Minerals & Energy Affairs Department noted that new laws would be drafted regarding increasing SA's uranium production and that a special dispensation would be issued for exploring the mineral.

3.1 Uranium Reserves in Pixley Ka Seme In Pixley Ka Seme, unconfirmed reserves exist in the southern part of the district. This runs in a belt stretching from Luton through Hutchinson, Hanover and Colesberg ending in the Free State. Although there are no immediate calculations as to reserves in the area, deposits are thought to be considerable with SXR UraniumOne, a Canadian uranium and gold resource company with a primary listing on the Toronto Stock Exchange and a secondary listing on the JSE, looking to apply for prospecting rights on some 500,000 hectares (about 1.2 million acres) of land thought to be rich in uranium resources, in particular the Karoo and the Springbok Flats.

4. THE SALT MINING SECTOR

Salt is an important industrial mineral and is used in many chemical processes as well as in the food industry. There are twelve mines recovering salt in the Northern Cape located primarily at Calvinia and Gordonia. There is potential to establish more.

Salt in South Africa is recovered from coastal and inland salt pans. The Northern Cape contains a large proportion of the inland salt pans. The majority of the inland pans lie in a curved belt 50 to 160 km wide between Vryburg in the North, Hopetown in the South, and Brandvlei in the West and covers a swathe across the centre of the Northern Cape Province.

Salt is a low value, bulky commodity that is not traded internationally in any significant amount. Uses for salt include being a flavourant, an ingredient in the preparation of foods such as cheese and butter, drilling, hide curing, improving traction on icy roads and textile dying.

In Pixely Ka Seme only one salt mine exists at Hopetown. Additional salt mine sites around the Hopetown area and continue in a belt running westwards through the District exist but have not been developed due to their remote location.For these sites to be mined, research would have to be commissioned to find the extent of the salt resources in the district. A feasibility study would have to find whether it would be profitable to open such mines considering the low price for salt.

5. INTERVENTIONS

It is proposed that the following interventions should be considered.

5.1 Exploration As noted, there is little data on the extent of the mineral reserves in the district. It must be noted that undertaking exploration is a costly and complex business. As such it is proposed that all available district data is collected and the district puts together a detailed marketing plan to attract exploration investment into the district. This is especially so as regards diamonds, Tiger's Eye and uranium. The district should be aggressively marketed as an investment target in the mining sector. As regards salt it is proposed that the feasibility study referred to above should first be undertaken before engaging issues of exploration or mining.

5.2 Mining Once geological assessments confirm the existence of mineable reserves, selected projects could be presented to interested mining companies for investment. In doing so, the District should:

- Undertake a detailed analysis on the state of the existing infrastructure and additional infrastructure requirements, and propose and implement an infrastructure plan that is required to facilitate viable mining projects.
- Support communities to effectively organise themselves to participate in mining ventures.
- Provide training and support to small and BEE owned companies to secure supply contracts with mining operations and where appropriate link small companies in partnerships with established supply companies.
- Promote liaison and co-operation between mining companies, other State bodies, small/BEE companies and communities and their representatives.

5.3 Beneficiation The district should take active steps to promote the national drive to enhance the beneficiation of minerals mined in the country. These steps could include:

- Promote increased diamond mining in the district that will improve the regular supply of rough to the Kimberley Hub that is to be established for cutting, polishing and manufacturing diamond jewelry.
- Establish a world class Tiger's Eye Cutting, Polishing and Jewellery and Other Products Manufacturing Centre in the district.
- Facilitate the training of local people from the district to cut and polish diamonds and Tiger's Eye stones and design and manufacture jewelry.
- Establish of a South African brand based on local Tiger's Eye supplies and local designs to improve the returns from mining and beneficiating rough Tiger's Eye stones.

The processing of uranium, given its strategic and sensitive nature, will have to be considered in conjunction with National Government.

5.4 Retail/sales Given the exclusive resource base of Tiger' Eye stones in the district, the Tiger's Eye Centre can play a far more influential role in the sales and

retail environment. In addition to supplying retail outlets, consideration should be given to the Centre establishing its own retail outlets in strategic locations (JIA, tourist hotspots e.g. Cape Town and Durban etc) and locations in specific global locations where there is a demand for Tiger's Eye products. This could better be done in conjunction with a local and global retail brand and be more appropriately considered once the business plan is completed and being implemented.

The retail of manufactured diamond jewellery will be undertaken from Kimberley, given the strategy to create the Kimberley Hub for diamond beneficiation and sales.

6. SECONDARY BUSINESS AND INDUSTRY DEVELOPMENT

The exploitation and processing of minerals can contribute to the growth of secondary businesses and industries that take advantage of the backward and forward linkages between the mining sector and their respective supplier industries. Mining operations require a large number of goods and services providing an ideal opportunity for the growth and development of viable businesses with the involvement of SMMEs and BEE. The goods and services required include:

- Mining equipment including front end loaders, pans, mining locomotives etc
- Trucks, trailers and motor vehicles
- Drilling and rigging
- Construction services
- Cutting, polishing and manufacturing equipment
- Specialist equipment (e.g. gaseous diffuser) and specialist handling equipment (e.g. handling equipment) for uranium mining
- Spares, tools, bearings, valves and related supplies
- Office furniture and equipment (including computers)
- Office stationery and consumables
- Geologists and geotechnical service providers
- HR, marketing, legal, social planning and other corporate services

In terms of the mining scorecard, mining companies are required to have preferential procurement policies that enhance the growth of SMME/BEE companies. In rolling out the DMMS, Pixley Ka Seme can take a proactive role in promoting this objective by working closely with mining operations and providing support to BEE companies.

The basic categories of secondary business and industrial development that can generally be developed as a result of mining operations are:

6.1 Consulting services Individuals and SMME/BEE companies can provide HR, marketing, legal, social planning and other corporate services as well as geological and geotechnical services to mining operations.

6.2 Supply of office furniture and equipment Small businesses can be set up to focus on the supply of office furniture and equipment**,** stationery and

consumables. To ensure commercial viability, this type of business would require a few mining operations and other businesses as clients.

6.3 Supply of engineering related inputs This will involve the sourcing and supply of spares, tools, bearings, valves and related inputs that are regularly used by mines. From developments to date, it is clear that businesses focussed on this activity can be highly successful provided the business is run on the basis of providing quality products, competitive pricing, stock availability and on-time delivery. Companies involved in the supply of inputs normally are agents for local and off-shore manufacturers and national distributors enabling such companies to meet the quality, pricing, stocks and timeous delivery demands of clients. Traditionally, the supply of inputs has been the major growth point of secondary businesses around mining and has been dominated by white owned companies. Many of these previously white owned companies have sourced BEE partners and other supply companies are presently in the process of undertaking BEE deals. BEE partnering provides one channel for the entry of black businesses into this environment but more black businesses are seeing the opportunity of establishing their own agencies in association with manufacturers and distributors. It is definitely one area that the district should support through SMME/BEE support programmes.

6.4 Mining service providers Here, the focus will be on providing construction, drilling, rigging, removal of water in water logged situations, equipment repair and related services to operations involved in exploration and mining. This has also proved an attractive business opportunity and more black companies need to be trained and supported to enter into this market ether through BEE partnering or in their own right. There is concrete commitment in the Charter to pay attention to the need for family accommodation, upgrading of hostels, conversion of hostels into family units and promotion of home ownership. Entrepreneurs providing building services, maintenance, catering, cleaning, gardening etc, should be making contact with mining companies with regard to the services that they can provide.

6.5 Manufacturing Equipment manufacture can provide for good business opportunities but it is preferable that this is raised at the provincial or inter provincial level given the scale of operations required to be successful. Much of the equipment is presently being imported or produced locally by foreign companies. Consideration needs to be given to undertaking national support initiatives to promote local manufacture especially as SA can become a point of supply for mining, cutting, polishing and jewellery manufacturing equipment to the local as well as the growing African market**.** A significantly larger Southern African and African industry will support a large equipment sector and create conditions for manufacturing a range of equipment and tools which are currently uneconomic to produce given the size of the industry. The strategy could be to produce smaller equipment initially and grow local capacity or produce larger complex equipment is association with foreign players. The joint local and Africa wide demand may be the impetus necessary to launch local manufacture. International companies in any event supply most African countries via Johannesburg. Issues will undoubtedly be related to quality of product, servicing,

pricing etc. It therefore seems advantageous that local manufacture is encouraged in partnership with international companies. There may well be areas that allow for local manufacture that can service the mining as well as other industries. One example is the building of trailers or trailer bodies for trucks – this is further discussed under complementary industries below as trailer making will need to meet of more industries that mining alone to be viable.

Promoting the development and expansion of the business categories noted above provides the basis for the emergence of local clusters of business activities, which can spin-off into other areas and applications engendering much greater economic benefits for a region in terms of diversification and job creation.

Based on the above, the following concrete business opportunities could be looked at:

- **Consulting services provision in HR, marketing etc.**
- **Supply of office furniture and equipment as well as engineering inputs as described above.**
- **Agencies to facilitate the purchase of heavy machinery and equipment**
- **Construction companies** – here alternate building technologies could be examined as a way of contributing to reducing the costs of putting up accommodation, offices etc.
- **Drilling and rigging services**

The district should proactively support SMME/BEE groups to identify viable opportunities and develop and their capability to exploit such opportunities, and link the SMME/BEE groups with existing and potential future mining players to establish a goods or service provision role. In doing so the district could set for itself the target to implement a district wide programme to support SMME/BEE companies to develop their capability and negotiate business arrangements with mining operations. This will include supporting existing SMME/BEE companies and encouraging the growth of new BEE service providers, supporting mining companies to meet their procurement objectives and interfacing BEE groups with mining companies.

7. COMPLEMENTARY INDUSTRIES

Mining is a depletable resource. As such it is critical that the extraction and beneficiation of diamonds, Tiger's Eye and other minerals lead to the development of other economic sectors that will enhance general economic sustainability. Strategies to build complementary sectors during the period of mining have increased in importance.

The district should identify the primary economic sectors and the interlinks between these sectors and mining and beneficiation to create a solid economic base that can reduce dependence on mining and create viable economic clusters. The business activities here could include:

- **Agricultural development**
- **Tourism**

- **Trailer and tankers manufacturing business** – this can prove highly lucrative given the demands for transportation of heavy and bulky materials and the intent that De Aar will form a logistics and transport hub.
- **Telecommunications**
- **Property development and housing**

In addressing the issue of complementary industries, the district should:

- Identify the specific linkages within the district economy between viable existing or new industries that need to be developed and diamond mining, and
- Undertake pre-feasibility business planning together with financing institutions like the IDC of viable opportunities to present to interested investors and/or SMME/BEE groups.

8. CROSS-FUNCTIONAL COMPETENCIES

This section relates to cross functional competencies that feature across the value chain. The proposed interventions here are:

- The creation of a coordinating structure with the capability to manage and facilitate the implementation of the interventions noted herein and play the leading role in transforming the district's mining and minerals processing sector.
- The promotion of public private sector partnerships to enhance exploitation of the diamond resources and promote local empowerment.
- The facilitation of networking between local business and entrepreneurs with public and private sector financing institutions and external investors.
- The active promotion of the development and participation of women in the mining process especially at he level of beneficiation and secondary industries and development integration.
- The facilitation of co-operation amongst a range of government based organisations, SOEs, the private sector and NGOs to create an institutional base that supports the interventions across the value chain.

<u>The key actions can be summarised as:</u>

Scientifically define the reserves for and promote the efficient mining of diamonds, Tiger's Eye, uranium and salt.
Establish community support initiatives that enhance the empowerment of local people as part of the development of mines in the district
Focus on gender development as a priority outcome of the district's strategy
Support and develop local businesses, especially SMME and BEE organisations as a prerequisite of the mining and beneficiation of key minerals
Support the Kimberley Cutting and Polishing Hub by providing rough diamonds and training for locals to be able to support the Hub
Establish a Cutting and Polishing Centre for tiger's eye in Pixley Ka Seme to act as a hub for all activities surrounding tiger's eye beneficiation as well as a centre for training and development for tiger's eye related industries
Begin marketing the District - and province where appropriate - into brands recognised for quality products and services surrounding diamonds, tiger's eye, uranium and salt. This must specifically aim at attracting investment for mineral operations in Pixley Ka Seme.
Facilitate PPPs, institutional co-ordination and access to finance.

PIXLEY ka SEME

DISTRICT GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY

FOREWORD BY THE HONOURABLE EXECUTIVE MAYOR OF THE PIXLEY ka SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, Ms HAZEL JENKINS

As a rejoinder to the request of the President and in line with the planning trajectory that requires all three spheres of government to align and harmonise their planning and processes, I am pleased to introduce the Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy, 2006-2016. The Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy provides the guiding framework that will strengthen our joint efforts to eradicate the scourge that is poverty and to facilitate economic growth and social development.

The District, since the first democratic elections in 2001, has laid a firm foundation for growth and development. We are convinced that the development and adoption of the District Growth and Development Strategy will not only strengthen and build on this foundation but will continue to advance economic growth in a way that attracts inward investment, create sustainable job opportunities and, ultimately, improve the quality of life of all citizens of the District.

The core elements for the reviewed agenda for growth and development for the District are sustainability and integration. The District Growth and Development Strategy provides the strategic direction, based on key district priorities, that will contribute to the realisation of the economic growth potential of the district as well as address the social needs of the people. It further seeks to achieve a shared vision, amongst all sectors of our society, for the attainment of its goal of reducing poverty and improving the living conditions of all our people.

The Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy is the product of an extensive consultative process with all key stakeholders including all spheres of government, business, labour, civil society and Non-Governmental Organisations. Several mini-summits on sector specific strategies were held that culminated in a district growth and development summit. In this way stakeholders inputs were solicited and incorporated into the formulation of a comprehensive strategy for economic growth and social development of the District. This strategy therefore constitutes a consensus position on the growth and development trajectory for the next ten years.

The District Growth and Development Strategy is an all-inclusive strategy for the entire Pixley ka Seme District that addresses the goals, objectives, aspirations and needs of all key stakeholders in the District. As a dynamic and 'living' strategy, the DGDS will be continually reviewed, updated and adapted to take into account the changing needs and priorities.

Finally, I make an earnest appeal to all our social partners to continue with us on the growth and development journey we have embarked upon. Together we will succeed in creating a better District for all.

ACRONYMS

ABET	Adult basic education and training
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
AMTS	Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy
ARC	Agricultural Research Council
ASGI-SA	Accelerated Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa
BBBEE	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
BMR	Bureau of Market Research
CASP	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
CBO	Community Based Organisation
CBD	Central Business District
CCAW	Coordination Committee for Agricultural Water
DALR	Department of Agriculture and Land Reform
DFI	Development Finance Institutions
DGDS	District Growth and Development Strategy
DGDAC	District Growth and Development Advisory Committee
DMA	District Management Area
DME	Department of Minerals and Energy
DMMS	District Mining and Mineral Processing Strategy
DPA	Diamond Producers of Africa
DSDF	Pixley ka Seme District Spatial Development Framework
DTI	Department of Trade and Industry
DWAF	Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
ECD	Early Childhood Development

EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
EXCO	Executive Council
FAS	Foetal Alcohol Syndrome
FBE	Free Basic Electricity
FBW	Free Basic Water
FET	Further Education and Training
FSNP	Food Security and Nutrition Programme
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GDPR	Gross Domestic Product of the Region
GEAR	Growth, Employment and Redistribution
GGP	Gross Geographic Product
GVA	Gross Value Added
HDI	Human Development Index
HET	Higher Education and Training
HIV	Human Immuno Virus
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IMS	Integrated Manufacturing Strategy
ISAD	Information Society and Development
IT	Information Technology
KAT	Karoo Array Telescope
LED	Local Economic Development
LQ	Location Quotient
MERS	Micro Economic Reform Strategy
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MLL	Minimum Living Level
MTI	Municipal Training Institute
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
NCPGDS	Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
NAFU	National African Farmers Union
NCISS	Northern Cape Information Society Strategy
NEPAD	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NGO	Non-governmental Organisation
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
OREFSP	Orange River Emerging Farmers Settlement Progamme
PCAS	Policy Coordination and Advisory Services (the Presidency)
PDI	Previously Disadvantaged Individual

PGDS Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PHC Primary Health Care
PIG Provincial Infrastructure Grant
PIMSS Planning Implementation Management Support System
PkS Pixley ka Seme
PkSDGDS Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy
PkSISS Pixley ka Seme Information Society Strategy
PNC Presidential National Commission
POA Programme of Action
PPP Public Private Partnership

RDP Reconstruction and Development Programme
RIFSA Roads Infrastructure Framework for South Africa

SALGA South African Local Government Association
SALT South African Large Telescope
SDF Spatial Development Framework
SEDA Small Enterprise Development Agency
SMME Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises
SOE State Owned Enterprise
SUAR Sustainable Utilisation of Agricultural Resources

TB Tuberculosis
TISA Trade and Investment South Africa

URD Urban and Rural Development

WSSD World Summit on Sustainable Development

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Introduction
1.1 Background
1.2 Rationale for the DGDS

2. Legislative, Policy and Planning Framework
2.1 NSDP
2.2 MTSF
2.3 PGDS
2.4 IDP's

3. Principles underpinning the DGDS

4. Profile of the Pixley ka Seme District
4.1 Introduction
4.2 Human and Social Indicators
4.3 Unemployment and Labour
4.4 Minimum Living Level
4.5 Economic Characteristics of the District
4.6 Main Economic Sectors

4.7 Challenges for Growth and Development
4.8 Opportunities for Growth and Development

5. Vision, Mission and Developmental Objectives

6. Developmental Targets

7. The Pixley ka Seme District Spatial Development Framework
7.1 Introduction
7.2 Principles of the DSDF
7.3 Settlement Structures

8. Strategic Framework for Economic Growth and Development
8.1 Introduction
8.2 Mining and Mineral Processing
8.3 Agriculture and Agro-processing
8.4 Manufacturing
8.5 Tourism
8.6 Wholesale and Retail
8.7 Local Economic Development

9. Poverty Alleviation
9.1 Introduction
9.2 Access to Municipal Services
9.3 Human and Social Development
9.4 Infrastructure Development
9.5 Income Generation and Employment

10. Information Society Strategy
10.1 Introduction
10.2 The National Information Society and Development Framework
10.3 The Pillars of the ISAD Framework
10.4 Information Society Strategy Development
10.5 Strategic Interventions

11. Institutional Arrangements
11.1 Introduction
11.2 Objectives
11.3 Existing Institutional Arrangements
11.4 Establishment of Additional Structures

12. Monitoring and Evaluation
12.1 Introduction
12.2 Nature of Performance Indicators
12.3 Development of Performance Indicators
12.4 Qualitative and Quantitative Indicators

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 BACKGROUND

The demarcation of municipalities was completed in 2000 which resulted in a rationalisation in the number of municipalities throughout the country. The number of municipalities nationally was reduced from 838 to 284. Prior to 2000 the Pixley ka Seme District, formerly the Karoo District, had municipalities which were reduced to 9 municipalities and one District Management Area after the demarcation process. For the first time in the history of the country there were wall to wall municipalities which meant that all areas in the country fell within the jurisdiction of one or other municipality.

The local government elections of 2001 saw the graduation of the transitional local government system into a formal fully-fledged system of developmental local government at district and municipal level. The foundation of these achievements has been the significant number of legislation and policies that have been developed and adopted since 1994, all of which have been aimed at deepening democracy and ensuring socio-economic transformation.

The first decade of democracy has brought with it significant achievements regarding socio-economic transformation, political stability, a functioning state infrastructure and a growing economy. But at the same time the country, and the Pixley ka Seme district in particular continue to experience high levels of poverty and unemployment.

Although the quality of planning interventions have improved considerably in recent years in several areas of government of delivery, intergovernmental relations in implementing development programs remain a challenge. Even though the need towards integration at policy level and across all spheres of government has been emphasised, this has not yet manifested itself in consolidated interventions through programme implementation. The ability of the different spheres of government to coordinate development programs remains a constraint to sustainable development. The improvement of the efficiency of government has emerged as a key development objective.

The Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy (PkSDGDS) aims to address, not only the abovementioned challenges, but a host of related issues. It recognises the leadership role that government plays in driving integrated, holistic, sustainable and participatory growth and development. At the same time it acknowledges and identifies the role of all sectors of society in ensuring socio-economic transformation and also seeks to achieve a shared vision amongst all sectors of society towards the achievement of our goal of improving the quality of life for all our citizens. It is further intended to build a sense of unity and responsibility amongst all sectors of society towards reducing poverty and unemployment. The challenges of unlocking our full socio-economic potential are enormous and require us to marshal the full capabilities of all sectors of society to steer the required growth and development of the district in the years to come.

To this end various sector summits were held which culminated into a District Growth and Development Summit held on the 23 and 24 November 2006. At the

summit broad consensus was achieved with regard to the DGDS which was then adopted by the Pixley ka Seme District Council on 15 December 2006.

1.2 RATIONALE FOR THE DGDS

The Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy seeks to achieve a shared vision, amongst all sectors of its society, for the achievement of its goal of reducing poverty and improving the quality of life of all its citizens. In striving towards achieving this goal the DGDS reinforces the following principles:

- Integrated, sustainable, holistic and participatory growth and development.
- Providing for the needs of all the people.
- Ensuring community and/or beneficiary involvement and ownership.
- Long term sustainability on all levels.
- Equitable socio-economic development with equitable benefits for all.

The DGDS also provides a practical framework for:

- The integration of government's policies and objectives in the various areas of operation.
- Building on cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations towards ensuring integrated service delivery and the optimal utilisation of all resources in support of growth and development.
- Aligning and establishing links between the planning and budgeting efforts of all three spheres of government.
- Establishing a single planning instrument that articulates the development agenda and provides strategic direction for the district as a whole.
- Municipalities to develop their integrated development plans and local economic development strategies.
- Identifying opportunities for investment and creating an environment of certainty and predictability that encourages private sector investment.
- Consolidate and improve relationships and partnerships with other sectors of society.

2 LEGISLATIVE, POLICY AND PLANNING FRAMEWORK

2.1 NATIONAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT PERSPECTIVE (NSDP)

Government's key priority in the second decade of freedom is to increase economic growth and social inclusion. One of the mechanisms through which government provides a strategic basis for focusing its action, weighing up trade-offs and linking the strategies to plans of the three spheres of government is to develop a clear set of spatial priorities and criteria. In this regard the NSDP is a crucial instrument for policy coordination for the spatial implications of infrastructure programmes.

The NSDP was originally adopted by the National Cabinet in March 2003 and has since been reviewed. It was developed in response to concerns raised about

the spatial consequences of national investment and development programmes and the fact that these programmes were not fully addressing the distortions of the past apartheid space economy. On analysis of the spatial impact of infrastructure and development programmes a mechanism was included in the NSDP that aimed at aligning spatial choices around government investment and development spending across all three spheres of government.

The NSDP is an indicative tool for development planning and provides:

- A set of principles and mechanisms for guiding infrastructure investment and development decisions
- Describes the spatial manifestations of the main social, economic and environmental trends which should form the basis for a shared understanding of the national space economy; and
- An interpretation of the spatial realities and implications for state intervention.

NSDP Principles

- Rapid economic growth that is sustained and inclusive is a prerequisite for the achievement of other policy objectives, amongst which poverty alleviation is key
- The Constitutional obligation to provide basic services to all citizens wherever they reside
- Government spending on fixed investment should be focused on localities of economic growth and/or economic potential in order to gear up private sector investment, stimulate sustainable economic activities and create long term employment opportunities
- Efforts to address social inequalities should focus on people not places; and
- In order to overcome the spatial distortions of apartheid future settlement and economic development opportunities should be channelled to activity corridors and nodes that are adjacent to or link the main growth centres. Infrastructure investment should primarily support localities that will become major growth nodes.

The spatial configuration of South Africa is not only a product of growth but also apartheid spatial planning, particularly in respect of human settlement. Apartheid spatial planning ensured that people were located far from social and economic opportunities, denying many people access to opportunities for employment, wealth creation and social progress. Spatial marginalisation from economic opportunities and social amenities continues to be a significant feature of the space economy and has to be addressed to reduce poverty and ensure shared growth.

The NSDP is underpinned by the following assumptions:

- Location is critical for the poor to exploit growth opportunities

- The poor, concentrated around economic centres, have greater opportunity from gaining from economic growth
- Areas with economic potential provide greater livelihood and income protection because of a greater diversity of income sources
- Areas with economic potential are most favourable for overcoming poverty
- The poor make rational choices about relocating to areas with greater economic opportunities
- Government has to ensure that policies and programmes are in place to ensure the poor are able to benefit fully from growth and development opportunities in such areas

NSDP approach implies:

- A rigorous analysis of the space economy to identify areas of economic significance
- Capitalising on complementarities
- Establishing mechanisms for strategic coordination, interaction and alignment within
  government.

Interpreting the space economy
Two sets of categories are used to interpret the national space economy. These are:

- Categories of economic potential; and
- Categories of need

The following findings are significant for the Northern Cape and Pixley ka Seme in particular:

- The N Cape does not feature amongst the areas with low economic potential and high densities of poor
- Of the 26 locations that represent the engine of the South African economy only Kimberley and Upington feature.

The NSDP has been designed to act as an indicative planning tool for all spheres of government. It should be used as an instrument for policy coordination – especially the spatial implications of infrastructure development and government programmes. The implementation of the strategies of government will be monitored in accordance with the principles of the NSDP. In this sense it will be seen to be contributing to the principle of cooperative governance.

2.2 MEDIUM TERM STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK (MTSF)

The Medium Term Strategic Framework is a reflection of government's assessment of, and perspective on, key developmental challenges at a particular point in time, as well as a statement of intent - with strategic objectives and targets - as to the way it envisages addressing the challenges over the medium

term, that is, five years. It serves as a backdrop to guide planning and budgeting across the three spheres of government.

Government is currently implementing the electoral mandate based on the core objectives of increasing employment and reducing poverty. This mandate is premised on a people's contract that defines the strategic objectives and targets for a five year period.

The MTSF also takes into account the fact that global and domestic conditions may change over time. Although it is recognised that there are many things government does and should continue to do, it should also define a new trajectory of growth and development, identify the key things to attain it and make strategic choices in expending effort and allocating resources. Arising out of this, the logical path of development can be summarised as follows:

- The central intervention that is required is to grow the economy
- State intervention in promoting the involvement of the marginalized in economic activity, including sustainable livelihoods
- Welfare grants should be seen as a temporary intervention which should diminish at the same rate that economic interventions succeed
- The performance of the state, the campaign against crime and international relations should improve mainly to promote economic growth and social inclusion.

The strategic priorities that have been identified include economic and fiscal policy trade-offs, increasing the rate of investment, both private sector and public sector investment, facilitating economic activity within the second economy (the Expanded Public Works programme, development of small and micro-enterprises, direct facilitation of job creation, skills development and work experience and land reform and agricultural support programmes), preserving and developing human resources for and through economic growth.

The central tenet of the MTSF recognises that government has to pursue higher economic growth through all its programmes, while using the space that higher growth affords to put the country on a higher development trajectory which ensures all-round improvement in the quality of peoples lives.

2.3 PROVINCIAL GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY (PGDS)

The PGDS is a strategic and integrated provincial development plan providing direction and scope for province-wide development programmes and projects within the context of a long term perspective and taking into consideration the resources and constraints. The PGDS provides a spatially referenced framework for both public and private sector investment, indicating areas of opportunities and developmental priorities and enabling intergovernmental alignment. It guides the activities of all agencies and role-players by linking and deepening the application of the NSDP and of the MTSF in areas of shared impact.

The Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (NCPGDS) evolved after an extensive consultative process with all spheres of government, organised labour, all formations of organised business and civil society. This process culminated in a stakeholder summit that was held on the 27 and 28 October 2004. This was, thereafter, followed with the adoption of the strategy in mid-January 2005 by the Executive Council. The PGDS was publicly launched at the end of January 2005.

The strategy realises the hope of sustainable and integrated development that seeks to promote economic growth and social development, improve the quality of life of all its citizens, improve the institutional efficiency of government, attain regional integration and enhance innovation. The PGDS is a further elaboration of an adopted policy framework that attempts to provide a clear vision for growth and development. The strategy identifies both opportunities and challenges and provides for strategic interventions in dealing with them.

The PGDS identifies the comparative advantages and opportunities that emanate from an analysis of the mining, agriculture, manufacturing, fishing and mariculture, and tourism sectors that can turn the economy of the province around. The industrial value chain becomes the catalyst towards building local economies in these competitive sectors. This approach forms the basis of ensuring that the resources of the province are geared towards having the greatest impact for meaningful local economic growth and development – bridging the divide between the first and second economies.

The PGDS also focuses on issues around social development and has developed targets and strategies that that address the challenges that are faced in health, education, housing, water, sanitation, electricity, crime reduction and social services to name but a few. It further provides for interventions that promote human and capital development.

The PGDS asserts that it is only through the proper institutional arrangements, and, in particular, strong partnerships among all stakeholders in development that the province can realise its vision of effectively reducing poverty. The development targets as espoused in the PGDS and the realisation of the potential of the province will be achieved through the collaboration of all stakeholders.

And finally, the PGDS makes adequate provisions for the incorporation of all the national planning instruments, including the National Spatial Development Perspective and the Medium Term Strategic Framework, inter alia, as well as the District and Local Municipal IDP's with the provincial development imperatives.

2.4 INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLANS (IDP's)

With the advent of the new system of local government in 2000 grounded within a legislative framework, integrated development planning was the instrument designed to guide planning at a local government level. Developmental local

government was enshrined in legislation and all municipalities were responsible for formulating and implementing Integrated Development Plans.

The IDP is a holistic development plan that, in terms of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000, has to be prepared by every municipality in the country on a five year basis and has to be reviewed annually. Spanning and integrating all sectors through a focus on cross-cutting issues, IDP's are meant to ensure the sustainable development of the municipality, the targeted development of especially deprived communities and the reintegration of the fragmented settlements created by apartheid. As one of government's primary development planning tools, the IDP strategies, programmes and projects have to become the reflection of the development objectives of government as a whole. This will contribute towards coordinated prioritisation, resource allocation and implementation.

3. PRINCIPLES UNDERLYING THE DGDS

The following basic guiding principles, taken together as a whole, form the basis of the philosophy that underpins the District Growth and Development Strategy:

- An integrated developmental approach that brings together the strategies and programmes of the three spheres government for sustainable growth and development.

- The utilisation of resources - human, financial and natural – that ensures that the capacity and efficiency are enhanced in order to meet the challenges of growth and development.

- Facilitating growth and development through effective partnerships between the state, private sector, organised labour and civil society and to meet the socio-economic challenges confronting the District.

- Ensuring transparency and accountability in shaping the future of the Pixley ka Seme District through participatory democracy and good governance.

- Contributing to national and international commitments such as the WSSD, the Millennium Development Goals and the objectives of the RDP.

- The specific and complementary role that each sphere of government and each sector of society has to play in ensuring socio-economic development and transformation.

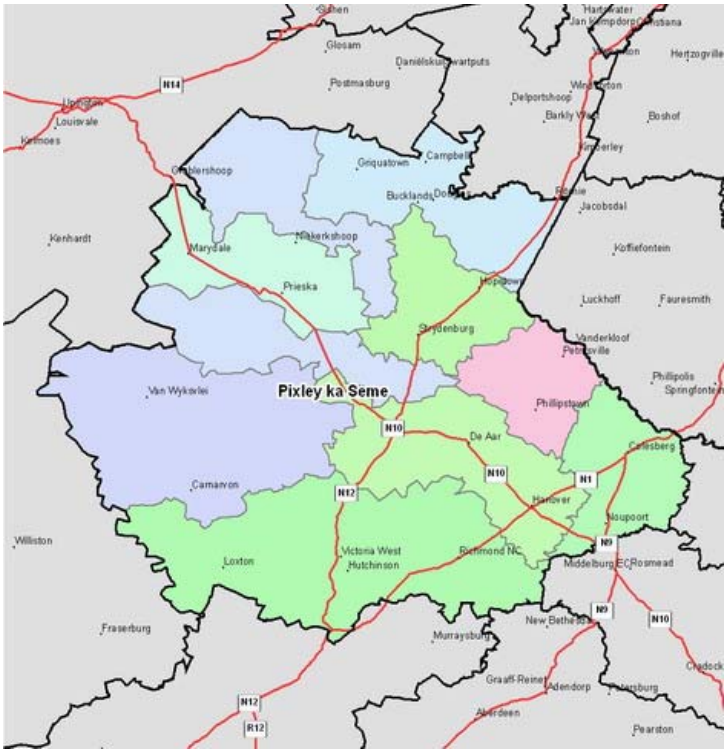
- The Constitutional obligation to provide for the rights and needs of all citizens of the district.

- ❖ Striving at all times to advance the needs of the historically disadvantaged, including all vulnerable groups, whilst ensuring at the same time that all persons are treated equitably.

- ❖ The promotion of spatially coherent district and local economic development and improved service delivery systems.

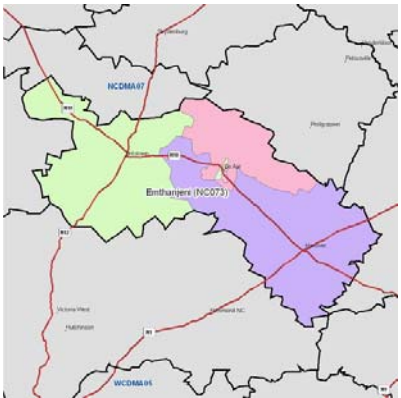
4. PROFILE OF THE PIXLEY ka SEME DISTRICT

4.1 INTRODUCTION



The Pixley ka Seme district lies in the south-east of the Northern Cape province and shares its borders with three other provinces, namely, the Free State province to the east, the Eastern Cape to the south-east and the Western Cape to the south-west. It is one of five district municipalities in the province and is the second largest covering a total surface area of 102 727 km^2. It consists of 8 category "B" municipalities, namely, Ubuntu, Emthanjeni, Siyancuma, Siyathemba, Kareeberg, Renosterberg, Thembelihle and Umsobomvu, and one District Management Area. Ubuntu is the largest and Renosterberg the smallest of these municipalities.

Emthanjeni Municipality



De Aar

De Aar is the second most important railway junction in South Africa. When the railway line was built from Cape Town to Kimberley, the administration bought a large portion of the farm, De Aar, meaning, coincidentally, 'artery', after the underground water

supply, envisaged as large, life-giving veins of water.

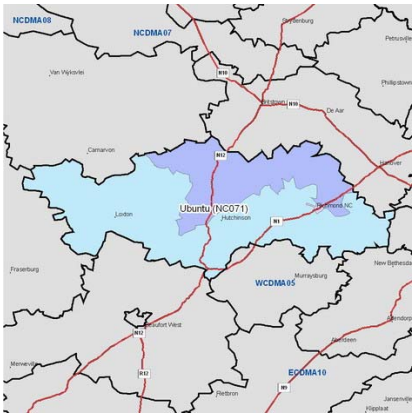
Britstown

Named after Hans Brits, who accompanied DavidLivingstone into the interior and settled on the farm, Gemsbokfontein. In 1877, local men bought a section of the farm and a private irrigation scheme was started by the Smartt Syndicate in 1885 that built two dams, planted Lucerne and wheat and grazed karakul sheep and Clydesdale horses. The 1961 floods destroyed the Smartt Irrigation Board Dam, rebuilt by the government in 1964.

Hanover

Once part of the Graaff-Reinet district and known as Bo-Zeekoeirivier. As the farming community grew, in 1854 the farm Petrusvallei, was bought. The town was called Hanover after the German city. Walk through town and discover old furrows and historic buildings.

Ubuntu Municipality



Victoria West

Established in 1843 and named after Queen Victoria. Victoria West marks the beginning of the Diamond Way, lying on the main route from Cape Town to Kimberley. South of the town lies three flat-topped hillocks called Three Sisters.

Richmond

Established in 1843 on a portion of the farm Driefontein and the first erven were sold on 19 April 1845. The town was named after the Duke of Richmond from Kent.

Loxton

Originally the farm Phizantefontein, Loxton was bought from AE Loxton iin 1899 and built to serve the sheep-farming community. It became a municipality in 1905. In March 1961, three-quarters of the town was destroyed by a flash-flood causing the dam to burst but has long recovered.

Hutchinson

When the discovery of diamonds blazed a trail to the interior, the railway followed it. It bypassed Victoria West by 12km, necessitating a railhead. This developed into a village and was named after Cape Governor, Sir Walter Hely Hutchinson. A branch line was built in 1904.

Siyancuma Municipality

Griquatown

In 1803, the London Missionary Society extended its mission among a Chaguriqua tribe, ‘bastaards’ from Piketberg, and local Koranna and Tswana. Their leaders were Adam Kok II and Andries Waterboer. In 1813, the ‘bastaards renamed themselves Griqua, and the place called Klaarwater became Griquatown. When diamonds were discovered the Griqua were

the first to lay claim. The Keate arbitration awarded the area to Waterboer. This led to the colony of Griqualand West, later annexed to the Cape Colony. Griquatown is known for its semiprecious stones, tiger's eye and jasper is a centre for stock breeding.

Campbell

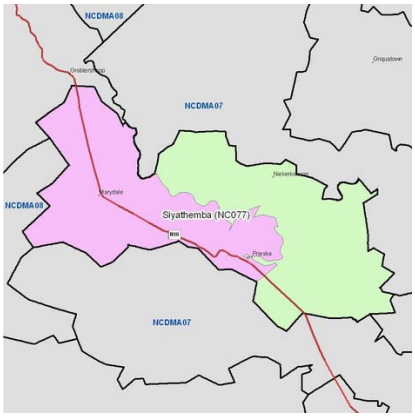
This village, on the edge of the Ghaap Plateau, was one of the earliest centres of Christianity.

Originally Grootfontein or Knoffelvallei, the town was renamed after Reverend John Campbell, a traveller and missionary. Renowned for its spectacular dolomite rock formations, many springs, Karee and Wild Olive trees, Campbell has a multifaceted history and has been home to San, Koranna and, later, Griqua settlers drawn by the springs.

Douglas

The town was founded in 1848 as a mission station on the farm Backhouse. In 1867, Europeans from Griquatown established a town named after General Sir Percy Douglas, Lieutenant Governor of the Cape Colony. Near the confluence of the Orange River and its main tributary, the Vaal River, Douglas is a thriving, fast-growing town surrounded by a wealth of agricultural and stock farming ventures fed by two of South Africa's greatest rivers.

Siyathemba Municipality



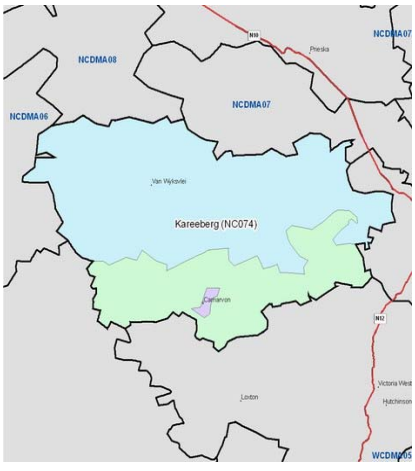
Marydale

Established in 1903 by the Dutch Reformed Church, Marydale was named after the wife of Mr GP Snyman, owner of the farm on which the town was laid out.

Prieska

On the south bank of the Orange River at the foot of the Doringberg, it was originally named Prieschap, a Khoisan word meaning 'place of the lost she-goat'. The site of the town, founded in 1882 and renowned for its semiprecious stones, was a fording place used by early travellers.

Kareeberg Municipality



Van Wyksvlei

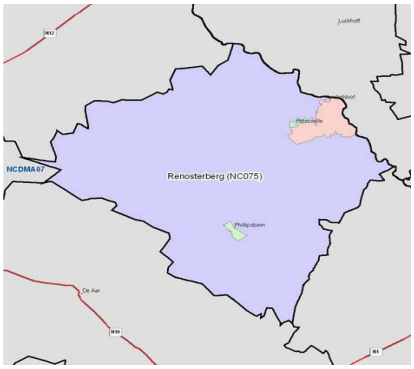
Established in 1880 and named after a local farmer, Van Wyksvlei lies close to the first, state-funded dam, built in 1882 and still in use.

Carnarvon

Communities of Xhosa moved up to the Orange River as early as 1795. One group subsequently settled at Schietfontein and a village named Harmsfontein was established in 1860. In 1874, it changed its name to honour the Colonial Secretary,

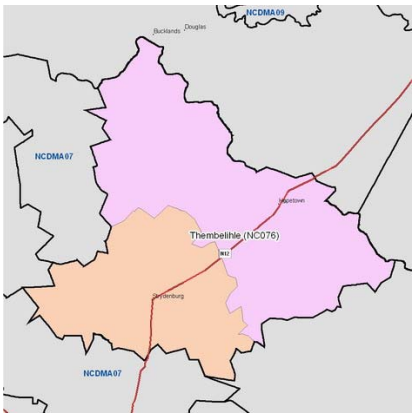
Lord Carnarvon. The district is known for its corbelled houses, built between 1811 and 1815. Carnarvon is set among flat-topped hills and is one of the region's busiest farming centres.

Renosterberg Municipality



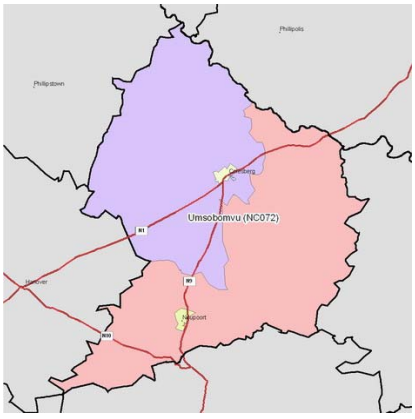
Phillipstown
Founded in 1863 as a church centre, the town was named after Sir Philip Wodehouse, Governor of the Cape.
Petrusville Named after Petrus van der Walt, owner of the farm, Rhenosterberg, the town lies in a fertile valley surrounded by a cluster of high hills.
Van Der Kloof
Named after the farm on which the Vanderkloof Dam is situated, the town was built for people building the dam. Today it is a flourishing holiday resort. It boasts the highest dam wall in the country (108m). It links the N. Cape to the Free State.

Thembelihle Municipality



Hopetown
The origin of the name Hopetown is odd. It is said the widow of the first owner of the farm, De Kalk, wore a small anchor and a servant was told it represented hope. In 1866 a diamond, 'Eureka', was found and, in 1868, on the farm Zandfonteinnand the 83,5 carat 'Star of South Africa'. Today, Hopetown is a farming town.
Strydenburg
On the verge of a large pan filled with salty water, Strydenburg (the town of strife) received its doleful name after incessant squabbling over - of all things - the town's name! Strydenburg was laid out on the farm Roodepan in 1892.

Umsobomvu Municipality



Colesberg
Surrounded by koppies and flanked by the towering Coleskop, when the sun slips to the horizon, brushing the skies with brilliant hues, Coleskop's former name, Toverberg (Magic Mountain), seems more appropriate. So named because it is visible from 40km but appears to get no closer. In 1829 the farmers established a town named after Sir Lowry Cole, then Cape Governor. Today, Colesberg is a traveller's oasis on the main Cape Town-Johannesburg route, the N1, offering attractive accommodation. In a sheep-farming area spread

over half-a-million hectares, greater Colesberg breeds many of the country's top Merinos. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

Noupoort

In 1881 the railway line from Port Elizabeth ended on the farm Carlton. With the diversion of the railway line to Colesberg in 1883/4 a station was built on part of the farm Hartebeeshoek of Mr Barend Kruger. The station was named Naauwpoort after the adjacent farm. In 1963 the name was changed to Noupoort.

4.2 SOCIAL AND HUMAN INDICATORS

4.2.1 DEMOGRAPHICS

The Pixley ka Seme district has a total population of 164 412 which represents 16,49% of the population of the Northern Cape. The population density of the district is 1,6 persons per km^2 which is less than the provincial population density of 2,27 persons per km^2. The accompanying table indicates the composition of the population by race and gender with women making up 53% of the district population.

Table 99: Pks District Population by race and gender

	Male	**Female**	**Total**
Black African	21 535	22 798	44 333
Coloured	49 682	52 845	102 526
Indian or Asian	79	69	148
White	8 439	8 966	17 405
Total	**79 734**	**84 678**	**164 412**

The graph below gives an indication of the population per age group in the Pixley ka Seme district.

The population is as follows:

- The population can be classified as young with approximately 58.3% of the population below the age of 30.
- 65,61% of the population are youth
- The youth make up approximately 94% of the economically active population
- The population of the district is decreasing with census data indicating a decline in the district by approximately 9 100 people between 1996 and 2001. The major reason for the decrease is the fact that people are migrating in search of work opportunities.

4.2.2 WATER

Table 2 below gives a comparative indication of the status of water provisioning in the district as captured during the 2001 census.

Table 100: Access to water by households

Municipality	Piped water inside dwelling	Piped water inside yard	Piped water on community stand: distance less than 200m. from dwelling	Piped water on community stand: distance greater than 200m. from dwelling	Bore-hole	Spring	Rain-water tank	Dam/pool/stag-nant water	River/ stream	Water vendor	Other
Ubuntu	1,501	1,885	355	326	9	-	3	-	-	6	157
Umsombomvu	1,211	3,602	409	564	27	-	3	12	3	3	48
Emthanjeni	3,794	3,678	787	474	12	3	-	6	3	6	42
Kareeberg	1,020	1,142	136	82	6	-	-	15	-	-	26
Renosterberg	1,109	971	182	193	3	-	-	3	-	-	9
Thembelihle	895	1,678	397	460	21	-	-	3	12	-	6
Siyathemba	933	2,850	215	100	9	-	-	15	27	3	12
Siyancuma	3,015	3,843	1,070	769	67	9	-	83	160	3	191
Karoo DM	223	533	112	105	83	-	3	3	20	9	9

Significant progress has been made regarding the provision of water but backlogs still exist.

Research conducted by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry in 2005, in the Pixley Ka Seme district indicates water backlogs of about 3 587 households with Thembelihle and Siyancuma having the most backlogs. Umsombomvu and Kareeberg local municipalities do not have backlogs.

90% of the indigent households in the district are provided with free basic water (FBW) which is above the provincial average of 80,7%. In four municipalities, namely, Ubuntu, Umsobomvu, Emthanjeni and Thembalihle all indigent households receive FBW with Siyathemba the worst of at 45%.

The table below indicates the provisioning of FBW for all municipalities in the district:

Table 101: Provision of Free Basic Water (FBW)

Municipal Name	HOUSEHOLDS[2] (HH)		TOTAL SERVED				NO INFRASTRUCTURE[3]		BELOW RDP[4]	
	Total HH[5]	Total Indigent HH[6]	Total HH	%	Total Indigent HH	%	Total HH	Total Indigent HH	Total HH	Total Indigent HH
Bo Karoo (NCDMA07)	2 973	1 261	2 563	**86**	1 245	**99**	36	16	106	46
Ubuntu (NC071)	4 162	1 873	4 162	**100**	1 350	**100**	0	0	0	0
Umsobomvu (NC072)	5 988	3 963	5 598	**93**	3 963	**100**	-	-	-	-
Emthanjeni (NC073)	8 793	4 570	8 755	**100**	4 549	**100**	38	21	-	223
Kareeberg (NC074)	2 389	1 110	1 680	**70**	1 100	**99**	-	-	407	-
Renosterberg (NC075)	2 523	1 584	2 328	**92**	1 520	**96**	102	64	-	-
Thembelihle (NC076)	3 591	1 585	3 591	**100**	1 585	**100**	519	229	-	-

2

(b)
3

(c)
4

(d)
5

(e)
(f) 6
(g)

Siyathemba (NC077)	4 190	2 017	4 190	**24**	2 017	**45**	35	18	121	61
Siyancuma (NC078)	9 504	4 740	6 357	**67**	4 602	**97**	265	138	594	308
Pixley Ka Seme Av.	**44 096**	**22 801**	**31 230**	**71**	**20 580**	**90**	**1 116**	**540**	**1 537**	**778**
Provincial average	**235 837**	**76 017**	**170106**	**72.13**	**61 392**	**80,76**	**7 127**	**2 228**	**14 285**	**7 098**

Source: DWAF Regional FBW Report, http://www.dwaf.gov.za/FreeBasicWater, September 2005)

(a)

(b)

(c) **Households***: This DWAF definition entails households on a municipal level*

(d) **No Infrastructure**: Household have no access to any infrastructure i.e. those people that still

(e) drink unsafe water from a dam, spring, river or stream

(f) **Below RDP:** Household have access to infrastructure but at a BELOW RDP standard e.g.

(g) Standpipe > 200m

(h) **Total households***: This DWAF definition entails the total households on a municipal level*

(i) **Indigent households***: This DWAF definition entails households that have a total income of less than R800 p/m.*

4.2.3 SANITATION

Table 102 below provides an indication of the types as well as those without sanitation in the district:

	Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	Flush toilet (with septic tank)	Chemical toilet	Pit latrine with ventilation (VIP)	Pit latrine without ventilation	Bucket latrine	None
Ubuntu	1 665	381	45	95	90	1,151	815
Umsombomvu	2 837	265	3	70	43	1,699	965
Emthanjeni	5 342	386	54	170	159	2,155	538
Kareeberg	165	751	6	161	273	801	270
Renosterberg	942	286	60	12	50	740	380
Thembelihle	1 673	228	6	183	111	310	962
Siyathemba	2 903	107	9	25	62	776	284
Siyancuma	3 495	523	67	742	1,213	1,764	1,407
Bo Karoo	220	134	3	100	78	15	550
Total	**19 242**	**3 061**	**253**	**1 558**	**2 079**	**9 411**	**6 171**

The backlogs in sanitation according to RDP standards in each municipality in the district is provided in the table below

Table 103: Sanitation Backlogs for April 2005

The table above shows that, Pixley Ka Seme has sanitation backlogs of about 12 702 households. The local municipalities with the most backlogs are, Ubuntu, Thembelihle and Siyancuma with Ubuntu at 1 836, Thembelihle 3 592 and Siyancuma, 3 040.

Municipal Name	Total Households	Total Households Below RDP
Ubuntu (NC071)	4 161	1 175
Umsombomvu (NC072)	5 988	1 065
Emthanjeni (NC073)	8 793	2 684
Kareeberg (NC074)	2 390	901
Renosterberg (NC075)	2 523	771
Thembelihle (NC076)	3 592	1 298
Siyathemba (NC077)	4 190	12
Siyancuma (NC078)	9 506	3 040
Bo Karoo (NCDMA07)	1 040	0
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality (DC7)	**42 167**	**12 702**

Source: DWAF - April 2005

4.2.4 REFUSE REMOVAL

The number of households that are not provided with a refuse removal service in each municipality
is indicated in the table below

Table 104: Refuse removal backlogs according to Census 2001

Municipality	Refuse Backlogs
Ubuntu (NC071)	0
Umsombomvu (NC072)	75
Emthanjeni (NC073)	1 112
Kareeberg (NC074)	581
Renosterberg (NC075)	504
Thembelihle (NC076)	1 216
Siyathemba (NC077)	156
Siyancuma (NC078)	3 299
Bo Karoo (NCDMA07)	1 083
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality (DC7)	**11 279**

Source: Statistics South Africa 2001

On refuse removal, the District has a backlog of 11 279 households. The local municipalities with the most backlogs (households that rely on their own refuse dumps or do no rubbish disposals at all) are Ubuntu, Thembelihle and Siyancuma. In Siyancuma, 3 299 out of 9 506 have refuse removal backlogs (the

highest backlogs in all the local municipalities). In Ubuntu, 1 416 out of 4 161 have backlogs and in Thembelihle 1 216 out of 3 592 households have refuse removal backlogs.

4.2.5 ELECTICITY

The table below gives a comparative indication of the access to the source of energy in the district as captured during the 2001 and 1996 censuses.

Table 105: Energy source for households

Source of Energy for lighting		
	2001	**1996**
Electricity	30 509	25 510
Gas	5 853	5 932
Paraffin	7 295	9 058
Candles	11 532	12 914
Solar	6 264	0
Other	5 967	5 822

There has been an increase in the use of electricity as an energy source and a decrease in the use of paraffin, gas and candles as a source of energy/lighting. The table below indicates the backlogs in access to electricity as researched by the Department of Minerals and Energy in 2005. Siyancuma, Emthanjeni and Ubuntu have the highest number of backlogs, representing approximately 59,5% of the backlogs in the district.

Table 106: Electricity backlogs per municipality (DME 2005)

Municipality	**Backlog as at March 2005 with growth of 2% per year**
Ubuntu (NC071)	1 175
Umsombomvu (NC072)	205
Emthanjeni (NC073)	1 812
Kareeberg (NC074)	614
Renosterberg (NC075)	609
Thembelihle (NC076)	365
Siyathemba (NC077)	298
Siyancuma (NC078)	3 377
Bo Karoo (NCDMA07)	544
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality	**10 692**

Source: DME: March 2005

Electricity backlogs in Pixley Ka Seme stands at 10 692 households. Most of these backlogs are located in Siyancuma local municipality where 3 377 households out of 9 506 have backlogs.

All the local municipalities within the District have adopted indigent policies and are providing free basic electricity (FBE). Within the District, 7 907 (18%)

households out of 44 096 households (based on the total number of households by DWAF) are provided with FBE.

Table 107: Number of households provided with FBE

Municipality	Indigent policy	Indigent registry	Provision of FBE	Distributor Eskom/Municipality/ Both	Number of households provided with FBE
					Eskom **Municipality**
Emthanjeni	Yes	Yes	Yes	Both	401 2 750
Kareeberg	Yes	Yes	Yes	Both	900 270
Renosterberg	Yes	No	Yes	Both	626 51
Siyancuma	Yes	No	Yes	Eskom	640 -
Siyathemba	Yes	Yes	Yes	Both	1 646 73
Thembelihle	Yes	Yes	Yes	Both	122
Ubuntu	Yes	Yes	Yes	Both	800 1 350
Umsobomvu	Yes	Yes	Yes	Both	756 264
Total in Pixley Ka Seme District					**7 907**

(Source: Eskom and Municipal monthly reports, 2005)

4.2.6 HOUSING

All local municipalities are composed of various residential components varying from formal housing units to informal dwelling units as indicated in the table above. Within the District, 82,8% of households live in formal housing, 10,8% in informal housing and only 2% in traditional houses (Pixley ka Seme Reviewed IDP 2005).

Table 108: Housing Type by Local Municipality

MUNICIPALITY	FORMAL	INFORMAL	TRADITIONAL	NONE / HOMELESS	OTHER	TOTAL

	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	7 542	88,8	806	9,4	68	0,8			78	1	8 497
Kareeberg	2 523	9,2	145	5,2	54	2	0	0	43	1,5	2 765
Thembelihle	2 409	85	379	13,4	24	0,8	1	0,03	22	0,8	2 835
Siyathemba	3 801	83,7	571	12,6	99	2,2	0	0	71	1,6	4 542
Renosterberg	1 978	83,2	105	4,4	122	5,1	0	0	170	7,2	2 375
Ubuntu	3 716	87,8	417	10	48	1,1	1	0,02	50	2	4 232
Siyancuma	4 794	68,2	872	12,4	150	2,1	0	0	1209	17,2	7 025
Umsobomvu	4 458	82	777	14,3	136	2,5	2	0,04	70	1,3	5 443
District (Total)	**31 221**	**82,8**	**4 072**	**10,8**	**701**	**2**	**7**	**0,01**	**1 713**	**4,5**	**37 714**

(Source: Pixley ka Seme Reviewed IDP 2005)

Table 109: Housing Backlog by Local Municipality

Municipality	**Area**	**Houses**	**Total**
Emthanjeni	De Aar	1500	
	Hanover	400	
	Britstown	600	2500
Kareeberg	Carnavon	350	
	Van Wyksvlei	90	
	Vosburg	65	505
Thembelihle	Hopetown	673	
	Strydenburg	200	873
Siyathemba	Prieska	1500	
	Marydale	200	
	Niekerkshoop	100	1800
Renosterberg	Petrusville	300	
	Vanderkloof	50	
	Phillipstown	100	450
Ubuntu	Victoria - West	600	
	Richmond Farms	225	
	Hutchinson	-	
	Merriman	-	
	Loxton	80	935
Siyancuma	Douglas		
	Campbell		
	Griekwastad		
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	1725	
	Noupoort	750	
	Norvalspont	250	2725

(Source: Pixley ka Seme Reviewed IDP 2005)

The table above shows that the District has a total housing backlog of 9 788. Except for Siyancuma, all the other local municipalities experience a housing

shortage. Umsombomvu and Emthanjeni are the two local municipalities that face considerable housing backlogs of 2 725 and
2 500 respectively.

4.2.7 TELEPHONES

The table below gives a comparative indication of the access to telephones in the district as captured during the 2001 and 1996 censuses.

Table 110: Household access to Telephone

Telephone		
Households	**2001**	**1996**
Telephone and Cellphone in Dwelling	4585	0
Telephone only in Dwelling	6212	8770
Cellphone	3744	0
Neighbour	7742	5710
Public Telephone	10698	8994
Other - Nearby	2285	4558
Other - Not Nearby	1490	1669
No Access	3111	5919

There has been an improvement in the access to telephones between 1996 and 2001 with an additional 2808 gaining access to telephones.

Table 111: Access to telephone according to municipalities

Municipality	Telephone in dwelling and cell-phone	Tele-phone in dwelling only	Cell-phone only	At a neighbour nearby	At a public phone nearby	At another location nearby	At another location; not nearby	No access to a phone
Ubuntu	490	647	325	1 005	1 240	174	69	292
Umsombomvu	581	926	504	1 570	1 627	215	162	296
Emthanjeni	1 256	1 873	1 001	1 242	2 581	147	82	622
Kareeberg	227	541	113	544	717	113	42	130
Renosterberg	320	407	175	364	772	145	12	276
Thembelihle	495	389	391	677	1 117	173	39	190
Siyathemba	417	843	279	744	1 405	156	100	219
Siyancuma	831	969	926	2 048	3 040	572	186	637
Bo Karoo	155	82	27	652	18	30	9	128
Total	**4 772**	**6 677**	**3 741**	**8 846**	**12 517**	**1 725**	**701**	**2 790**

4.2.8 EDUCATION

Obtaining some form of income generating employment has become increasingly difficult in recent years. This is accentuated by the lack of education with the poorly educated being the ones that experience the highest incidence of poverty.

There has been an 8,3% increase in the number of learners that have accessed education between 1996 and 2001. There has been a 27,1% increase in the number of learners that have matriculated.

Approximately 3% of persons in the Pixley ka Seme district have an educational qualification higher than a matriculation certificate. Of these, approximately one third have a tertiary qualification. The percentage of the population in the formal education system is 66,5% whilst 19,7% of the population received no formal schooling.

Table 112 below is a comparison between Census 1996 and 2001 regarding the number of persons between the ages of 5-24 that attend school:

Persons	2001	1996
No Schooling	23 672	25 248
Some Primary	21 498	19 664
Complete Primary	9 538	9 528
Secondary	21 264	20 796
Grade 12	13 339	10 497
Higher	8 132	7 660

Source: Statssa 1996 and 2001

4.2.9 HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX

The human development index measures the average achievements in a country in three basic dimensions of human development viz. longevity, knowledge and a decent standard of living. It is a composite index that contains three variables: life expectancy, educational attainment (adult literacy and combined primary, secondary and tertiary enrolment) and real GDP per capita. (South Africa Human Development Report 2000). The closer the index gets to 1,0, the higher the level of 'living condition'.

The average HDI for the province is 0,52, with the Kimberley and the Namaqua magisterial districts having the highest at 0.63 and the Barkley West magisterial district having the lowest at 0,44.
The average HDI for the district is 0,49 with De Aar having the highest at 0,58 and Noupoort having the lowest at 0,45.Despite the advances made regarding the delivery of basic services, the HDI has largely been stagnant.

Table 113: Human Development Indices for the magisterial districts in the Pixley ka Seme

	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004
Carnarvon	0,47	0,48	049	0,49	0,49	0,49
Prieska	0,53	0,54	0,55	0,55	0,54	0,54
Britstown	0,49	0,50	0,51	0,51	0,50	0,50
Colesberg	0,48	0,48	050	0,50	0,49	0,48
De Aar	0,57	0,58	0,59	0,59	0,58	0,58
Hanover	0,45	0,45	0,47	0,47	0,46	0,46
Hopetown	0,49	0,50	0,51	0,51	0,50	0,50
Noupoort	0,44	0,45	0,47	0,46	0,46	0,45
Philipstown	0,48	0,49	0,50	0,50	0,49	0,49
Richmond	0,47	0,47	0,49	0,48	0,48	0,48
Hay	0,48	0,49	0,50	0,50	0,49	0,49
Victoria-West	0,50	0,51	0,53	0,52	0,52	0,52

Global Insight 2004

4.2.10 HEALTH

According to the Pixley ka Seme District Health Plan 2006-2007, the main health problems in the district are HIV and Aids and Tuberculoses. This places a huge burden on all the resources in the district. The incidence of HIV in the district is 14,41 (according to the 2004 Antenatal survey) and 17,83 (2003 Antenatal survey). With this there is a very close link between HIV and Tuberculoses. Implementing the comprehensive HIV/Aids plan involves many challenges and these include:

- Preventative strategies (health education, the MTCT programme)
- Voluntary counselling and testing
- Treatment of opportunistic infections
- Community home base care
- Antiretroviral treatment

Other health challenges prevalent in the district include:

- A high incidence of low birth weight babies
- A high incidence of teenage pregnancies
- A high incidence of chronic diseases like hypertension and diabetes
- A high incidence of Foetal Alcohol Syndrome

4.3 UNEMPLOYMENT AND LABOUR

4.3.1 UNEMPLOYMENT

There has been a decrease in the number of people employed and a concomitant increase in the number of unemployed in the district between these the 1996 and 2001 censuses. This is directly related to the number of businesses that has closed in the region during the period reflected and indicates the need for a retention or wholesale and retail strategy regarding these businesses.

Table 114: The comparative number of persons employed and unemployed in the Pixley ka Seme district in 1996 and 2001.

Persons	2001	1996
Employed	35 240	38 101
Unemployed	25 112	22 616

Source: Statssa 1996 and 2001

According to the Geospatial Analysis Platform and NSDP Spatial Profiles 2006, a study commissioned by the Policy Co-ordinating Advisory Service in the Presidency, approximately 25% of the economically active population in the district is unemployed. The municipalities that have the largest percentage of unemployed are Umsobomvu and Renosterberg with unemployment rates of 30,2% and 31,5% respectively. When the actual numbers of unemployed in the districts are considered, the municipalities that have the most people in the unemployed trap are Emthanjeni, Siyancuma, Umsobomvu and Siyathemba. These account for 20 153 (70,8%) of the unemployed in the district. Interventions in these municipalities would render the unemployment rate in the district to 7,2% provided the unemployed 20 153 are employed in these areas.

Table 115: Unemployment rates of the economically active population in municipalities in the district.

Local Municipality	Pop between 15-64 (10-60)	Unemployed	% Unemployed
Emthanjeni	25 370	6 894	27,17
Kareeberg	6 452	1 509	23,39
NCDMA07	2 366	248	10,48
Renosterberg	6 333	1 992	31,45
Siyancuma	25 333	5 052	19,94
Siyathemba	12 161	3 158	25,97
Thembelihle	9 908	1 984	20,02
Ubuntu	11 465	2 596	22,64
Umsobomvu	16 728	5 049	30,18
Total	**116 116**	**28 482**	**24,53**

Source: Geospatial Analysis Platform and NSDP Spatial Profiles 2006

4.3.2 LABOUR

LABOUR PARTICIPATION RATE
The labour participation rate in the district is 50,43%. This indicates the labour force as a percentage of the population in the age group 15-64 years of age.

LABOUR DEPENDENCY RATIO
The total number of persons supported by every person in the labour force, excluding him or herself is indicated by the labour dependency ratio. In the case of the Pixley ka Seme district this ratio is 1,81 with working individuals in the Siyathemba, Siyancuma and Thembelihle municipalities having to support approximately 2 persons. The lowest ratio in the district is to be found in the DMA area, at 0,81.

LABOUR YOUTH DEPENDENCY RATIO
Indicates the total number of youths, aged 0-14, supported by every person in the labour force, excluding him or herself. The ratio in the Pixley ka Seme district is 0,09. This indicates that working individuals support approximately one youth in the age group 0-14.

LABOUR AGED DEPENDENCY RATIO
The labour aged dependency ratio indicates the total number of aged persons, older than 65, supported by every person in the labour force, excluding him or herself. The ratio for the district is 0,85.

LABOUR ABSORPTION CAPACITY
The labour absorption capacity is the ability of the formal sector of the economy to absorb the supply of labour in the region. Approximately 25% of the economically active population of the district is unemployed. The municipalities that have the largest percentage of unemployed in the district is Umsobomvu and Renosterberg with unemployment rates of 30% and 31% respectively.

The table 116 below indicates the above ratios in each municipality in the district

Local Municipality	Labour Participation Rate	Labour dependency ratio	Labour youth dependency ratio	Labour aged dependency ratio
Emthanjeni	49,70	1,81	12,05	84,53
Kareeberg	54,80	1,65	13,91	79,13
NCDMA07	74,60	0,81	56,09	92,86
Renosterberg	56,94	1,52	18.66	84,97
Siyancuma	45,81	2,09	-1,83	83,53
Siyathemba	48,19	1,99	0,36	83,92
Thembelihle	46,93	1,95	3,10	83,68
Ubuntu	54,39	1,64	13,09	86,03
Umsobomvu	51,94	1,73	8,19	86,81
	5043	**1,81**	**8,80**	**84,65**

4.4MINIMUM LIVING LEVEL

One of the ways in which poverty can be described is the number of people living under the minimum living level. MLL is defined as the minimum monthly income needed to sustain a household and varies according to household size. The monthly poverty incomes as projected by the Bureau of Market Research's Minimum Living Level (BMR report no. 235) is indicated in the table below.

Table 117: Minimum Living Level (R value)- 1996 to 2004 according to household size

Household size	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8+
1996	443	545	726	903	1 084	1 278	1 452	1 770

1997	501	610	810	1 009	1 208	1 422	1 615	1 967
1998	526	635	842	1 050	1 258	1 481	1 681	2 047
1999	586	720	949	1 174	1 402	1 647	1 867	2 268
2000	627	765	1 008	1 245	1 487	1 745	1 977	2 402
2001	684	843	1 098	1 349	1 610	1 882	2 124	2 563
2002	752	937	1219	1 495	1 784	2 085	2 354	2 839
2003	829	1 021	1 334	1 638	1 959	2 291	2 589	3 126
2004	871	1 074	1 398	1 713	2 042	2 391	2 708	3 241

Table 118 below indicates the population by municipality living below the minimum living levels in the district.

Local Municipality	**Population**	**Population below MLL**	**% below MLL**
Emthanjeni	35 438	18,418	51.97
Kareeberg	9 356	5,433	58.07
NCDMA07	3 194	1,635	51.19
Renosterberg	9 091	5,616	61.77
Siyancuma	35 894	22,559	62.85
Siyathemba	17 497	9,374	53.58
Thembelihle	13,716	3,843	28.02
Ubuntu	16,480	10,787	65.46
Umsobomvu	23,747	20,400	85.91
Total	**164,412**	**98,064**	**59.65**

An average of 60% of the population in the district lives below the minimum living level (MLL). The highest percentage is found in the Umsobomvu municipal area, at 85 %, and the lowest at 28% in the Thembelihle municipal area. This represents 17,3% of the provincial population living below the MLL. The average monthly (individual) income for the district is approximately R740 which is less than the stipend received as a grant from social services departments.

4.5 ECONOMIC CHARACTERISTICS OF DISTRICT

4.5.1 REGIONAL GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT

The district contribution to the provincial GDPR has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining from 10,6% to 9,6% between

2003 and 2004. The economy is predominantly primary sector focused with manufacturing and tourism also contributing to the district economy.

The economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDPR of Pixley ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing.

Table 22 below represents the percentage contribution per economic sector by the district to the gross domestic product of the province for 2003 and 2004.

Table 119: % GDPR of district municipalities per economic sector for 2003 and 2004

% OF GDPR

	Primary		**Secondary**		**Tertiary**		**Taxes - Subsidies**		**Total GDPR**	
	2003	**2004**	**2003**	**2004**	**2003**	**2004**	**2003**	**2004**	**2003**	**2004**
Namakwa	4,3	3,8	0,5	0,4	7,3	7,0	0,7	0,8	12,8	12,1
Karoo	3,1	2,7	1,0	0,9	5,8	5,2	0,8	0,8	10,6	9,6
Siyanda	3,8	3,3	1,3	1,3	8.0	7,7	1,1	1,2	14,2	13,5
Frances Baard	6,8	6,2	3,2	3,1	26,1	28,6	2,5	2,0	38,6	40,7
Kgalagadi	16,7	16,5	1,4	1,3	4,9	5,5	0,7	0,8	23,8	24,1
NC GDPR	**34,7**	**32,6**	**7,3**	**7,1**	**52,1**	**54,0**	**5,8**	**5,6**	**100,0**	**100,0**

Pixley ka Seme's total percentage contribution in 2003 was 10,6% and declined to 9,64% in 2004. The district contribution to the GDP has consistently been the lowest over recent years with its contribution declining. It is evident that the tertiary sector contributes the greatest percentage to the GDP of the Northern Cape, followed by the primary sector and then the secondary sector.

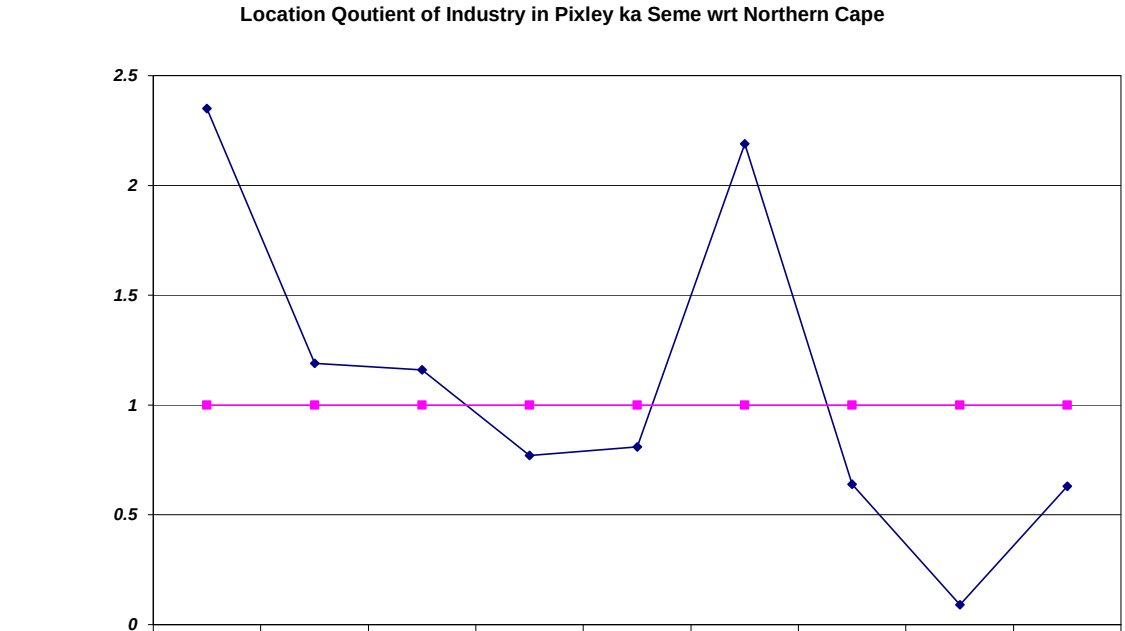
The Pixley ka Seme district displays a similar characteristic as the province with respect to its sectoral contributions to GDPR, the economic sectors that contribute the most to the GDPR of Pixley ka Seme are Agriculture, Mining, Tourism and Manufacturing, with its secondary sector contribution being the least. The manufacturing sector is part of the secondary sector which indicates that it has declined over the period of 2003 (0,97%) and in 2004 (0,92%). To transform and diversify the status of the districts economy will require a

concerted effort to improve and create development opportunities within this sector.

4.5.2 LOCATION QUOTIENT

A comparative advantage indicates a relatively more competitive production function for a product or service in specific economy than the aggregate economy. This economy therefore renders this service more efficiently. The location quotient is an indication of the comparative advantage of an economy in terms of its production and employment. A location quotient greater than 1 indicates a comparative advantage regarding the sector in one location with respect to another.

The analysis below indicates the location quotient of the Pixley ka Seme District with respect to the Northern Cape Province. The table and graph below indicates the location quotients of sectors in the district municipality with respect to the Northern Cape.



	Agriculture	Community, social and personal	Transport, storage and communicatio	Wholesale and retail trade	Finance, insurance, real estate	Electricity, gas and water supply	Manufacturing	Mining	Construction and Infrastructure
LQ w.r.t NC	2.35	1.19	1.16	0.77	0.81	2.19	0.64	0.09	0.63
Bench Marker	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Sectors in the economy of Pixley ka Seme that have a location quotient larger than 1 are agriculture (2,35); community, social and personal services (1,19); transport, storage and communication (1,16); electricity, gas and water supply (2,19). These indicate sectors that show potential for additional development in this does not imply that sectors, that do not feature here, should not be pursued since there may be latent potential in these sectors that could be exploited.

Table 120 below indicates the location quotients of the economic sectors in the municipalities

	Kareeberg	Emthanjeni	DMA	Renosterberg	Siyancuma	Siyathemba	Thembelihle	Ubuntu	Umsobomvu
Agriculture	1,18	0,31	1,62	0,54	1,11	1,46	1,47	1,59	0,82
Mining	0,08	0,05	0,45	0,00	4,28	0,09	0,02	0,21	0,00
Manufacturing	0,41	0,71	1,28	0,13	1,92	0,76	1,99	0,91	0,18
Electricity, gas and water supply	0,17	0,60	0,36	11,42	0,08	1,14	0,23	0,00	0,97
Construction	0,52	1,25	0,85	0,58	0,99	1,69	0,48	0,55	1,00
Wholesale and retail trade	1,12	1,05	1,20	0,56	1,02	0,94	1,17	0,79	1,13
Transport, storage and communication	0,52	1,76	0,53	0,33	0,84	0,83	1,33	0,75	0,51
Finance, insurance, real estate	1,06	1,79	0,94	0,46	0,78	0,71	0,61	0,72	0,67
Community, social and personal services	1,18	1,37	0,58	0,54	0,82	0,72	0,56	0,85	1,55

Other sectors in the district that have a distinct comparative advantage with respect to the Northern Cape and South Africa are:

- Electricity, Gas and Water supply
- Community, social and personal services
- Transport, storage and communication

The municipalities in the district that have comparative advantages with respect to the sector Electricity, Gas and Water supply are Renosterberg and Siyathemba with location quotients of 11,42 and 1,14 respectively. This resounding comparative advantage in the sector for the Renosterberg municipality is due to the presence of the van der Kloof dam in the municipality. It

is the only sector in which Renosterberg has a comparative advantage with respect to other municipalities in the district.

Kareeberg, Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu have location quotients, with respect to other municipalities in the district, of 1,18, 1,37 and 1,55 respectively in the Community, social and personal services sector. In the Transport, storage and communication sector, Emthanjeni and Thembelihle have location quotients of 1,76 and 1,33 respectively, indicating a comparative advantage in this sector with respect to other municipalities in the district. The sectors that contribute significantly to the Northern Cape GDPR is highlighted in the table above with agriculture having the highest LQ, Electricity, gas and water supply second highest LQ etc.

The agricultural sector has the potential for growth with a number of comparative and competitive advantages for the Northern Cape and Pixley ka Seme in particular.

4.5.3 TRESS INDICATORS

The level of diversification or concentration of a region's economy is measured by a tress index. A tress index of zero represents a totally diversified economy whilst the higher the index, the more concentrated or vulnerable the region's economy is to exogenous variables e.g. adverse climatic conditions and commodity price fluctuations.

The economy of the Pixley ka Seme district has a tress index of 56,18 indicating a reliance of the Pixley ka Seme economy on the agriculture, transport and services sector. This tress index indicates that the economy is not diversified but is largely dependant on the agriculture and is vulnerable to exogenous variables such as adverse climatic conditions, commodity price fluctuations. We need to look at ways of diversifying the economy

4.6 MAIN ECONOMIC SECTORS

4.6.1 AGRICULTURE

Pixley ka Seme is a district in which agriculture is the key economic activity with Siyancuma, Ubuntu and Siyathemba municipalities adding the most value in this sector and contributing 28,49% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) in this sector, but only 2,12% to the national GVA. The location quotient for agriculture in the district, with respect to the Northern Cape Province and South Africa, is 2,35 and 9,15 respectively. This indicates a comparative advantage of this sector implying that the sector has the potential to make a greater contribution to the GDPR of the district. The district management area has the highest location quotient followed by Ubuntu, Siyathemba and Thembelihle, their location quotients being 1,59, 1,46 and 1,47 respectively. Kareeberg has a comparative advantage as well but to a lesser degree than the afore-mentioned municipalities. A greater contribution can be made to the economy of the district by this sector.

4.6.2 MINING

The mining sector contribution to the GDPR of the district is less than that of agriculture and contributes only 1,14% to the provincial gross value added in this sector, with approximately 95% of the district contribution being attributed to that of Siyancuma municipality. The location quotient in this sector of 4,28 for Siyancuma municipality bears testament to the comparative advantage of this municipality with respect to the other municipalities in this sector. An abundance of Tiger's Eye is present in the Siyathemba municipality. Although traces of other minerals are present the extent of its resource base is not known.The location quotient of this sector indicates that, although comparative advantages exist between municipalities in the district, the district does not display a comparative advantage in this sector with respect to the Northern Cape and South Africa.

4.6.3 TOURISM

Tourism is not identified as a sector in the standard industrial classification. It has, however, been identified as one of the six categories of economic potential according to which the South African space economy has been classified in the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP 2003). The tourism sector in the district contributes 15,6% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) The municipalities Emthanjeni, Kareeberg, Umsobomvu and Siyancuma municipalities contribute approximately 22,8%, 24,8%, 14,9% and 11,5% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) in this sector.

4.6.4 MANUFACTURING

The manufacturing sector contributes 12,36% to the total Gross Value Added in the country (NSDP Spatial Profiles 2006) and is the sector that employs the second largest number of workers in the country. The manufacturing sector has manifested a declining trend over the past few years, declining from 20,2% in 1996 to 19,6% in 2003. This is due to:

- A declining value-add from the sector (3.6% in 2001 compared with 5.1% in 2000)
- A declining rate of change in manufacturing export growth
- A decline in gross domestic fixed investment in the sector between 1991-2001
- A low labour intensity; and
- A decrease in employment across the sector

Furthermore, South Africa has also had to compete globally in various industries related to the manufacturing sector e.g. the textile industry. South Africa has, due to China, been affected by the competitive advantage of China in this industry, resulting in a decrease in the contribution of manufacturing to the economy.

The manufacturing sector of the Northern Cape contributes only 0,43% to the national manufacturing sector and 2,8% to the provincial gross value added (GVA). The sector has been largely static over the past few years. In the Kimberley and Upington areas the manufacturing enterprises do make a significant contribution to the local economy. Most manufacturing that takes place in the Northern Cape involves value-addition to the province's mineral and agricultural raw material output, or, the fabrication of intermediate products used in those industries. Despite the relative insignificance of the manufacturing sector in terms of contribution to the aggregate, there is significant scope for growth in certain economic sub-sectors, particularly if conditions conducive to increased investment in manufacturing can be created through institutional support and reform.

The manufacturing sector in the district contributes 7,76%/11,14% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) in this sector. The Siyancuma and Emthanjeni municipalities contribute approximately 41,9%/ 45,4% and 17,5%/18,22% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) in this sector. The location quotient of 1,92 for the Siyancuma municipality confirms its comparative advantage in this sector with respect to other municipalities in the district, whilst that for Emthanjeni municipality, being only 0,71, indicates that the municipality has exhausted its potential to contribute to this sector and that additional interventions are required to ensure growth of this sector in that municipality. The location quotient of Thembelihle municipality is 1,99, indicating a comparative advantage, in this sector, with respect to other municipalities in the district and the opportunity to maximize the potential in the municipality.

4.7 CHALLENGES FOR GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

The examination and analysis of the socio-economic indicators listed above indicate without any doubt that ***the most critical challenge facing the district is the reduction of poverty.*** Other challenges that the district must confront, but which in themselves will also address poverty, includes the following:

- Ensuring that all citizens have access to basic services such as water, sanitation, electricity and housing.
- Increasing access to services in education, health and social services.
- Stabilising and decreasing the rate of HIV and AIDS infection, tuberculosis, FAS etc
- Reduction in the rate of crime.
- The shortage of critical skills – development of an attraction and retention strategy; improving skills of the labour force etc
- Targeting special groups eg women, disabled and youth; and
- Sustainable job creation

4.8 OPPORTUNITIES FOR GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

An analysis of the economic indicators indicates opportunities for potential growth in the following:

- Agriculture and agro-processing
- Manufacturing
- Tourism
- Transport and infrastructure
- Wholesale and retail; and
- Mining (semi-precious stones) and value adding – beneficiation

5. DISTRICT VISION, MISSION AND GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVES

VISION

A prosperous, unified, dynamic and developmental Pixley ka Seme district that is safe and secure with a better life for all

MISSION

In realising the vision the district is committed to stimulating and promoting economic growth and development through the provisioning of an enabling environment and the sustainable use of resources, promoting and sustaining unity and ensuring social justice and security for all.

DEVELOPMENTAL OBJECTIVES

- To promote economic development and the creation of sustainable job opportunities
- Poverty reduction through a holistic and integrated approach to pro-poor programming
- To strengthen social development and improve service delivery
- To develop human and social capital
- To ensure the provision of adequate infrastructure for economic and social development

- To promote good governance
- To strive for the attainment of regional integration

6. DEVELOPMENTAL TARGETS

The development targets that have been identified for the district growth and development strategy has taken due consideration of the provincial and national targets that have been adopted as well as those adopted at international conventions such as the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD) and the Millenium Development Goals.

The following are the targets for the DGDS:

- To achieve an average annual economic growth rate of between 2% - 4%.
- To reduce poverty by 50% by 2014.
- To eradicate the bucket system by 2007.
- To reduce crime by 10% before 2010.
- To decrease the illiteracy rate by half by 2014.
- To reduce unemployment by 50% by 2014.
- To reduce the prevalence rate of HIV and AIDS by 2014.
- To provide housing for all by 2014.

7. PIXLEY ka SEME DISTRICT SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (DSDF)

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Spatial planning during the apartheid era focused on the manipulation of the physical environment in an inflexible manner that resulted in racially separated and unequal development. The effects of this approach include displaced urbanisation and settlement patterns that were distorted, fragmented, incoherent and unequal generating enormous movement across vast areas which are time consuming and costly, particularly for the poor, while at the same time entrenching a system of unequal access to economic and social resources.

Poignant features of development patterns in the district include:

- Large dormitory areas far from places of economic, cultural, recreational and educational opportunities
- Severely overcrowded spatial settlements that depend on limited agricultural land leading to severe environmental degradation
- Substantial inequality between areas historically based on race; and
- Wide disparities in the provision of infrastructure and services.

Despite some twelve years into our democracy these settlement and development patterns continue to exist and in many instances government has inadvertently continued to propagate development along these lines. Accordingly the DSDF not only addresses the apartheid distortions of space but creates a strategic framework for the formulation of an appropriate land use management system that supports the National Spatial Development Perspective.

7.2 PRINCIPLES OF THE DSDF

In addition to implementing the five principles as espoused in the National Spatial Development Perspective the DSDF has also adopted the following principles in support of the NSDP:

- Promote the use of sustainable land in the district
- Restructure spatially inefficient settlements
- Allocate resources to areas of developmental potential and those of greatest need
- Ensure the social, economic and environmental sustainability; and
- Establish priorities in terms of public sector development and investment

7.3 SETTLEMENT STRUCTURES

The following criteria were used to determine the different type of settlement structures:

- The geographical location of the towns
- The level of services and the infrastructure
- Social and economic activities such as:

    - ❖ Administrative centres for government
    - ❖ Retail centres
    - ❖ Provision of basic educational and health facilities
    - ❖ Resource centres for farming hinterlands
    - ❖ Destinations for people migrating from rural to urban areas

Using the abovementioned criteria the following settlement structures were developed for the integrated spatial framework for the district.

7.3.1 URBAN CENTRES

The are eight urban centres proposed in the DSDF and these are De Aar, Colesberg, Victoria West, Hopetown, Carnavon, Prieska, Douglas and Petrusville. All except Petrusville are the administrative centres of their respective municipalities. It is envisaged that these centres should not only be further developed as administrative centres but should also be promoted through the implementation of urban rehabilitation programmes to stimulate economic growth.

7.3.2 URBAN SATELLITE TOWNS

These are towns that already have some services and infrastructure and have the potential to grow. Towns identified here are Britstown, Hanover, Phillipstown, Strydenburg, and Richmond. It is proposed that growth in these areas should be properly managed through efficient spatial planningthat leads to the stimulation of economic growth.

7.3.3 RURAL SERVICE CENTRES

These are centres that will complement the satellite towns in the remote areas for the purpose of the even distribution of services and to promote the creation of employment opportunities. The proposed local centres are Noupoort, Vanwyksvlei, Vosburg, Loxton Norvalspont, Grekwastad, Schmidtdrift, Cambell and Hutchinson

7.3.4 DEVELOPMENT NODES

These are areas where development opportunities such as services and infrastructure are concentrated which makes them important service centres for development. The areas identified where development initiatives will be clustered Colesberg, De Aar, the Orange River and the Gariep Dam.

7.3.5 DEVELOPMENT CORRIDORS

Corridors are represented by the transport routes where development opportunities are concentrated or distributed along. The major development corridors in the district are the N1, N12 and N10 national roads.

8. THE STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK FOR ECONOMIC GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

8.1 INTRODUCTION

The Pixley ka Seme district is arguably one of the poorest districts in the Northern Cape Province and given the depth and spread of poverty in this district the key priority of the growth and development strategy is the eradication of poverty. Poverty is not limited to a lack of income but is primarily characterised by a lack of access to opportunities for a sustainable livelihood, that is, income, skills, knowledge and access to decision making. Women bear a greater burden of poverty but the aged, children, people with disabilities and other marginalised groups are also particularly vulnerable. These groups lack the ability to influence decision-making and thus poverty reduction strategies do not respond, or respond inappropriately, to their needs.

It follows that poverty has economic, social and political dimensions and that poverty eradication is only possible if its underlying structural causes are addressed through:

- Greater control over and access to decision-making processes by the poor people.

- Poverty reduction initiatives that address the income, assets and skills capabilities of the poor.
- Linkages between the micro and macro levels of intervention in a mutually reinforcing manner.

The Pixley ka Seme municipality has committed itself to the general growth and development of the district. This commitment is founded on a strategy that has as its basis three key pillars, namely,

- Economic growth and development
- Social development; and
- Human and social capital development.

In order to promote economic growth and development the district has identified six economic sectors. These sectors were selected after a careful analysis of the district economy and include the following:

- Agriculture and agro-processing
- Mining and mineral processing
- Tourism
- Manufacturing
- Wholesale and retail; and
- Local economic development.

These strategies have been designed, in the main, to adopt the value-chain approach that serves as a vehicle to create employment opportunities, raise competitiveness and the investment rating of the district, to combine public and private sector investment contributions to development and to align the various public sector development initiatives for greater impact.

8.2 MINING AND MINERAL PROCESSING

8.2.1 INROODUCTION

Pixley Ka Seme district has a base of mineral resources, including diamonds, copper, manganese and iron ore deposits, uranium and tiger's eye. Mineral-based activities, whether large- or small-scale, have the potential to stimulate economic diversification and industrial and rural development. The implementation of effective mining strategies can generate upstream and downstream activities that present viable investment opportunities and promote local economic development and poverty alleviation. In addressing poverty, the available base of mineral resources can play a significant role but is not a sufficient condition to create a viable local economy and effectively engage poverty. A number of African countries, that have a huge and often easily exploitable resource base but experience excessive levels of poverty, evidence this.

However, mineral resource endowments have been beneficial for the economic development of many countries, including nations such as Chile and Botswana. One of the world's poorest countries when it gained independence in 1966 with a per capita income of less than $100, Botswana today has a per capita income exceeding $3 500. The diamond revenues has transformed the country from one with only 6km of tarred roads at the time of independence to a country with some 6 000km of tarred roads today.

In adopting the value chain model and making the recommendations as noted later in this document, we have aimed to answer the following key questions:

- What steps do we take to get a fuller and scientific understanding of what mineral resources are available in Pixley Ka Seme?
- How do we promote the mining of these minerals in such a way that investment is attracted into the District that allows jobs to be created, communities to benefit, empowerment issues to be addressed and the economic profile of the District to improve?
- What strategy do we use to ensure that beneficiation of the minerals takes place locally with full local involvement whilst attracting financial and infrastructure investment into the District?
- How do we ensure that empowerment and local groups supply goods and services required by mining companies and support mining companies to meet their procurement obligations?
- What are the secondary industries that could be developed to ensure sustainable economic development once mineral resources are exhausted?
- How do we promote PPPs, District Municipality capability, gender development, financing and the correct institutional base to effectively exploit existing mineral resources?

8.2.2 LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK

Recent legislative changes in the country provide the Pixley Ka Seme District with a number of opportunities for using its resource base as an anchor for future economic growth.

i) Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28, 2002)
This Act allows for State sovereignty over all mineral and petroleum resources in the Republic, promotion of economic growth and development of these resources and expanding of opportunities for the historically disadvantaged. The Act ensures that holders of mining and production rights contribute to the socio-economic development of the areas in which they are operating.

ii) The Broad-Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry The Charter commits all stakeholders in the mining industry to transferring a minimum of 26% of assets to black ownership within ten years.

iii) Scorecard for the Broad Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry The Scorecard provides measurable criteria for Charter elements, with sufficient certainty to comfort markets and at the same time flexible enough to allow management to run companies in a responsible and lucrative manner.

iv)The Royalty Bill The Bill proposes royalties on gross mining revenue ranging from 1-8% to be paid quarterly once new order mineral rights have been accorded to mining companies.

v) The Beneficiation bill (draft) aims to promote local beneficiation of minerals mined in the country.

vi) The Diamond Amendment Bill The Diamond Amendment Bill provides for the separation of the diamond regulatory functions from the promotional functions, which are currently both the responsibility of the South African Diamond Board. The Precious Metals and Diamonds Regulator would be responsible for regulating the diamond trade and the management and administration of diamond and precious metals beneficiation. The State Diamond Trader will be responsible for ensuring the supply of rough diamonds to South African based businesses and facilitate the sale of rough and polished diamonds. All unpolished diamonds for export are to be offered at the state controlled Diamond Exchange and Export Centre.

In Pixley Ka Seme, policy makers will have to identify critical growth paths that enable the viable mining and beneficiation of existing resources and the building of complementary industries. Proposals are made in this document and are guided by the following key strategic objectives:

- Promoting the sustainable economic growth of the district and empowerment of its citizens.
- Promoting effective and efficient mining and beneficiation of the mineral resources.
- Promoting gender development as a theme cutting across all initiatives and interventions.
- Contributing to the objectives of the ASGI-SA and Northern Cape PGDS.
- Positioning the District as a target for mining related investments.
- Promoting job creation, human capital development, and SMME development as a platform for advancing BEE in the district.
- Enhancing good governance and effective overall management of the DMMS.

Whilst there are a large number of minerals that could possibly be targeted as part of the Pixley Ka Seme district strategy, the focus here is on diamonds, Tiger's Eye stones, salt and uranium. In proposing mining and minerals processing related interventions, we have used a value chain model which comprises of the following elements: exploration; mining (including sorting, valuation and sales); processing and beneficiation (e.g. diamond cutting and polishing, uranium processing, product distribution and sales); manufacture

(design, manufacture and distribution); and retail sales. Graphics of the model are presented in the annexure on mining.

8.2.3 THE DIAMOND SECTOR

A small number of major players control the mining and marketing of diamonds. Africa produces 61% of the world's diamonds but has less than 1% of the diamond manufacturing industry. The biggest returns are made in the processes of cutting, polishing and manufacturing jewellery and African countries, including South Africa, play a limited role at these levels. The diamond analyst Chaim Even Zohar notes that is today's terms, roughly US$1bn of rough diamonds will be converted into US$16 after cutting and polishing and US$60bn once jewellery is manufactured. This shows the extent to which Africa and South Africa is losing out in the value chain given the present low levels of beneficiation and retail of manufactured jewellery

South Africa ranks fourth in the world in terms of value of rough diamond production and fifth in terms of caratage produced with production for 2004 of 14,4 Mct valued at US$1,2 Billion. In the South African context, in 2004, the Northern Cape produced 38% (by volume) of South Africa's diamonds. The province has averaged over 35% of the country's production over the past 10 years.

The domestic cutting industry numbers some 200 or so "factories" employing about 2100 people. Many of the operations are small with foreign-owned firms dominating the business. Cutting factories are dominated by the likes of India, who have historically been cutting smaller stones, and Belgium and Israel, who have focussed on larger and fancy stones.

In India there are 30 000 factories employing about 900 000 people. Israel has 500 factories employing some 7 500 cutters. Belgium is also a significant player with 300 factories employing 1 500 people. China has entered the cutting and polishing market and presently has just under a 100 factories and employs 5 000 people. Clearly the benefits of African mining are experienced more in other countries than in the Africa itself. However, a number of initiatives are being undertaken to reverse this situation. The New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD) has launched the Diamond Producers of Africa (DPA) initiative aimed at developing a common platform for African diamond producing countries to retain as much of the benefits in member countries.

Pixley Ka Seme diamonds resource base

There is little reliable data on reserves in the district. The data noted in the annexure is as extracted from publications and information published by the Department of Mineral and Energy Affairs, Council for Geoscience, Mintek, Diamond Core Resources and Transhex. Transhex notes that generally diamonds from the Orange River deposits have an average stone size of 1.5 to 2.5cts (2.6cts per stone – Transhex's Saxendrift Mine with a selling price of US$1,000/ct (late 1990's to early 2000's). An overview of the key exploration and mining projects focuses mainly on the resources in Silverstreams, Saxondrift,

Uitdraai, De Kalk and the Muishoek project. The main players here are Diamond Core Resources, Samadi Resources and Transhex.

8.2.4 TIGER'S EYE SECTOR

Relative to the rest of the world, Tiger's Eye deposits are unique to the Northern Cape. The deposits occur near iron-banded formations, which form due to unique climatic and mineral characteristics of the region and are mined open cast.

The mining of Tiger's Eye is conducive to small-scale mining as seams can be found within five metres of the surface. SA laws prohibit the export of rough Tiger's Eye - the processing of these stone (cutting, polishing, jewellery manufacturing) should be done within the country. There are, however, some barriers to development, including:

- The lack of verified data regarding reserves in the area.
- Poor infrastructure especially in areas where the reserves are most likely situated.
- Illegal exportation of rough Tigers Eye stones
- Skills shortage in both the before- and after markets.

In addressing the situation that Tiger's Eye rough is being illegally traded, it is important to take note of recommendations made by community representatives that temporary licenses be granted to local groups to for a window period to allow communities to generate the finances required to apply for licences. Community groups have been historically mining Tiger's Eye and strategies should be worked out that enhance the community capability to mine and beneficiate Tiger's Eye in an efficient and economic basis. Investment attraction and community development to effectively allow communities to more effectively participate in mining and beneficiation of Tiger's Eye should be prioritised.

8.2.5 THE URANIUM SECTOR

With the general worldwide acceptance of the Kyoto agreement, global attention is turning towards less environmentally harmful forms of energy. Very near the top of the list of contenders for an environmentally friendly and sustainable energy source is uranium as nuclear power plants - Koeberg. In America, an estimated 20% of all energy is supplied from nuclear power plants, while 16% of the world's energy comes from this source.

Vastly less uranium is needed in comparison to other fuels, e.g. one drum of uranium oxide (U_3O_8) contains the equivalent in energy of 25 000 barrels of crude oil. South Africa has recently announced intentions to build four to six new nuclear power plants. Currently, 6% of all South Africa's power comes from the Koeberg Power Station. Locally, Minerals & Energy Affairs Department noted that new laws would be drafted regarding increasing SA's uranium production and that a special dispensation would be issued for exploring the mineral.

Uranium Reserves in Pixley Ka Seme

In Pixley Ka Seme, unconfirmed reserves exist in the southern part of the district. This runs in a belt stretching from Loxton through Hutchinson, Hanover and

Colesberg ending in the Free State. Although there are no immediate calculations as to reserves in the area, deposits are thought to be considerable with SXR UraniumOne, a Canadian uranium and gold resource company looking to apply for prospecting rights on some 500,000 hectares of land thought to be rich in uranium resources, in particular the Karoo and the Springbok Flats.

8.2.6. THE SALT MINING SECTOR

Salt is an important industrial mineral and is used in many chemical processes as well as in the food industry. There are twelve mines recovering salt in the Northern Cape located primarily at Calvinia and Gordonia. There is potential to establish more.

The Northern Cape contains a large proportion of the inland salt pans. The majority of the inland pans lie between Hopetown and Brandvlei and covers a swathe across the centre of the Northern Cape Province. Salt is a low value, bulky commodity that is not traded internationally in any significant amount. Uses for salt include being a flavourant, an ingredient in the preparation of foods such as cheese and butter, drilling, hide curing, improving traction on icy roads and textile dying.

In Pixely Ka Seme only one salt mine exists at Hopetown. Additional salt mine sites around the Hopetown area and continue in a belt running westwards through the District exist but have not been developed due to their remote location. For these sites to be mined, research would have to be commissioned to find the extent of the salt resources in the district. A feasibility study would have to find whether it would be profitable to open such mines considering the low price for salt.

8.2.7 INTERVENTIONS

It is proposed that the following interventions should be considered.

Exploration

As noted, there is little data on the extent of the mineral reserves in the district. It must be noted that undertaking exploration is a costly and complex business. As such it is proposed that all available district data is collected and the district puts together a detailed marketing plan to attract exploration investment into the district. This is especially so as regards diamonds, Tiger's Eye and uranium. The district should be aggressively marketed as an investment target in the mining sector.

Mining

Once geological assessments confirm the existence of mineable reserves, selected projects could be presented to interested mining companies for investment. In doing so, the District should:

- Undertake a detailed analysis of the existing infrastructure and additional requirements, and develop an infrastructure plan that is required to facilitate viable mining projects.

- Support communities to effectively organise themselves to participate in mining ventures.
- Provide training and support to small and BEE owned companies to secure supply contracts with mining operations and where appropriate link small companies in partnerships with established supply companies.
- Promote liaison and co-operation between mining companies, other State bodies, small/BEE companies and communities and their representatives.

Beneficiation
The district should take active steps to promote the national drive to enhance the beneficiation of minerals mined in the country. These steps could include:

- Promote increased diamond mining in the district that will improve the regular supply of rough to the Kimberley Hub for cutting, polishing and manufacturing diamond jewellery.
- Establish a world class Tiger's Eye cutting, polishing and jewellery and manufacturing Centre in the district.
- Facilitate the training of local people from the district to cut and polish diamonds and Tiger's Eye stones and design and manufacture jewelry.
- Establish a South African brand based on local Tiger's Eye supplies and local designs to improve the returns from mining and beneficiating rough Tiger's Eye stones.

The processing of uranium, given its strategic and sensitive nature, will have to be considered in conjunction with National Government.

Retail/sales
Given the exclusive resource base of Tiger' Eye stones in the district, the Tiger's Eye Centre can play a far more influential role in the sales and retail environment. In addition to supplying retail outlets, consideration should be given to the Centre establishing its own retail outlets in strategic locations tourist hotspots e.g. Cape Town and Durban) and in specific global locations where there is a demand for Tiger's Eye products. This could better be done in conjunction with a local and global retail brand**.**

8.2.8 SECONDARY BUSINESS AND INDUSTRY DEVELOPMENT

The exploitation and processing of minerals can contribute to the growth of secondary businesses and industries that take advantage of the backward and forward linkages between the mining sector and their respective supplier industries. Mining operations require a large number of goods and services providing an ideal opportunity for the growth and development of viable businesses with the involvement of SMMEs and BEE.

In terms of the mining scorecard, mining companies are required to have preferential procurement policies that enhance the growth of SMME/BEE companies. In rolling out the DMMS, Pixley ka Seme can take a proactive role in

promoting this objective by working closely with mining operations and providing support to BEE companies.

The basic categories of secondary business and industrial development that can generally be developed as a result of mining operations are:

Consulting services
Individuals and SMME/BEE companies can provide HR, marketing, legal, social planning and other corporate services as well as geological and geotechnical services.

Supply of office furniture and equipment
Small businesses can be set up to focus on the supply of office furniture and equipment**,** stationery and consumables.

Supply of engineering related inputs
This will involve the sourcing and supply of spares, tools, bearings, valves and related inputs that are regularly used by mines. From developments to date, it is clear that businesses focussed on this activity can be highly successful provided the business is run on the basis of providing quality products, competitive pricing, stock availability and on-time delivery. Companies involved in the supply of inputs normally are agents for local and off-shore manufacturers and national distributors enabling such companies to meet the quality, pricing, stocks and timeous delivery demands of clients.

Mining service providers
Here, the focus will be on providing construction, drilling, rigging, removal of water in water logged situations, equipment repair and related services to operations involved in exploration and mining. This has also proved an attractive business opportunity and more black companies need to be trained and supported to enter into this market ether through BEE partnering or in their own right.

Manufacturing
Equipment manufacture can provide for good business opportunities and much of the equipment is presently being imported or produced locally by foreign companies. Consideration needs to be given to undertaking national support initiatives to promote local manufacture especially as SA can become a point of supply for mining, cutting, polishing and jewellery manufacturing equipment to the local as well as the growing African market**.** The strategy could be to produce smaller equipment initially and grow local capacity or produce larger complex equipment is association with foreign players. It seems advantageous that local manufacture is encouraged in partnership with international companies. There may well be areas that allow for local manufacture that can service the mining as well as other industries. One example is the building of trailers or trailer bodies for trucks.

Promoting the development and expansion of the business categories noted above provides the basis for the emergence of local clusters of business

activities, which can spin-off into other areas and applications engendering much greater economic benefits for a region in terms of diversification and job creation.

Based on the above, the following concrete business opportunities could be looked at:

- Consulting services provision in HR, marketing etc.
- Supply of office furniture and equipment as well as engineering inputs as described above.
- Agencies to facilitate the purchase of heavy machinery and equipment
- Construction companies – here alternate building technologies could be examined as a way of contributing to reducing the costs of putting up accommodation, offices etc.
- Drilling and rigging services

The district should proactively support SMME/BEE groups to identify viable opportunities and develop and their capability to exploit such opportunities, and link the SMME/BEE groups with existing and potential future mining players to establish a goods or service provision role. In doing so the district could set for itself the target to implement a district wide programme to support SMME/BEE companies to develop their capability and negotiate business arrangements with mining operations. This will include supporting existing SMME/BEE companies and encouraging the growth of new BEE service providers,

8.2.9 COMPLEMENTARY INDUSTRIES

Mining is a depletable resource. As such it is critical that the extraction and beneficiation of diamonds, Tiger's Eye and other minerals lead to the development of other economic sectors that will enhance general economic sustainability. Strategies to build complementary sectors during the period of mining have increased in importance.

The district should identify the primary economic sectors and interlinks between these sectors and mining and beneficiation to create a solid economic base that can reduce dependence on mining and create viable economic clusters. In addressing the issue of complementary industries, the district should:

- Identify the specific linkages within the district economy between viable existing or new industries that need to be developed and diamond mining, and
- Undertake pre-feasibility business planning together with financing institutions like the IDC of viable opportunities to present to interested investors and/or SMME/BEE groups.

8.2.10 CROSS-FUNCTIONAL COMPETENCIES

This section relates to cross functional competencies that feature across the value chain. The proposed interventions here are:

- The creation of a coordinating structure that manages and facilitates the implementation of the interventions and play the leading role in transforming the district's mining and minerals processing sector.

- The promotion of public private sector partnerships to enhance exploitation of the diamond resources and promote local empowerment.
- The facilitation of networking between local business and entrepreneurs with public and private sector financing institutions and external investors.
- The active promotion of the development and participation of women in the mining process especially in beneficiation and secondary industries and development integration.
- The facilitation of co-operation amongst a range of government based organisations, SOEs, the private sector and NGOs to create an institutional base that supports the interventions across the value chain.

The agriculture and agro-processing strategy is informed by the Strategic plan of the Department of Agriculture and Land Reform (DALR), the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) and the Agricultural Sector Plan of South Africa. In addition, it is informed by Government Programme of Action and the economic cluster.

Agriculture is the key economic activity in the Pixley Ka Seme District adding the most value in this sector and contributing 28.49% to the Provincial Gross Value Added (GVA). According to the Statistics South Africa's reports (2002) the location quotient for agriculture in the district, with respect to the Northern Cape Province and South Africa, is 2.35 and 9.15 respectively. This indicates a comparative advantage of the sector implying that the sector has the potential to make contribution to the GDPR of the district.

8.3.2 STATE OF AGRICULTURAL RESOURCES IN THE DISTRICT

Climate

Pixley Ka Seme is hot and dry district with very cold winters. Like the entire province the district is semi-arid to arid and it receives mainly summer rainfall, with typical Karoo climate of untimely rainfall. The average annual rainfall is between 200 to 350mm per annum. The high temperatures, very low relative humidities and extremely high vapour saturation deficits lead to very high potential of evapotranspiration. Owing to the fact that the district's rainfall is low and erratic and much water is lost as result of evaporation from the soil surface the district has limited water resources. Despite that there are three major rivers passing through, which are Orange, Vaal and Riet Rivers.

Soils and Vegetation

Larger part of the district is dominated by very shallow soils. Hence little percentage of the irrigation of the total agricultural land available. The district's rangelands are generally in a moderate to severely degraded condition. An important aspect of the rangelands of the arid and semiarid areas is the low resilience (recovery potential) of the major proportion of these rangelands once they are degraded. This is largely related to the properties and characteristics of

the dominant soils of these rangelands. The carrying capacities of this area are also low due to the combination of low rainfall and soils with low potential, the vegetation production capacities..

Research stations
There are two research stations in the district one for crops and the other one for animal production, this are situated in Riet River and Carnavon respectively. These are being used for technology development and it is also envisaging using them as training centres for farmers.

Agricultural Cooperatives
There are three major cooperatives in this district that's BKB, Griekwaland West Kooperasie (GWK) and Oos Vrystaat Kaap (OVK). Most of the commercial farmers are shareholders or members of these cooperatives. There are also 32 goats' cooperatives which are comprised mainly by emerging farmers. All these coops can be used for public private partnership towards agriculture development in the district.

8.3.3 STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS IN AGRICULTURE AND AGRO-PROCESSING

As indicated above agriculture is the key economic factor in the district. Despite the largely semi-arid and arid environment in the district, the fertile land that lies alongside the Orange, Vaal and Riet Rivers supports the production of some of the country's finest quality agricultural products. The district is well known of its world renown for the quality of meat - Karoo lamb. The district is also well known for the production of wool, mohair, wine, maize, wheat etc.

The challenge is to grow the agricultural sector in the district and increase its contribution to the GGP, employment and income while addressing its skewed-ness and at the same time accommodating the demands for increased access to agricultural resources by previously excluded sectors of our society and ensuring sustainable utilisation of agricultural resources (SUAR).

Strategic goals
The district seeks to grow the agricultural economy:

- Through the promotion of new investments in primary agricultural production;
- Through the more efficient use of irrigation water;
- By promoting crop diversification and the reduction of levels of risk in agriculture;
- By promoting the development of agro-processing and the addition of value to our primary agricultural output, and
- By stimulating increased export of high value agricultural produce.
- By enhancing sustainable use and management of natural resources and ecological systems

To promote transformation in agriculture through:

- Land reform by putting productive land in the hands of emerging black farmers;
- The allocation of water rights to emerging black farmers;

- Programmes designed to ensure the transfer of skills and knowledge to emerging black farmers; and
- The provision of agricultural credit to emerging black farmers.

Transformation of agriculture in the district is seen as being essential to ensuring the long-term political, social and economic sustainability of the agricultural sector in the province.

8.3.4 CUSTOMIZED COMMODITY SECTOR STRATEGIES

The provincial Department of Agriculture has participated in a process with the national Department of Agriculture, Agri-SA and NAFU for the purpose of developing a series of agricultural commodity strategies. The aim is to address all matters pertaining to sector development from primary production through to agro-processing, from research to skills development, from land to water and from land reform to AgriBEE.

The initial set of commodity strategies is focused on the grain, livestock, cotton, wine, horticulture industries. It is necessary to develop customised commodity sector strategies for the province and the district. In addition to facilitating co-ordinated sector development in the province and district, this will also ensure alignment of the district, provincial and national strategies for agricultural growth and transformation.

Commercialisation of goats
32 goats' cooperatives have been established in the district as to institutionalize goats' farmers and to enable them to sell their product to the niche markets. This will also enable them to lobby for support from the government and other private sector. The department is providing training, which is accredited by Agri-SETA to these co-ops and provide them with animal health starter kits upon completion of the course and it is also envisaging in providing seed stock to these coops to improve their breeding stock.

The latter will ensure that the so called dead assets are transformed into more economical assets by ensuring:

- Job creation
- Linkage of the second economy with first economy
- Export of meat products
  - Equitable access and participation in the value chain
- Challenges
- There are several challenges facing the commercialisation of goats, which are but not limited to the following:
- Construction of on-farm infrastructure for the registered cooperatives
- Other district having high population of goats as compared to Pixley Ka Seme District

Promoting the Development of Agro-Processing
The promotion of agro-industrial processing is recognised by the Northern Cape provincial government as being critically important to the expansion and

diversification of the agricultural sector in the district and the province at large. In addition, it is also one of the means by which transformation of agriculture in the province could be achieved.

Generally speaking the producer prices of primary products increases at a slower rate than those of input prices. While this can be offset to some extent by achieving efficiency gains in production (through lower input costs or research and technology development), the adding of value by vertically or horizontally integrating primary production and agro-processing systems presents perhaps the best opportunity to increase the viability, profitability and sustainability of agricultural production systems.

The successful promotion of agro-processing can impact positively on the incomes of primary producers, create employment and foreign exchange earnings, address the market risks associated with primary agricultural production and in so doing even grow the markets for primary agricultural products. Hence the promotion of agro-processing sector in the district in the following:

- Winery / wine cellars
- Tannery for skins and hides
- Frozen vegetables
- Animal feeds
- Meat processing (biltong) and cold meats
- Tetra Pak (manufacturing of vegetable juices)
- Infants feed (from Soya)
- Cereals
- Nuts industry
- Bio-fuels (focus on bio-ethanol and bio-diesel)
- Wool processing

Promoting Transformation in Agriculture

Agriculture has been dominated by large-scale white-owned commercial agriculture supported by oppressive laws that denied the majority of South Africans access to land, water and access to agricultural credit. Whilst these laws have been repealed and a new legislative framework promoting the entry of black farmers into the commercial agricultural sector, progress towards transformation has been relatively slow.

Without meaningful progress towards increasing access to productive agricultural resources for black agriculturalists over the short to medium-term, the pressure for a more radical overhaul of the rural economy will mount. An accelerated process of transformation of agriculture is the only way to ensure growth with equity in the rural economy. This will be achieved through

- Increasing access to existing resources and opportunities within the agricultural sector for historically disadvantaged groups and individuals
- Enhancing infrastructure for economic growth and social development
- Promoting growth, diversification and transformation in the district economy

- Land reform
- Business and market development
- Comprehensive agricultural support to new entrants
- Sustainable use of natural resources
- Provision of water rights to new irrigation farmers through Coordinating Committee for Agricultural Water (CCAW) to all projects under Orange River Emerging Farmers Settlement Programme (OREFSP)
- Ensure equitable access and sustained participation in the sector

Provision of Extension and Support Services

While attention has been focussed on providing access to land for new entrants to farming, insufficient attention has been given to farmer support programmes for emerging farmers. It is clear that there is a need to improve and expand the existing support services to meet the needs of all farmers. This includes the continuation of ongoing support services in agricultural research, technology development, financial services, market access and development, training and skills development, but must also provide targeted support to new farmers. To achieve this the intention to have at-least one extension officer per municipality.

Established agriculture possesses a wealth of knowledge, experience and capacity which can be shared with new and emerging farmers. Priority should be given to removing barriers to new entrants through enhanced transfer of technology, skills development, access to financial services, market access and information and support for on and off farm infrastructure development.

Maintaining Effective Regulatory Services

In agriculture sustainable resource management is critical to maintaining the productive value of the land on which agriculture is practised. In particular, the need is to preserve agricultural biodiversity and promote the sustainable use of soil and water in line with the legislative and regulatory framework governing the utilisation of these resources. Through the considered application of regulatory services, it will be possible to optimise the utilisation of the district's agricultural resources and enhance crop and livestock productivity thereby ensuring more sustainable farming systems. Compliance with various regulatory protocols is also essential if access to international markets is to be assured and the strategy actively promotes regulatory compliance to support sector development.

Supporting Research and Development

In order to remain competitive and to sustain profitability in the global agricultural economy cutting edge innovation and knowledge are becoming increasingly important. It is essential to find ways to support relevant and applied agricultural research and technology development if we are to maintain and grow the contribution of the agricultural sector to the provincial and national economy.

Research and development is the means by which new and strategically important technologies are developed so as to support diversification of production and the addition of value to our primary products. It is acknowledged however that the research and the development of new technology are costly. We are committed to working with the national Department of Agriculture, the

ARC and other research institutions to secure the necessary access to research and development facilities and funding.

Food Security
The poorer communities must be encouraged to establish food gardens for home consumption and selling the surplus for income generation. These will be linked with other government institutions such as clinics, hospital, schools etc to use their yard for vegetable production. Appropriate mechanisation should be designed for small-scale production. The following are important in ensuring access to sufficient, safe and nutritious food.

- Provide leadership in the implementation of the Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP)
- Promote household and income generation and food production
- Promote Production, processing of nutritious alternative foods
- Establish and maintain effective early warning and mitigation systems in agriculture

8.4 MANUFACTURING STRATEGY

Manufacturing is classified as a secondary sector industry and is part of a value-adding chain process. The economy of the Northern Cape is primary sector focused, with the Manufacturing sector contributing the least to GDPR. This fact is articulated in the Northern Cape PGDS which identifies the need to diversify the economy to ensure economic growth. The economy of the Pixley ka Seme District mimics that of the Northern Cape with the manufacturing sector contributing minimally to the district economy.

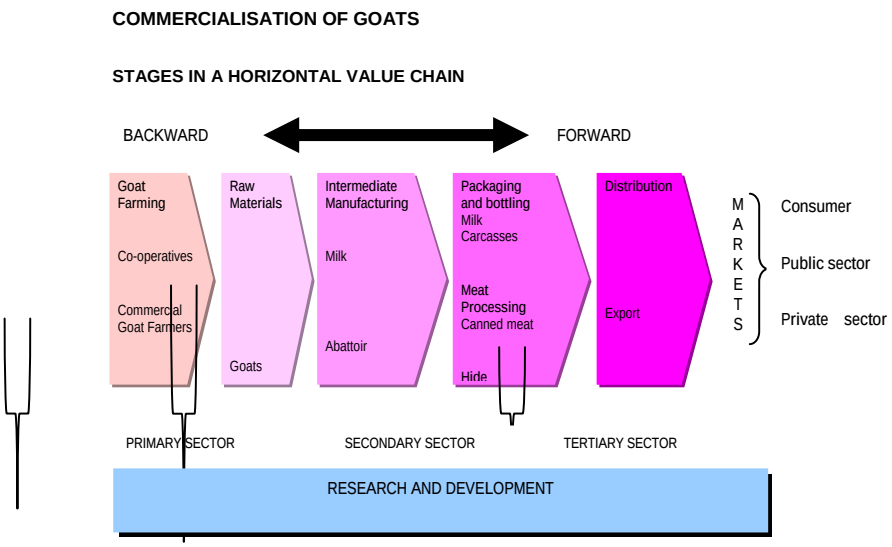
Manufacturing has been defined as the physical or chemical transformation of raw materials into new products. Manufacturing can, as part of this wider coordinated approach, invigorate the production of goods and services and create the conditions necessary for the retention and growth of output and employment in other sectors of the economy.

8.4.1 ECONOMIC LINKAGES

The relationship between the primary, secondary and tertiary sectors is crucial to optimise economic growth, job opportunities, poverty alleviation, enterprise development, beneficiation and value addition. Central to stimulating economic growth is the interrelation of these sectors. The primary sector output depends mainly on the mining and agriculture. The manufacturing sector is the locus for stimulating and optimising the growth potential of the primary and tertiary sectors. It is of critical importance that the forward and backward linkages are established amongst these sectors so as to optimise the sector outputs which will increase growth of the district economy. The backward linkage forms the basis of the supplier and the forward linkages will be demand for goods and services.

The figure below is an example of how the sectors complement each other to optimise value addition and beneficiation of raw material in the district and illustrates how the horizontal value chain can be utilised in the goat industry. The

"Commercialization of Goats" is a program that identifies all the forward and backward linkages within the economic sectors of the goat industry.



8.4.2 INDUSTRY ANALYSIS

The economy of Pixley ka Seme district is primary sector focused. The secondary sector is underdeveloped and has the potential for expansion through the beneficiation of the primary sector outputs. This will, however, require a conscientious effort by all stakeholders to position Pixley ka Seme as leader and to sustain and enhance its competitive edge as it will be continuously to global forces of change. The most important global force is the increasing economic integration of countries around the world. Government's quest to achieve an equitably shared economy for the people and create an environment to compete on the global markets, has led to a number of post democratic economic reforms such as RDP, GEAR, IDP, PGDS and ASGI-SA

In addition to these broad macro-economic policy reforms government introduced industrial and technological policy reforms directed at encouraging downstream, integrated value addition and beneficiation of the natural resources and raw materials which has continuously been exported without adding value. The Integrated Manufacturing Strategy (IMS) emphasises beneficiation of raw material, increased value addition and the strengthening of vertical and horizontal linkages at its centre. The focus is to take advantage of the upstream and downstream activities that can be initiated from the secondary sector. Another strategy the is the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS) that establishes a framework for government action to support industrial development, specifically as it relates to research, technology and productive capacities. This strategy provides for the establishment of technology centres and innovation networks which, while national in scope, require concrete actions at a local level.

The other policy reforms brought about is the Integrated Small Enterprise Development Strategy which is directed at supporting SMME's, the Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment Act which seeks to address and ensure

meaningful participation of historically disadvantage people in the economy. Lastly an initiative was undertaken by government to accelerate shared growth viz. Accelerated shared growth initiative of South Africa (ASGI-SA).The objective lays out a set of initiatives to sustain higher and shared growth.

8.4.3 SECTOR PROFILE

Key findings of the sector profile analysis is that agriculture is the key economic activity with Siyancuma, Ubuntu and Siyathemba municipalities adding the most value in this sector and contributing 28,49% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) but only 2,12% to the national GVA. The mining sector contribution to the GDPR is less than agriculture contributing only 1,14% to the provincial GVA in this sector, with approximately 95% being attributed to that of Siyancuma municipality. The manufacturing sector in the district contributes 7.76%/11.14% to the provincial GVA in this sector. The Siyancuma and Emthanjeni municipalities contribute approximately 41.9%/ 45.4% and 17.5%/18.22% to the provincial gross value added (GVA) in this sector.

The sector profile analysis identifies a number of challenges that include:
- Creation of a growing and sustainable economy.
- Creating access to quality work and poverty alleviation
- Building competitive clusters
- Skills development
- Creating an enabling environment for Enterprise development (focussing on manufacturing)
- Commitment of stakeholders
- Research and Development Institute.
- Attracting FDI

The opportunities identified are
- Maximising the beneficiation and value addition of the natural resource in mining and agriculture.
- Vast and under utilized ares of land.
- Existing infrastructure – De Aar railway: Transport network.
- Establishment of SMME's and BBBEE's.

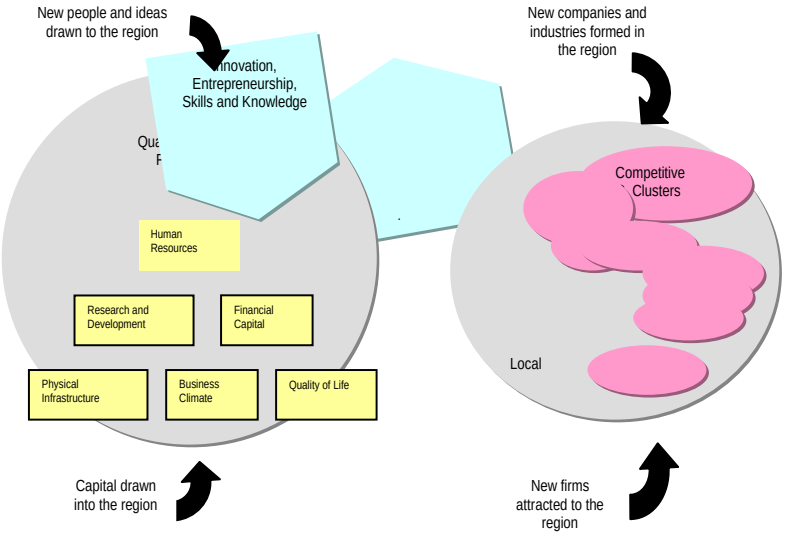
Comparative and Competitive Advantages

Pixley ka Seme should build its economy on its comparative advantages in niche areas with real potential. These need be developed into a competitive advantage through a skills mix that would ensure innovation. An example applicable to the Pixley ka Seme district is the abundance of the semi-precious stone tiger's eye in the district. The presence of the mineral provides a unique comparative advantage to the district and is available for the value-adding process but this has not occurred. To develop the competitive advantage globally with respect to tiger's eye requires interventions that would enable maximizing the resident potential regarding the building blocks for competitive advantage. An important intervention would be the establishment of a manufacturing cluster to facilitate and take forward the manufacturing opportunities identified in this strategy.

8.4.4 BUILDING COMPETITIVE CLUSTERS

The model below shows the inter-relatedness of “Local Goods and Services” and “Quality Economic Foundation”. Quality Economic Foundation will be the role of government as facilitator and enabler to some extent. Local Goods and Services will be the partnerships established between government, private sector, SOEs and the communities of Pixley a Seme.

Building Competitive Clusters



A multi-dimensional process

A competitive cluster which resides with “Local Goods and Services” attracts new firms to the district by creating opportunities for new industries and companies. The role of a “Quality Economic Foundation” is in facilitating human resources, research and development; financial capital, physical infrastructure, business climate and quality of life.

Clusters represent an alternative way of organising the value chain that can be positioned somewhere between arm’s length markets on the one hand and hierarchies, or vertical integration, on the other. Compared with market transactions among dispersed and random buyers and sellers, the proximity of firms in clusters and the repeated exchanges between them-fosters communication, coordination, innovation, and trust.

It is important to note at this stage that government, and more especially local government, has a major role in creating an enabling environment and facilitating various processes. No single part of this model is more important, the synergies emerge maximally when all the parts operates effectively and efficiently. Clusters bring about, amongst other, the following productivity, innovation and new business formation.

The role of government and especially municipalities is critical in the success of leveraging the district opportunities. Below are some of the roles and responsibilities of government:

- Develop and Facilitate local business growth
- Enterprises Development
- Encourage Foreign Direct Investment
- Investment in Hard Infrastructure
- Investment in Soft Infrastructure
- Sector and Cluster Development

8.4.5 INFORMATION, COMMUNICATIONS AND TECHNOLOGY

The fact that the district is very sparsely populated becomes a challenge in conducting effective and efficient business cost effectively. Information, communication and technology can shorten these distances and improve the district's comparative and competitive edges. Rapid deployment of ICT infrastructure, including fibre optic, other broadband and wireless networks needs to take place. Information and telecommunications technology is the fastest growing and most dynamic industry and access to the information highway for commerce, is just as important as a railway line or road.

It is essential that the district get a full understanding of the type, scale and distribution of telecommunications infrastructure serving Pixley ka Seme. In the 20th century, as the provision of piped services, like water and sewers, created development opportunities so will telecommunications 'pipes' create enormous development opportunities in the 21st century. Pixley ka Seme need to prepare a strategic plan to ensure the continued expansion and broad distribution of high capacity, high speed telecommunication infrastructure to serve industry, businesses and residents.

8.4.6 STRATEGIC THRUSTS AND STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS

The development of the manufacturing sector requires the collaborative efforts of government, private sector and civil society. This approach results in setting the strategic direction of the manufacturing strategy.

Thus the following strategic thrusts have been identified:

- To Promote and Support Enterprise development
  - ❖ To facilitate the transformation of enterprises in the second economy of Pixley ka Seme.
  - ❖ To facilitate support and training for entrepreneurs.
  - ❖ Strengthen support for entrepreneurs to access funds.

- To create an enabling environment for manufacturers

- ❖ Remove all constraints that impedes the development of the manufacturing centre
- ❖ Create the appropriate infrastructure for enterprise development
- ❖ Facilitate the development of manufacturing centre's
- ❖ Facilitate the development of manufacturing clusters

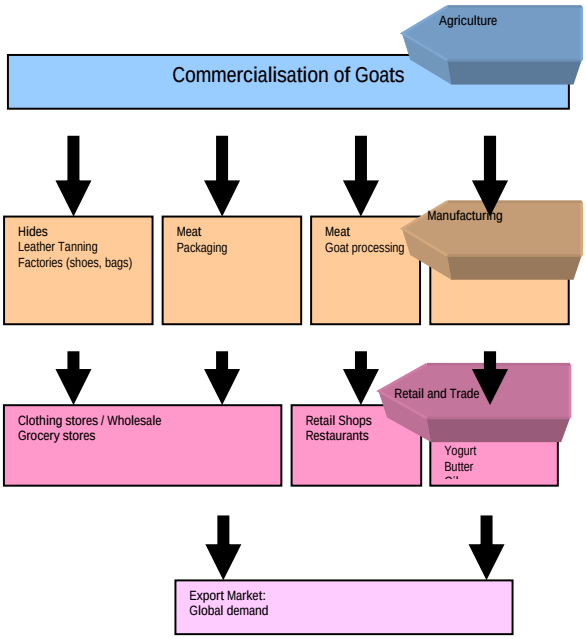
- Support skills development and promote research and development
  - ❖ Establish centre's of innovation and learning networks

8.4.7 PROPOSED IMPACT PROJECTS FOR PIXLEY ka SEME

Commercialisation of Goats model

Roles and Functions of Municipalities

Enterprise Devel



Research and Development

This model unpacks all the various downstream opportunities within the agro-processing sector.

Opportunities that exist in this sector, amongst others, are leather tanning, leather goods manufacturing (shoes, bags and belts), meat canning and manufacturing diary products such as fresh milk, cheese, yogurt and butter.

Revitalisation of the Railway hub to promote manufacturing sector in the heavy industries. (Douglas-Belmont and De Aar-Nakop)

The regional Pixley ka Seme town of De Aar was the main rail junction of South Africa linking several rail routes around South Africa.
De Aar, which previously used to be a railway junction, ceased to function as such due to the rationalisation programme of Spoornet. Whilst at National level Transnet proposes to increase rail freight usage by 30%, and minimize road freight usage. On the other hand, the ASGI-SA attempt to roll back the backlog that has emerged in public infrastructure, in which public sector investment is planned to rise to 8% of GDP.

To reactivate the stagnating economy of the district may require capitalising on the opportunity to revitalise the existing infrastructure to, once again, establish De Aar as a railway junction and by leveraging Transnet's R40 billion expenditure on a range of core projects which will include wagons and locomotives and upgrade of major export routes and container and bulk goods terminals.

The challenge now would be to involve all stakeholders, including the affected municipal, provincial and national governments, including SOE's and the private sector to support this initiative which will create an enabling environment for the development of a manufacturing cluster centred on the railway junction.

Projects to Support the above Initiative

Project 1: Trailer and Tankers Manufacturing Business

All the different sectors require trailers from mining through to agriculture. If De Aar is to be a transport and railway hub, it could be the ideal site for trailer manufacturing. Trailers here refer to the large trailers that are hitched to the trucks. Trailers and tankers could be used for:

- Transporting bulk and heavy items for construction, mining etc
- Transporting maize and other agricultural products.
- Transporting water, sensitive chemicals, petrol etc

The making of trailers involves the making of the bodies and could include local manufacture of suspensions (not as daunting as it sounds) and will include electrical and other mechanical inputs. The making of truck bodies and truck refurbishment could be incorporated into the business. It may make good commercial sense and add to the viability of De Aar as a transport hub to have a trailer manufacturing business set up there.

Key requirements for the trailer and tankers manufacturing business are:

- Good client base, domestically and globally;
- Large premises; and
- Capital costs and bridging finance for working capital requirements.

The industry for tankers and trailers is significantly monopolised but there is a very large demand for trailers and tankers across the country and globally. This in itself presents an opportunity for a transformation in this industry. It makes good commercial sense and will add to the viability of De Aar as a railway junction to have a trailer manufacturing business set up there. It also provides an opportunity to have access to the export market for this type of product.

Project 2: Supply of Engineering and Related Inputs

For the trailer business as well as for mining, agriculture, transport, construction and infrastructure development sectors, there is a need for a number of other products, including bearings, belts, valves, seals, power transmission equipment, motor vehicle and truck spares. A business can be set up to allow for this. This can be a highly lucrative business e.g. just the bearings market in SA is worth over R2bn per annum in gross revenues.

To establish such a business a number of factors will need to be addressed, inter alia:

- Market analysis
- Sourcing of supplies on terms that enable a local business to be viable.
- Product training
- Management and customer relationship training

This business will also enable mining and other established businesses to meet BEE procurement obligations.

Project 3: Heavy Equipment Supplies

Heavy equipment here relates to bulldozers, pans, loaders, etc that are used by mining, agriculture and construction related companies. The supply of heavy equipment is generally in the hands of white businesses and has historically proven to be extremely profitable. If the initial assessment is that it cannot stand alone, then it could be linked to the supply of engineering and related products to create a stronger business proposition.

Project 4: Other supplies

Various other requirements, e.g. office stationery and equipment, construction inputs (e.g. cement) can also be mobilised around. The viability of this will have to be considered. One approach will be to create a district wide “supermarket” for the supply of all requirements noted in the projects above. In this way at least one business can be set up centrally in the district and then branches could be then created over time on a local empowerment basis.

Project 5: Alternate building construction methodologies

From affordable houses through to buildings required for mining etc, the use of alternate building systems can be considered using magnesium oxide boards that are:

- More cost effective increasing savings to businesses and affordability of homes for the poor.
- Easier to build with so local people can be quickly trained
- Does not burn
- Is thermally superior (warm in winter and cooler in summer)
- Enables the roll out of clinics and schools on a more cost effective basis.

Projects using this methodology have already been implemented in other provinces.

Project 6: Telecommunications

Although the critical mass will have to be looked at, there is a need to assess and devise projects at a wireless telecoms level utilising cost effective solutions incorporating existing satellite infrastructure and terrestrial repeater networks. The viability of this will first have to be established but district economic growth will require an appropriate telecommunications solution which can also relay 2010.

These projects will enable the railway junction to become viable and cost effective by transporting these various goods. In addition to the above projects the railway junction will be an ideal method to transport all high mass low value products and agricultural goods to their different markets.

8.4.7 CONCLUSION

The strategy provides the framework for the growth of the manufacturing industry in the district. The implementation of this strategy will lead to the creation of jobs, developing of skills leading to growth of the economy. For the strategy to be successful, both government and private sector will have to play a pivotal role.

8.5 TOURISM

8.5.1 INTRODUCTION

Located in the Northern Cape, the Pixley Ka Sema district stretches from the municipalities of Ubuntu right through to Usombomvu. The district has had very

little activity in the tourism sector but through various initiatives, it has enormous potential to grow.

The strategy was formulated to fulfill the alignment and achievement of the economic and social imperatives in the district in relation to the respective value chain/s within the tourism sector. Further to which certain high level interventions where identified that would set the course in executing the strategy.

PkS is intent on moving into a phase of development as a destination for tourism. However, it should be realised that tourism is not the solution to all social and economic problems facing either South Africa or PkS. It is a highly competitive international business. An integrated development strategy that provides leadership and direction is an important step towards the implementation of many existing and planned initiatives and the overall delivery of tourism in the district.

8.5.2 POLICY INFLUENCES

A review was done of the national, provincial and local statutory and strategic frameworks that have broad relevance to the development of tourism in PkS. The analysis of existing policies and strategies aims at providing an understanding of the policy principles and strategic approaches directing and regulating the development and management of tourism in PkS.

The following where some of the key documents that where reviewed:

- White Paper on Tourism Development
- National Tourism Spatial and Infrastructure Investment Framework
- Local government: Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000
- Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (NCPGDS) 2004-2014
- White Paper – The Development and Promotion of Tourism in the Northern Cape, October 2005

The key points from this review process are articulated below.

National Tourism Vision

To develop the tourism sector as a national priority in a sustainable and acceptable manner, so that it will contribute significantly to the improvement of the quality of life of every South African. As a lead sector within the national economic strategy, a globally competitive tourism industry will be a major force in the reconstruction and development efforts of the government.

Vision for tourism in the Northern Cape

To be the preferred adventure and ecotourism destination in South Africa that is recognized for its cultural heritage and special interest tourism offering through the responsible development of natural and cultural resources.

The following are some of the key **objectives that** support the 2015 vision of the Northern Cape:

- To be visitor focused;

- To match products to markets;
- To develop a unique destination positioning;
- To customize experiences through packaging;
- To streamline the institutional structure; and
- To optimise human and financial resources;

The following **targets** are set as outcomes for this policy (Rand values at 2005 prices):

- Increase international visitor arrivals from 190,725 in 2005 to 411,742 by 2015, representing a compounded growth rate of 8% per annum;
- Increase international tourism earnings from R1.33 billion in 2005 to R2.85 billion by 2015;
- Increase domestic visitor trips from 879 328 in 2005 to 1 432 337 by 2015, representing a compounded growth rate of 5% per annum.
- Increase domestic tourism earnings from R1.38 billion in 2005 to R2,25 billion by 2015.
- Create 40 534 additional jobs through tourism by 2015 (using a formula of 1 job per 10 additional foreign tourists and 1 job per 30 additional domestic tourism trips attracted).

Furthermore the interventions identified in the white paper are the following:

- Developing a marketing strategy
- Product Development
- Expanding and developing tourism within a framework of spatial clusters
- Building superior human resource capacity

8.5.3 PROFILE OF THE PKS DISTRICT

Over the past thirty years there has been global decline in the job creation potential of traditional sectors of the economy and this has led to a phenomenon known as jobless growth in which the creation of employment has become a challenge for governments across the globe. Travel, leisure and tourism have emerged as drivers to a “new economy” based upon services.

The South African economy has been steadily improving in the last decade. Growth has however not been strong enough to alleviate past social imbalances or impact the high employment rate. South Africa is in urgent need of a significant economic boost to break the cycle. The socio economic challenges of PkS make accelerated and sustained economic growth an absolute priority. Duplication causes wastage and should have no role in economic development and tourism in South Africa given limited resources.

The current tourism performance in the Northern Cape is as follows:

- The province is successful in the German, French and Dutch markets, attracting 7.2% of French visitors, 7.9% of German visitors and 8% of Dutch visitors to in 2003.
- The majority of international visitors to the Northern Cape are independent, self drive tourists.
- The province received less than 2% of domestic arrivals in 2003.
- The Northern Cape has been less successful in the Asian and Australasian markets, attracting between 1.5% and 2.5% of Chinese, Japanese and Indian visitors in 2003.

8.5.4 TOURISM STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK

The tourism strategic framework consists of two key parts, namely, a set of eight strategic themes and goals and the proposed short to medium term projects that are underpinned by one or more of these themes and that set the course in achieving the strategic goals.

The eight strategic themes identified are:

Linking product development to target market needs: Tourism delivers markets to products and therefore is inherently spatial. Successful tourism destinations focus on matching product to markets and providing the infrastructure to link the two. By understanding the different travel motivational factors and behavioural patterns of its target market segments, the PkS District must place emphasis on strength and diversity of products and both spatial and market linkages be forged to achieve critical mass, destination positioning and differentiation.

Achieving sustainability: The long term future of tourism in PkS is linked to developing tourism in a way that respects and protects our natural, cultural and built heritages and lifestyles, and leads to improved livelihoods for its people.

Sector alignment and partnership development: More effective partnerships and alignment are required between public and private sectors, between different spheres of government, industry and communities. Alignment and sector efficiency is achieved through clear definition of roles and responsibilities, rationalisation of activities and avoidance of duplication. Clarity regarding the relationship between tourism development and tourism marketing, and the functions of the mandated organisations is a key issue.

Investment facilitation: Private and public investment in tourism facilities and infrastructure, is the backbone of tourism development. An investment environment conducive to attracting investment in tourism and general commercial activity is a key challenge in this respect.

People development: For the tourism sector to succeed and contribute to the livelihoods of the people it must be supported by appropriate strategies for the training and skills-building and economic empowerment of individuals and small

businesses.

Quality service and standards delivery: There must be close alignment between the promises made to visitors and the products delivered. This requires PkS getting it right in terms of accessibility, safety, cleanliness, service provision and quality, information provision, citizen attitude etc.

Destination marketing as it relates to product development: Closer links are required between these two areas to safeguard the sustainability of growth. A coherent and balanced approach to the branding of the city, yield optimisation, matching markets and products, and marketing activities is required. Significant investment in product and market development is a requirement.

On-going and focused research: Tourism is knowledge and information based sector. The tourism sector in PkS has yet to realise the full benefits to be gained from strategic research

Table 121: The goals and strategic issues aligned to these themes are outlined in the table bellow:

STRATEGIC THEME	GOAL	STRATEGIC ISSUES
Linking product to market	Meeting visitor requirements through world class product provision	• Product development • Target market profiles • Product diversity • Destination differentiation • Positioning • Changing marketplace
Meeting visitor requirements through world class product provision	Protecting and conserving resources for a sustainable future and supporting sustainable livelihoods	• National tourism guidelines • District tourism policy • Livelihood alternatives • Industry practice • Citizen awareness • Visitor awareness
Sector alignment and partnerships	Providing leadership and working in partnership	• Roles and responsibilities • Partnerships • Resource sharing • Minimising duplication • Ownership structures • Resource sharing • Co-operation
Investment facilitation	Facilitating investment and commercial activity for sustainable growth and economic prosperity	• Investment approach • Connectivity • Transport and associated infrastructure • Delivery infrastructure • Spatial imbalances • Bankable projects
People	Investing in people for long term future	• Community involvement • Social inclusion • Improving skills • Economic empowerment • Business development support • Technical financial assistance • Educational programs
Service and standards delivery	Delivering a world-class visitor experience through quality service and standards	• Service quality • Civic pride • Citizen attitude • Safety and security • Cleanliness • Visitor expectations • Quality assurance systems
Destination marketing and product development	Marketing PKS more effectively as a unique, vibrant, all year round destination	• Product development • Seasonality • Market segmentation • Events • Information provision • Market intelligence • Branding
Focused	Ongoing research	• Economic data

The identified tourism development goals cannot be realised in isolation. The achievement of each is linked to the delivery of the others. These goals are based on the premise that there are important social, economic, environmental, heritage, and cultural needs that can be met through tourism. However, tourism is not a benign activity unless it is properly planned for and managed. There must be serious consideration given to not encouraging and facilitating tourism development that has negative impacts or does not address the poverty issue.

8.5.5 TOURISM INTERVENTIONS / PROJECTS

8.5.5.1 EXISTING PROJECTS:

The following is existing tourism related projects within the PkS District at present. However based on the above strategic approach it is recommended that these projects be considered and aligned within the framework of the proposed strategic themes.

- "***Rolfontein Outdoor Wilderness School"***

  The aim of this project is to establish an outdoor wilderness school targeting with the youth. Youth will be given the opportunity to participate in activities such as hunting, archery, fishing, adventure sports and first aid training. The average number that will be accommodated is 60. Work on the project is nearly complete and investment is estimated at R7,5 million.

- ***The Re-Development and Expansion of the Wildebeest Kuil Rock Art Centre***

  The vision of this project is to establish a 'world class tourism facility which offers the opportunity to engage with the !Xun and Khwe San in a manner that truly excites the five senses' and 'to deliver the best San cultural experience in the world'.

- ***The Re-Development and Expansion of the Boesmansgat Resort***

  Boesmansgat is a deep sinkhole and is a world famous technical deep diving site. The project aims to use this unique feature to build a resort that will include guided game drives and sundowners at the waterhole. The project has started and estimated investment is R7 million.

- ***The Re-Development and Expansion of the Douglas Holiday Resort***

- ***The Re-Development and Expansion of the Die Bos Resort***

These projects should be approached in an integrated manner such that they compliment each other, eg, the wilderness school should gear for training people for the 3 resorts as well as for the Rock Art Centre and establishing a information center related to tourism in the area.

8.5.5.2 PROPOSED ADDITIONAL PROJECTS

Product Development

While the above existing projects are considered as specific interventions, they do not necessarily constitute tourism products. Products are something a customer buys and takes home, and that is exactly what happens with effective heritage tourism – the customer buys an experience and takes home the memories. They may also take home souvenirs and clothes but those are meaningless without being connected to the experience. The real heritage tourism product is the experience and is based on the characteristics of a real, authentic place that already exists. The cost to develop heritage tourism products is comparatively low. Heritage tourism product development is about developing experiences based on the characteristics of our communities and rural countryside that are meaningful to our potential customers. The following are three key product areas that will be considered for the PkS District:

Educational Tourism

The concept is to develop various products focused on the educational value for children, students and grown ups. The products will consist of a combination of theme specific products sets as well as products that consist of combined sets across different thematic areas. Thereby giving flexibility and allowing for combining and changing product sets in order to meet the needs of the relevant market segments. The primary market segment is the family market, and the strategy is to target kids as decision makers and parents as the purchasers of these products. History, culture, nature and wildlife; can be considered as a possible theme areas in this regard:

Adventure Tourism

This is similar to educational tourism and will have the same theme areas but the product sets developed will be focused on adventure and excitement related activities. The primary market for these products will be adults interested in adventures, eco-tourism, 4x4 trailing and hiking. The products will consist of a combination of theme specific products sets as well as products that consist of combined sets across different thematic areas. In each of the areas destination specific sub products will be developed, and these will be combined across the areas.

Corporate Tourism

The concept here is to target corporate getaways with a combination of the above products and additional products developed specifically for corporate related activity such as conferences, team building missions, strategic getaways, etc. Furthermore the corporate tourists who do come will be targeted for comebacks to the province with their families for personal getaways and recreation.

However, in order to derive the full value of this approach the above concepts have to be developed into detailed product plans and the required execution and operational plans required to take to market. It is thus proposed that a task team be put in place to develop product sets centered around these projects. In turn these product sets will be used for the marketing campaign stated below.

Marketing Campaign

In retrospect tourism marketing and awareness in general within South Africa has primarily been considered in the context of foreign tourists; however the potential for tourism activity within the local population has largely been untapped. Further to this the tourism focus has been on recreation tourism and destinations and activities have been marketed in isolation. Thus holistic products that appeal to the market have not been clearly defined or developed. As such within the context of the PKS District the opportunity exits to productise tourism in a unique manner that will differentiate it from other areas and destinations in South Africa.

As such it is proposed that using the above existing projects and the proposed products to be developed as the basis for a marketing campaign that promotes the PKS area.

The task team that is set up to develop the products should also be tasked with the marketing campaign with the assistance of an external marketing agency.

Information Center

As an extension of the marketing campaign an information centre should be established to provide prospective tourists with relevant and detailed information. The information centre will consist of the following:

- Call Centre
- Website
- Print Material (Brochures, pamphlets, maps etc)
- Physical Information Center (Located in De Aar)

The above proposed projects are considered as short to medium term interventions. These have been proposed as the most relevant in order to catalyse the development of tourism in the PKS district. They will act as a basis from which future interventions and projects will be identified but at the same time allow for placing PKS on the map as a tourism destination.

8.6 WHOLESALE AND RETAIL STRATEGY

8.6.1. INTRODUCTION

This document is intended to provide a suitable strategy and recommended implementation outline for the PkS district in delivering the required actions in retaining and attracting investment in the district. As such the document was formulated in the following manner:

- Analysis of the current situation of the retail sector
- Analysis of the existing legislation and policy regarding local economic development
- General overview of the Northern Cape Province and the PkS District
- Global Best Practices on retention and attraction strategies
- Implementation of recommendations for the proposed strategies.

8.6.2. POLICY FRAMEWORK

Optimal land is a catalyst for economic growth and it is thus important to find the most suitable use for land. Legislation concerning land management, post 1994 contains attributes such as democratic governance, environmental awareness, and an economic growth perspective to mention a few, with integration as a tool of calibration.

The IDP consists of a Spatial Development Framework, which should, give guidelines as to town planning and should also use geographical representations. All factors affected by development should be carefully considered, for example, the economic, social, political, infrastructural and the environmental impact. The municipal SDF is vitally important due to its detailed nature and the real effect it will produce in terms of depicting the use of a certain piece of land.

The NSDP was produced to enhance integration and alignment of spatial choices across all spheres of government. It lays down high-level objectives for spatial planning and defines the national space economy. It identifies the development potential of localities which summarizes key demographic, economic and environmental trends and sets norms and principles to guide the spatial priorities concerning government. It also creates categories of development as listed below:

- Innovation and experimentation
- Production, non-labor intensive local\global niche market goods
- Production, labor intensive, mass-produced goods
- Public services and Administration
- Retail and services
- Tourism

These categories of development help identify the relative comparative advantage of all levels of government concerning investment spending on infrastructure and development.

In order to achieve these objectives various interventions, strategies and programmes have been outlined that form a core element of the NCPGDS.

8.6.3. PRINCIPLES OF THE STRATEGY

Vision

To be the preferred area of business for the retail and wholesale sector in the Northern Cape Province

Mission

To retain existing business in the sector and to attract new investment and growth in retail and wholesale

Objectives

- Advocate small business ventures – then micro enterprise mentoring/training and marketing assistance;
- Retail & Wholesale Business development – encourage diversification, value in added;
- Leverage existing business enterprises to create additional business ventures
- Clusters to support “critical mass”.

STRATEGIES

The following is a list of the identified strategies:

- Strategy 1: Ensure effective and coordinated management and active marketing of the environment
- Strategy 2: Expand and diversify the residential and social environment
- Strategy 3: Improve accessibility, movement and associated visibility
- Strategy 4: Ensure existing business retention and attraction of new emerging businesses

These strategies are aimed at utilising existing economic strengths and opportunities and transferring these into workable programmes. Furthermore, an integrated approach is needed to ensure an optimal rate of implementation and economic development district. Programmes are developed to support the various strategies with the main aim of addressing issues within the specific market.

The strategies, including their associated programmes and projects are detailed below:

Strategy 1: Ensure effective, coordinated and improved management and active marketing of the district

The District must ensure improved management of taxis, informal traders, by-law enforcement, safety and security and visible policing, upgrading public facilities, improving public transport and traffic flow, improving street lighting, providing facilities for minibus taxis, refurbishing parking space and addressing cleanliness. In addition to this, improved management of the environment is also required. A redevelopment of building and shopping centres in terms of catering for informal traders, improving the public furniture of fountains, seating, etc is required. PkS District Municipality must continue to invest in and improve the quality of its built and natural environment, in order to remain on an equal footing with other competing nodes. The quality of the neighbourhoods, education sector and urban design as well as employment areas, roads, streets, sidewalks and public transit have a direct impact on the quality of life and therefore on the competitiveness. The main programmes identified to implement this strategy include:

Programme 1: Establish a management committee
The management committee needs to have senior representation from PkS District Municipality and other key public stakeholder buy-in so as to ensure the strategy is implemented successfully.

Programme 2: Promote improved public and private attractions
To ensure good quality attractions a mix of public and private attractions are required

Programme 3: Enhance and develop the image of the area
Related to the quality of the environment and the attraction of workers, residents and visitors is the image of the area. It is therefore important that there is a programme of improvement to enhance and develop the image and environment and to present an attractive new image.

Programme 4: Promote active marketing of area
In order to give visitors and residents a reason to return to the area requires effective and overall promotion of the attractions on an ongoing basis. The creation of sales and special events establishes PkS as a place of activity with something new and interesting always happening.

Programme 5: Consolidation and management of informal trade
It is essential to consolidate and manage the informal retail in the area. Dedicated spaces for trading need to be provided in areas that are most accessible to commuters.

Strategy 2: Expand and diversify the residential and social environment

The opportunity exists to expand the residential market, by focusing on the creation of middle income walk-ups in the area surrounding the core CBD areas within the District. Furthermore, the majority of the clientele/visitors to the areas come from lower income areas and it is also essential to include a residential market for the lower income households such as social housing. This will allow higher densities and bring more people into the various areas and will ensure the diversification of the residential market and will also increase local support for retailers, increase business development (as people chose to work close to where they live), and provide incentives for the creation of additional recreation and entertainment space.

The main programmes identified to implement this strategy include:

Programme 1: Social housing programme.
A programme, which focuses on providing affordable housing and accommodation in the area, is required.

Programme 2: Support education and training cluster programme
The introduction of social facilities such as additional education facilities and training, which are fundamental to the success of the area, should be introduced and supported

Strategy 3: Improve accessibility, movement and associated visibility
Movement needs to be enhanced by removal and/or improved management of the obstacles to movement, such as parking. Traffic from surrounding areas and in and out movement needs to be facilitated by decongestion and improved accessibility. There is also a need to create a number of transport facilities such as more taxi ranks, bus terminus, etc

The main programmes identified to implement this strategy include:

Programme 1: Looking at parking ratios
A programme is required which looks at parking ratios and removes the large amount of vacant parking and integrating parking in the core CBD.

Programme 2: Identify anchor development
This anchor and the strategically located transport facilities will improve traffic and pedestrian movement through the CBD areas. The strengthening of the civic precinct as an anchor with additional functions such as clinics, libraries etc.

Programme 3: Promote the development of entertainment and recreation anchors
The ongoing promotion and development of entertainment anchors needs to be encouraged to increase economic opportunities from taxi commuter flows. Combining retail with entertainment should be examined

Strategy 4: Ensure existing business retention and attraction of new emerging businesses

Business development is designated as the most important economic development issue that needs attention in the PkS District. Improving the economic viability of new and existing businesses in PkS is seen as one of the critical drivers of the local economy. A successful business cluster underpins the vital cycle for jobs, tax base, public services and continuing economic prosperity for the region. Business retention and attraction is required for the office, retail and industrial market.

To ensure successful and sustainable development of the office market within the PkS economy, it is essential to have a guiding body, which gives advice and helps in marketing processes. Therefore, a business retention initiative is necessary which focuses on the importance of contacting, cultivating and offering assistance to existing companies. Furthermore businesses require support from and involvement by government and stakeholders through funding, active participation and information exchange.

PkS is ideal for sub-regional head offices that are more administrative related (e.g. telemarketers, IT, etc). The retail sector of PkS is not widely diversified and there is a need for increased variety that caters predominantly for the needs of lower income clientele, as well as focusing on creating niche markets for office workers, taxi commuters and residents from the residential markets. The retail market needs to play a much more supportive role to office workers. This can be achieved by the creation of retail markets orientated towards providing for the requirements of office workers, business services, and promoting mobility and accessibility between retail outlets and offices.

The main programmes identified to implement this strategy include:

Programme 1: Promote a high-quality business climate
Ongoing support must be provided to create a high quality business climate. This will encourage businesses to excel, expand and improve their business undertakings. A business climate can be fostered by promoting the adoption of a presumption of compliance instead of command and control.

Programme 2: Promote access to financing, funding and business development services

Small businesses (SMME's) experience major problems in accessing finance because financial institutions require collateral for loan. There are, however, a number NGO's that provide loans to entrepreneurs and it is therefore important that local entrepreneurs have access to this type of financial support. An inventory of funding agencies to businesses should be marketd.

Programme 3: Aggressive retention programme

An aggressive retention programme is required which focuses on the importance of contacting, cultivating and offering assistance to existing companies to let them know that location and presence is valued.

Programme 4: Promote networking and matchmaking for business and encourage information sharing

Matchmaking and networking have huge potential in the creation of a viable and more competitive local economy. These networks form the basis for knowledge exchange, market penetration, cost reductions, etc through utilising local service and product providers.

Programme 5: Establish and strengthen inter-sectoral linkages

Establishing and strengthening inter-sectoral linkages is a programme that can be endorsed to bring about a job creating multiplier effects throughout the economy.

Programme 6: Ensure performance management

Effective performance management should also be conducted to measure the performance of businesses against baseline targets. This is used to determine whether businesses perform accordingly or new interventions are needed to enable them to reach higher levels of performance.

Programme 7: Undertake investor-marketing campaign

Efforts must be made to promote the positives and market the area as a smart and solid place to invest. An investor market campaign should be started to sell the area as a viable and dynamic business location and the measures are being taken to stabilise and grow the business base.

Programme 8: Develop entrepreneurial and mentoring programmes

To assist new venture formation, start-ups need to be nurtured and business services need to be promoted. Furthermore, training is extremely important to the future growth of the economy and the stimulation of entrepreneurial development with a strong linkage to the education sector.

Programme 9: Ensure retail tenant mix

Retail tenant mix needs to be promoted in the development of the mall. Retail tenant mix can include the promotion of formal retail shopping complexes, informal flea markets, etc. Retail tenant mix also entails ensuring that a variety of retail goods are sold.

Programme 10: Determination of retail business services required by surrounding businesses
A programme is required which identifies which retail services are required by the office market, such as printing, photocopying, post net, delivery services, computer services, etc. Improved timing for delivery of these services needs to be promoted.

Programme 11: Marketing of retail opportunities
Retail marketing could include identifying and advertising ideal locations for retail, promoting the development of quick stop retail shops to improve access for surrounding residents.
8.6.5. IMPLEMENTATION GUIDELINES

The following section provides programme and project prioritisation and implementation guidelines:

8.6.5.1 Strategy and Programme Prioritisation

The criteria applicable for the prioritisation of the programmes include:

- The level of potential impact of each programme in terms of high, medium and low impact
- The type of programmes including: anchor, supportive and identified needs programmes.

Anchor programmes are those strategic programmes that are aimed primarily at attaining economic development. These programmes should functionally be focused and need to represent the primary marketable development drivers of the area. ***Supportive programmes*** are those programmes that play a supporting role in both the catalytic as well as the community based programmes, i.e. the upgrade of roads or the provision of infrastructure. ***Identified need programmes***, on the other hand, are needs that have been identified by the community as being important. These programmes, like any other programme, also require facilitation, i.e. the provision of training and skills development. To ensure maximum impact the programme rated the highest should be implemented first followed by those rated at a lower level of impact and priority.

The following is a list of programmes, which need to be implemented in no particular order:

- Establish a management committee
- Promote active marketing of attractions and advantages
- Promote an aggressive retention programme
- Social Housing Programme
- Promote networking and matchmaking for business and encourage information sharing
- Develop entrepreneurial and mentoring programmes
- Determination of business services required by surrounding businesses
- Strategically located inter-modal transport facilities

- Identify anchor development
- Promote changed environment of CBD areas

8.6.5.2 Project Prioritisation

An integrated approach is needed to ensure an optimal rate of implementation and economic development of PkS. Therefore, it is necessary to ensure that the appropriate linkages and interactions between projects are established. In order to optimise the impact of these projects, a project prioritisation is undertaken. The criteria applicable for the prioritisation of the projects include:

- The level of impact of each project in terms of high, medium and low impact
- A time frame for each project, based on the time, when the project should be implemented. For instance immediate (implementable within the next 6 months).

It is important to take note that the above-mentioned programmes and projects should not be implemented in isolation but in an integrated manner. However, the prioritisation and time-frames of implementation should be followed to facilitate implementation.

8.6.6 RECOMMENDATIONS AND WAY FORWARD

Implementation of this development framework urges the need to establish the proposed institutional drivers. These establishments need to be accompanied by a political ambition to ensure success. This ambition can be initiated and developed through the inclusion of all interested and affected parties, stakeholders and role players during the planning and implementation phases. By including all of these, a political will, interest and communication is stimulated which, together will contribute in the success of the development. Another important aspect for successful implementation is to ensure that all involved take ownership of the programmes and projects. Without ownership taking of a programme and/or project, success will not be accomplished. It is also important to incorporate monitoring and evaluation elements for each of the strategies into a performance management system, to ensure accountability and responsibility for implementation and to eradicate potential conflicts.

Furthermore the greatest risk for PkS is to do nothing. Evidence of what happens to places who do not invest in their quality of life is clear, a downward spiral of disinvestments that ultimately degrades the performance of the region occurs.

The next steps are to communicate the strategic directions and action areas in this framework to the community, key government partners, and public stakeholders. This dialogue is critical - to spark new ideas, coalesce new partnerships and commit the collective energy and resources required to achieve what needs to be done.

8.7 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

8.7.1 INTRODUCTION

Strategic planning for local economic development is the cornerstone of sustainable development. This involves, amongst things, wise resource use, integrating values and forward thinking. LED processes require fresh insight, innovative ideas or a new sense of direction. It can help communities to realize vibrant, resilient and sustainable local economies capable of improving the quality of life for all. But above all, local challenges require local solutions.

LED definition
"The purpose of Local Economic Development is to build up the capacity of a local area to improve its economic future and the quality of life for all. It is a process by which government, the private sector, labour and civil society work collectively to create better conditions for economic growth and employment generation".

Local economic development encourages public, private and civil society sectors to establish partnerships and collaboratively find local solutions to common economic challenges. The LED process seeks to empower local participants to effectively utilise business enterprise, labour, capital and other local resources to achieve local priorities (e.g. to promote quality jobs, reduce poverty, generate municipal taxes etc). For LED to be successful, participants and practitioners should have knowledge of these actions and be committed to a process to achieve sustainable results. A LED strategy is process-oriented and should endeavour to incorporate:

- Local values (poverty reduction, basic needs, local jobs, integrating social and environmental values);
- Economic drivers (value-added resource use, local skills training, local income retention, regional co-operation); and
- Development (the role of structural change and quality of development).

From the above it is quite clear that LED is not about "quick fixes" or generating a list of "nice to haves". Local economic development requires a practical understanding of what the local area does well ad what it has to offer, where its weaknesses and gaps lie, what outside threats and opportunities exist, and what the local areas want or need.

In pursuit of this ideal of addressing both poverty and entrenched inequality through LED strategies the following goals and objectives have been identified for local government:

- To establish a job creating economic growth path
- To embark on sustainable rural development and urban renewal; and
- To bring the poor and disadvantaged to the centre of development.

In order to achieve these objectives, local economic development needs to be holistic, innovative, creative and redistributive.

8.7.2 LEGISLATIVE MANDATES

The legislation discussed in this document includes, inter alia, :

- The Constitution,1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996);
- The Local Government Transition Act (1996);
- White Paper on Local Government (1998);
- The Development Facilitation Act (1995);
- The Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act No. 27 of 1998);
- The Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act No. 117 of 1998);
- The Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000);
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act No. 57 of 2002);
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act No. 6 of 2004); and
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act No. 13 of 2005);

8.7.3 POLICY FRAMEWORK

The key objectives of the RDP are to meet basic needs, develop human resources, build the economy, democratise the state and society, and implement the RDP. In direct response to the RDP's objective of building the economy GEAR was developed.

The NCPGDS, the NSDP and IDP's of municipalities have also been considered and are discussed in detail in Chapter 3 of this document.
The draft policy on LED of 2002 is arguably one of the more definitive statements on pro-poor LED, also referred to as developmental LED. In terms of this draft policy local governments should pursue pro-poor development interventions that would result in methods to address poverty, inequality and social objectives. This was followed by the LED guidelines released by DPLG in 2005 which are aligned to the above policies, the PGDS and the municipal IDP's.

On funding support to achieve credible IDP's and LED a number services have been established to assist such as SEDA, skills development by Labour Department, EPWP, the MIG to leverage funding and support to SMME's ultimately to create sustainable jobs and alleviate poverty.

The ASGI-SA initiative undertaken by National government to achieve a 6% growth by 2014 identifies the following key interventions:

- Identify the Binding constraints
- Increase Infrastructure investment
- Sector strategies
- Education and skills development
- Governance and institutional interventions
- Macro-economic issues
- Eliminating the Second Economy

Local economic development is a holistic discipline and should not be looked at in isolation to other planning processes with respect to national, provincial and even what is happening globally.

8.7.4 ECONOMIC PROFILE

Agriculture is a key economic activity in the district and the mining contribution to GDPR is less than agriculture. There is a decline in the contribution made by manufacturing to the GDPR of the district and it contributes 7.6% to GVA of the district. A minimal amount of value addition or beneficiation of raw material occurs in the district.

One of the most important pre-conditions for a successful strategy will be the effectiveness with which the district can utilise the existing resources efficiently to compete locally, provincially, nationally and globally. The elimination of national trade barriers around the world has not only opened up new markets and new supply chains, but has also given business a greater choice in their location. Businesses are choosing to locate and expand in regions that have the mix of economic, social, political and other attributes for long term success. As a result, there is a renaissance in urban-based industries that are fast-growing, people are moving back to the central cities, and governments are embarking upon urban regeneration schemes. The NSDP has recognised that regions are the focal points of the national spatial economies and districts must follow through with proactive urban regeneration strategies, enterprise development and investment funding. It is within this context that strategic interventions, programs and priority projects that will enable the district to compete globally must be decided upon.

8.7.5 DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

Strategic Goals

The key strategic goals underpinning the LED development framework are the following:

- Knowledge economy driven by people power.
- An attractive district for people and investments.
- Sustainable and prosperous district
- Effective utilisation of resources through partnerships.

Opportunities

A number of opportunities exist within the various sectors and these are listed below:

Agriculture and Agro-processing, hunting, forestry and fishing

CATTLE FARMING EXPANSION

The aim of expanding cattle farming within Pixley ka Seme is to make available raw material in terms of milk, hides and meat for beneficiation and value addition. This and the availability of land, opens up cattle farming opportunities for co-operatives in the district.

GOAT FARMING EXPANSION

The district has an abundance of high quality goats and expanding goat farming could become important due to the high demand for meat and once beneficiation processes in terms of value addition begins (dairy products, leather goods etc.)

Sheep farming expansion

The same as above is valid for sheep farming and once again, it is important to stress the availability of land. Economics is about supply and demand, with this in mind, one should ensure adequate supply of raw materials at all time to service the demand for the product.

Soya bean as potentials

Soya bean farming is an excellent product for rotational farming with lucerne and maize. The value addition opportunities with Soya bean farming are huge with very little wastage and these include, amongst others, bio-diesel, high protein health foods, multi-vitamin supplements and animal food.

Pistacios

The weather conditions, availability of land and water provide alucrative opportunity pistachios farming in the district. The global demand for pistachios is very high and the market price is very high compared to other nuts. The value addition opportunities are in the chocolate and sweet market and this luxury goods market is steadily growing globally.

Fish Farming

Inland fish farms, give rise to opportunities for the construction of fish dams for breeding various fresh water fish for the export markets.

Game Farming

Game farming, and hunting in particular, provides an opportunity to attracti visitors to the district, exposing, what the district has to offer to possible investors. There are also value addition opportunities such as biltong manufacturing, guest houses and taxidermy.

Mining and Mineral Beneficiation

Taking queue from the mining strategy opens opportunities within the mining sector. The district shows evidence of the availability diamonds, semi-precious stones (Tigers eye and jasper) and uranium.

These mining opportunities will in turn offer opportunities in terms of beneficiation for of these minerals, for example, cutting and polishing factories, jewellery manufacturing, tigers eye processing plant, uranium as a alternative source of fuel; and table salt manufacturing.

Manufacturing

With opportunities within the “commercialisation of goats” programme and the huge opportunities as described earlier in terms of the various meat farming possibilities gives rise to the manufacturing opportunities in wool factories, tannery and canned meat and other meat processing.

Potatoe Chips

The Douglas area has an abundance of potato farmers, giving rise to possible potatoe chips manufacturing. This value addition process if implemented will have a snow-ball effect on other opportunities in the services sector, for example, warehousing; and transportation and trucking opportunities.

Microwave Popcorn
The Hopetown area has a small scale microwave popcorn factory; this if properly researched and marketed could be expanded to supply the global market. Microwave popcorn has developed a niche market globally, leveraging the abundant available resources in the area.
Wool
The value chain of wool offers various opportunities and current research shows a medicinal property of wool. The district could tap into this new niche market and conduct relevant research and development of health products for both the local and global markets. Current opportunities in the wool industry in clothing and textiles exist.

Furniture Factory
In the Premiers address to the province this year (2006), the premier alluded to a furniture factory for the Pixley ka Seme district. It is therefore important to investigate this manufacturing opportunity in the district.
Trailer Manufacturing (truck trailers and tankers)
The manufacturing of trailers and tankers require lots of open land for the storage of inputs as well as the manufactured products. Pixley ka Seme has abundance of open land and under utilized rail infrastructure. This will support the revitalisation of the rail infrastructure and create jobs.

Infrastructure
Government's role of developing and maintaining infrastructure will create opportunities for small businesses in the district. As the agricultural and mining sectors expand their operations, a number of developments with respect to infrastructure will be required. Hence a number of business opportunities will be produced, creating numerous jobs within this sector.

Tourism
A plethora of tourism opportunities exist in the district. Some of which need to be revived and some are new opportunities. These include the developing additional holiday resorts, river rafting and other water sports, construction of guest Houses, race horse breeding, motor rally routes, steam safari, hunting and fishing.

Transport
A strategy for improving the current rail usage must be developed to ensure effective and efficient usage of the rail infrastructure. Many opportunities mentioned in this strategy could stimulate and revive the rail usage industry, for example the manufacturing of tankers and truck trailers.

Information Communication and Technology
In Pixley ka Seme we are unfortunate that our ICT infrastructure is ineffective in terms of efficiencies. Firstly, due to Telkom's monopoly, we are forced to pay a very high price for bandwidth and secondly, still due to this monopoly, we are saddled with outdated infrastructure that has reached its end of life in various districts of which Pixley ka Seme is victim. The network coverage is also very poor in the district including cell phone coverage due to the large geographical

area of the district. ICT's are tools that can be used to shorten such distances and become a globally competitive.

The district can therefore use ICT as an enabler to assist citizens in various sectors, for example, internet access at schools and libraries, computer training incorporated at schools, and role out of Multi-Purpose Community Centres.The fact that it cuts across all the sectors shows the huge potential for SMME development in this sector and opportunities include,desktop technicians, web developers, application developers, network specialists, and database specialists.

Wholesale and Retail

The above mentioned opportunities will create a need for wholesale and retail opportunities in various markets. With the formation of clusters, various goods, raw materials and products will be identified. This market demands will have to be serviced to ensure value addition, for example, manufacturing and beneficiation as well as the demand for local consumption.

Entrepreneur and SMME Support

Government must ensure that services in support of entrepreneurs and SMME's should be established. These service centres must be capacitated with the relevant business and financial skills, as well as, have linkages to relevant clusters and research and development centres. This operating framework will ensure sustainability of business initiatives and give guidance to growing businesses. This could take for example a ICT SMME to the main stream of business.

8.7.6 STRATEGIES

Develop and Facilitate Local Business Growth

- Business retention initiatives
- Provide Technical Business Assistance
- Provide Financial Business Assistance
- Develop procurement policies with a focus on "buy local"
- Provide access to land and buildings

Enterprises Development

- Provide access to finance for new businesses
- Provide advice on business management
- Establishment of formal and informal business networks
- Establishing mentoring programs for businesses

Encourage Foreign Direct Investment

- Promoting foreign direct and inward investment.
- Appropriate hard and soft infrastructure available to support investments.
- Improving the service sector to support the investments.
- Utilise the competitive and comparative advantage of the district to attract targeted investments.

- Develop a marketing strategy to promote investment opportunities.
- Create incentive programs for investors
- Develop a investor aftercare centre

Investment in Hard Infrastructure

- Building or improving key access roads
- Improving the railway for passenger and goods services
- Developing regional industrial areas;
- Landscaping or building new science parks
- Developing commercial sites and buildings (for shops and offices)
- Increasing the availability of industrial and potable water, expanding the sewerage disposal system, the telecommunications systems and expanding the energy systems

Investment in Soft Infrastructure

- Enabling or providing skills training
- Providing business focused education and access to education
- Research and development support
- Providing business advisory services

Sector and Cluster Development

- Developing network agencies
- Supporting research and development
- Supporting cluster-focused procurement and local purchasing
- Developing and marketing clusters

Urban Renewal

- Reviving the town center projects
- Upgrading old abandoned industrial premises
- Developing science parks
- Promoting investment into growth areas
- Informal markets

Poverty Reduction in the Informal Economy

Establishment of:

- home based workers
- street traders and vendors
- Job opportunities on building sites

8.7.7 CONCLUSION

The LED framework is formulated to guide the District's economic development efforts. The importance of the LED framework is significant in the planning and implementation of LED development thrusts and programmes. From these programmes, key actions and projects are accordingly identified and prioritised.

The capacitation of the relevant local government LED offices, as well as the other government institutions, active in LED initiatives must:

- Be appropriately structured to facilitate cross-functional collaboration between the different departments and institutions.
- Appropriately capacitated in terms of resource allocations as well as adequately staffed to ensure that the deliverables are performed by these entities.
- Appropriately staffed with individuals that are motivated and committed to the development process.

It is important to note however, that the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality must posses the technical know-how and capacity to enforce these strategies. Because this is not always the case, local municipalities should take cognisance of the role of the District Municipality in the building of capacity where it is limited in local government.

9. POVERTY ALLEVIATION

9.1 INTRODUCTION

The reduction of poverty remains one of the core objectives of government in the second decade of democracy. It has been captured in the present electoral mandate and is also one of the primary objectives of the Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy. So too, the alleviation of poverty is a focal point in the Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy, a district which is arguably the most poverty stricken in the Northern Cape.

Research indicates that poverty is concentrated mainly in the rural areas and the urban poor are constituted to a large extent by migrants from the rural areas. It shows further that poverty is closely related to lack of education, low life expectancy, malnutrition, high mortality rate and sub-standard housing. Rural poverty is associated with landlessness. Even in instances where the poor have access to land there is usually an absence of ownership rights. Thus the incentive structure and institutions are not conducive to improving the income earning capacity of the poor.

The Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) distinguish between two types of poverty, namely, absolute poverty and relative poverty. Whilst ***absolute poverty*** is defined as the cost of the minimum necessities needed to sustain human life, ***relative poverty*** is defined as the minimum economic, social, political and cultural goods needed to maintain an acceptable way of life in a particular society.

The PGDS also talks about the following inter-related aspects of poverty:

- Poverty of money - this results in the inability to accumulate assets which is the key ingredient to the creation of wealth and breaking the cycle of poverty.
- Poverty of access - not having access to basic infrastructure and services; and

- Poverty of power - the poor suffer from both traditional and environmental health risks and lack access to information

A useful conceptual base for understanding poverty alleviation policy formulation is the ***asset vulnerability framework***. Vulnerability is closely linked to asset ownership. It is appreciated that vulnerability to poverty is countered by the asset bases of the poor and by the management of their complex range of assets particularly in times of crises. At least four broad categories of assets have been identified. These are:

- Human capital such as labour, education and health
- Social and institutional assets including household relations, trust and access to decision making
- Natural resources such as land, water, common property etc
- Human made assets that include housing, productive infrastructure and social infrastructure.

From the perspective of this asset vulnerability framework, poverty is characterised by not only a lack of assets and the poor's inability to accumulate an asset portfolio, but by also an inability to devise an appropriate coping or management strategy. The key issues in anti-poverty strategies are therefore to build up the asset base of the poor and to increase their capabilities to manage their existing portfolio of assets.

9.2. POLICY FRAMEWORK

The socio-economic conditions inherited at the onset of democracy, in 1994, had the following consequences:

- Deteriorating living standards;
- High levels of inequality with respect to race, gender, income and space; and
- High levels of poverty.

To address these socio-economic crises, the Freedom Charter was used as the programme of the people of our country for the creation of a truly democratic, non-racial, non-sexist, united, prosperous country and a basic equitably shared economy for the people. Government's quest to achieve this vision has led to a number of social, macro and micro-economic reforms to meet these challenges and reintegrate South Africa into the global economy of economic reforms. These include the following:

Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP)
The RDP is a coherent socio-economic policy framework to address economic growth and social development. It sets the institutional framework for the alleviation of poverty and inequality and is an important policy guide for integrating development policies of South Africa. The five key programmes of the RDP are:

- Meeting basic needs;
- Developing human resources;
- Building the economy;
- Democratising the state and society, and
- Implementation of the RDP.

Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR)
GEAR is a macro-economic strategy designed to address growth, employment and the redistribution of wealth. The strategy recognises that a sustained reduction in inequality requires accelerated job creation, which in turn requires structural transformation to achieve higher and more labour-absorbing shared growth within the economy.

The core elements of GEAR with respect to the impact on poverty and inequality are:

- Re-prioritisation of the government's budget towards social spending;
- Acceleration of the fiscal reform process;
- Gradual relaxation of exchange controls;
- Consolidation of trade and industrial reforms;
- public sector restructuring;
- Structured labour market flexibility with collective bargaining; and
- Establishing policy frameworks for delivery of social services.

Micro-Economic Reform Strategy (MERS)
The Micro-Economic Reform Strategy which is directed at impacting on three key performance areas, viz. growth, employment and equity, and has the following three core elements:

- Investing in real economic fundamentals;
- Expanding the efficiency of and expanding access to services in four input sectors; and
- Developing the growth, employment and equity potential of selected priority sectors.

Accelerated Shared Growth Initiative – South Africa (ASGI-SA)
ASGI-SA is a set of interventions for accelerated and shared growth. The key interventions identified to be implemented as part of the ASGI-SA are:

- Increased infrastructure investment
- Focussing on sector strategies
- Education and skills development
- Eliminating the Second Economy
- Macro-economic issues; and
- Governance and institutional interventions

9.3 POVERTY ANALYSIS
TRENDS IN THE INCIDENCE OF POVERTY

Minimum Living Level (MLL)

Water

Pixley Ka Seme has water backlogs of about 3 587 households with Thembelihle and Siyancuma having the most backlogs.

Sanitation

The backlog in the district is households with Ubuntu, Thembelihle and Siyancuma having the most.

Electricity

MLL is defined as the minimum monthly income needed to sustain a household and varies according to household size. Approximately 60% of the population in the Pixley ka Seme district live below the minimum living level with the highest percentage in Umsobomvu at 85% and the lowest in Themebelihle at 28%.

Unemployment

Approximately 25% of the economically active population in the district is unemployed with the highest unemployment rates in Umsobomvu and Renosterberg.

Poverty Line

As at 2001, the Pixley ka Seme district had the highest number of households, 48%, living below the poverty line. This figure stood at 53% in 1996.

Access to Key Basic Services

Housing

Within the District, 82.8% of households live in formal housing, 10.8% in informal housing and only 2% in traditional houses. The total housing backlog in the district is 9,788.

There has been an increase in the use of electricity as an energy source and a decrease in the use of paraffin, gas and candles as a source of energy/lighting.

***Human Development Index* (HDI)**

The HDI is a composite index that contains three variables: life expectancy, educational attainment and real GDP per capita. The closer the index gets to 1.0, the higher the level of 'living condition'. The average HDI for the province is 0,52 and for the Pixley ka Seme district 0,49.

9.4. STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS

The interventions to address the challenges reflected above are:

- Access to basic services
- Human and social development
- Infrastructure development
- Income generation and employment creation.

9.4.1 Access to Key Basic Services

HOUSING

Objective

Eliminate the backlog by providing shelter for all by 2014.

Strategies

IMPROVE THE CAPACITY OF MUNICIPALITIES UP TO ACCREDITATION LEVEL TO FAST TRACK DELIVERY

Accreditation of municipalities would ensure better service delivery and monitoring and evaluation of projects that are implemented in their area of jurisdiction.

Improve planning of sustainable integrated human settlements

Sustainable integrated housing delivery should be planned closer to areas of economic activity and cognisant of all the community facilities and services. These include, amongst others, public access to parks, schools, clinics, transport terminals, community centres and waste disposal sites.

Availability of serviced erven

Without serviced erven, the entire delivery process becomes delayed. Planning and preparation of erven is essential to avoid derailing the delivery process.

WATER

Objective

Eliminate the backlog by increasing access to water according to acceptable standards by 2009. The target as captured in the PGDS is: “Provide clean water to all by 2009”.

Strategies

Formulate and implement water service development plans

It is essential that these be developed since it would require the management and monitoring and evaluation of a resource that is not in abundance in the area.

Improve institutional capacity to assess and monitor water resources

Since numerous water sector projects are due to be implemented in the next few years it is important that the institutional capacity to manage critical data and inventories is developed and maintained.

Improve water usage, storage, delivery and distribution

The central strategy for the water sector is to improve usage, storage, delivery and distribution. The key activities are:

- Use of dry sanitation systems or a dual flushing system..
- Water resource planning and management
- Reducing leaks in the water distribution system.
- Harvesting rainwater

Improve water conservation and management

The protection of ground water resources from over utilization and pollution is essential and harvesting rain water can be used to augment the existing supply of water.

SANITATION

Objective

Eliminate the backlog by increasing access to appropriate sanitation by 2009.

Strategies

Provide appropriate sewerage systems in specific locations

Water borne and dry sanitation can be used in the district. Efforts should be made to expand the water-borne sewerage system in areas that warrant it and to up-grade the associated treatment works. The dual flushing system, less for liquid and more for solid, could be used to conserve water in these areas.

Utilisation of Infrastructure grants to eliminate backlogs

The use of municipal and provincial infrastructure grants to eliminate sanitation backlogs have the added advantage in that EPWP can be used to provide much needed employment opportunities for in the district.

ELECTRICITY

Electricity is vital for the growth of businesses, the development of institutions and the well-being of families. Municipalities should plan ahead regarding areas of need and synchronise this with the supply of electricity by ESKOM, the sole organization with the responsibility for the bulk supply of electricity.

Objective

Eliminate the backlog by providing access to electricity.

Strategies

Provide access to electricity in areas required

A plan should be developed that would enable integrated implementation of these plans, with Eskom,

9.4.2 HUMAN AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

HEALTH

Situation Analysis

A massive challenge regarding the fair and equitable provision of Primary Health Care health services exists. The main health problems in the district are HIV and Aids and Tuberculoses. This places a huge burden on all the resources in the district. The incidence of HIV in the district is 14,41 (2004 Antenatal survey) and 17,83 (2003 Antenatal survey). Other health challenges in the district are a high incidence of low birth weight babies; a high incidence of teenage pregnancies; a high incidence of chronic diseases like hypertension and diabetes and a high incidence of foetal alcohol syndrome.

Objective

To deliver a comprehensive health care service.

Strategies

Improve Access to Quality Health Care

Government is determined to establish quality curative and preventive health care down to community level through the review of the following policy priorities:

- The establishment of a sustainable health care funding system
- Efforts to improve and maintain health facilities:

- Skills development and capacity building of health personnel.
- Improve the management of health care
- Disease Prevention programmes to control various people

Comprehensive HIV and AIDS and TB care, management and treatment

With a view of the HIV and AIDS epidemic and the current challenges in health related to extreme drug resistant TB, a transformed commitment and dedication will be required, which must be supported and strengthened.

Reducing Malnutrition

This is a high priority area to be addressed, with children under five years of age suffering the most due to lack of food.

EDUCATION

Situation Analysis

Only 3% of the population in the district has an educational qualification higher than a matriculation certificate. It is only through skills development that a growing economy can be sustained.

Objective

The following objective has been set out for human development in the PAS:

- To provide learning and teaching programmes that will translate into quality education at the various educational institutions.

Strategies

Promote childhood care and development

This focal area is highly important for poverty alleviation. Providing day care and early childhood development for children in a learning environment has strong gender implications as it enables women to work and participate in development activities while the children are cared for. It is also a significant source of employment for women in rural areas and has long term development implications as it prepares children for school.

Improve the quality in primary and secondary education

The role of government is to increase access to basic education. Some of the measures that must be implemented to improve the quality of education:

- Improve resource capacity of personnel;
- Review the curriculum to address the evolving socio-economic shortfalls;
- Revisit the current teacher-pupil ratios.

Promote informal education programmes

This strategy must be given a high priority as it is directed at some of the poorest members of the communities. Informal education programmes complement formal education programmes and cater for young school dropouts and adults who missed out on their chances to acquire an education.

Develop funding models to increase access to tertiary education

The high costs of tertiary education warrants an alternative funding model directed specifically at skills development and tertiary education. Relevant stakeholders (banks, financial institutions) should find ways of assisting government, as a part of their social responsibility, to develop the skills required to drive the economy of the district.

9.4.3 INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

Situation Analysis: De Aar Railway Junction

De Aar, which in the past used to be a railway junction and an economic driver in the district has not been able to maintain this function in recent years. The reliance of the municipality on its railway hub status, failure to diversify its economy and rationalisation programme of Spoornet has resulted in the difficulty being experienced by the district to revive its economy.

Objective

To revitalize the De Aar railway station to its former status as a railway junction

Strategy

Revitalise the De Aar railway

The promotion and development of De Aar as a main railway junction for South Africa as it was previously used, will be the impetus required to assist in the development of stagnating towns in the district e.g. Noupoort. The opportunity to lobby for using rail freight instead of road freight also presents itself, especially on already established rail routes since this would directly contribute to the attainment of the target to increase rail freight by 30%.

Additional reasons for promoting rail transport and rail freight are:

- Less costly road infrastructure development and maintenance;
- Petrol costs, as a function of oil prices, keeps on increasing;
- Toll roads that increase the cost of transportation;
- Cost of transportation by road also increasing due to petrol taxes being proposed by the Western Cape which could have a domino effect through all the other provinces wanting to do the same.

Situation Analysis: Eskom

Eskom can play a big role in stimulating economic growth, particularly by delivering services as well as their contribution in assisting other state owned enterprises to achieve their targets. In addition to the above, Eskom's investment in research and development regarding the harnessing of incoming solar radiation (insulation) and its conversion into electricity through the use of heliostats can be used for job creation.

Objectives

- To stimulate economic growth in the Pixley ka Seme district by providing for the electrical infrastructure.

- Pursue electricity generation in the district using concentrated solar power.

Strategies

Supply the electrical infrastructure to support the rejuvenation of the De Aar Railway junction

This infrastructure investment would present various opportunities for employment creation and for the establishment of SMME's in for example procurement to Eskom. More importantly though is the support to be provided to Spoornet to promote De Aar as a railway junction.

Electricity generation through concentrated solar power

The construction of a heliostat could create 800 jobs during construction and 1500 to 2500 indirect jobs over a 3 year construction period. When operational, 35 to 45 people can be employed directly on the plant. The plant could also serve as a tourist attraction and complement the increasing popularity of the region due to the Karoo Array Telescope (KAT) and the South African Large Telescope (SALT).

Situation Analysis: Telkom

The telecommunications industry is monopolized by Telkom. The costs for the services they provide is expensive and does not compare well with international rates. The services provided by Telkom also make provision for internet connectivity, a service that is required to link up to the World Wide Web to be a part of the information society.

Objective

Provision of affordable access to information and communications networks.

Strategies

Improved provision of affordable telecommunications infrastructure

Conditions need to be created to promote the provision of information and communication networks that would provide affordable access to all the citizens in Pixley ka Seme. This would provide the opportunity for people in rural and remote areas to be connected to these networks and become part of the information society.

9.4.4 INCOME GENERATION AND EMPLOYMENT CREATION

Situation Analysis

With a high percentage of people living below the minimum living level (approximately 60%) and an unemployment rate of 24.53%, a priority in the district would be to create income generating employment opportunities for the unemployed.

Objectives

To contribute towards employment creation five broad objectives have been set:

- Infrastructure Development to attract domestic investment and foreign direct investment (FDI);
- Optimal use of natural resources and sector interventions;

- Support local business;
- Increase support to small, medium and micro enterprises; and
- Improve and decentralise key services.

A multi-sectoral approach is required to achieve the objectives. This involves all three spheres of government, private sector, labour, civil society and the affected communities.

Strategies

Infrastructure Development to attract investment

The principal aim will be to facilitate economic growth through the development of the private sector.

- *Attract domestic investment and foreign direct investment (FDI)*
  Attracting FDI into and enhancing domestic investment should benefit all sectors in the district. Strategies should be developed that complement other sector development strategies and plans that are directly linked to pro-poor activities.
- *Reduce administrative procedures***.**
  Review of by-laws and regulations that create bottlenecks for infrastructure development.
- *Improve the efficiency of the Municipalities*
  Human resource capacity should be improved to improve efficient service delivery.
- *Provide basic infrastructure***.**
  The provision of basic infrastructure services are required for the development of industries. Manufacturing centers and clusters will only be established should the required infrastructure be well developed and maintained.
- *Promote and facilitate investment.*
  Municipalities should be promoted domestically and internationally through extensive marketing campaigns as well as lobbying National and Provincial politicians to assist in promoting the region.
- *Improve workers' productivity.*
  Training and capacity building of workers with a view to increase their productivity could be effected through the skills development fund of the Department of Labour.
- *Establishment of a comprehensive social security scheme.*
  Government will continue to explore means and ways to establish a comprehensive social security scheme that will cover both the formal and the informal sector workers.

Optimal use of natural resources and sector interventions.

The principle aim is to use the natural resources and raw materials to optimize value addition in key identified sectors viz: agriculture and agro-processing, mining and mineral processing, manufacturing, tourism, transport, infrastructure and ICT.

Strategies to be implemented here are:

- Focus on sectors with potential for high growth, employment creation and enterprise development
- Develop agro-businesses
- Develop the mining industry
- Develop and diversify the tourism products and encourage community-based income generating activities on the tourism sites

Supporting Local Business

The municipality is to create opportunities where local residents can take up the challenges to develop there own enterprises.

- *Build the skills of entrepreneurs and productivity of workers*
  The Education department should be engaged to develop a curriculum which emphasises. The resources and capacity of local training institutions should be improved for this purpose.
- *Develop sustainable market opportunities*
  Training in market identification skills should be availed to determine niche markets. Furthermore, local entrepreneurs are to organise themselves into partnerships that will enable the supply of quality products to common markets.

- *Support adoption of appropriate technology*
  Industrial development research and development incentives are critical for business to remain competitive domestically and globally. More often, a competitive edge is the result of the use appropriate technology.

Increase support to small, medium and micro enterprises

The principle aim will be to facilitate economic growth and development through increasing support to small, medium and micro enterprises through:

- *The review of Government Procurement Policy*
  Preference should be given to SMME's in order to encourage them to participate meaningfully in the economic growth of the country.
- *Leverage State Owned Enterprises Procurement*
  State-Owned Enterprise Procurement Forum is spreading best practices for affirmative procurement. SMME's should be linked to these opportunities.
- *Expanding women's access to economic opportunities*
  It is essential that women receive sufficient support to participate significantly in industries and that they be fast-tracked out of the second economy.
- *Promote youth development*
  Unemployed graduates could be registered on the database of the Umsobomvu Youth Fund and be targeted for jobs or learnerships. Businesses should be encouraged to participate in this initiative.
- *Leveraging Private Sector opportunities*

Partnerships can be formed with the private sector to ensure that goods and services are procured from SMME's.

- *Access to Business Development Services.*
  Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA) offices are to be established in districts to support SMME's with relevant information and provide non-financial support. Business skills development and *demand-driven* training and business counseling are fundamental initiatives to support SMME's.
- *Access to credit for the poor*
  The APEX fund and Mafisa programmes can be utilised to make available small loans, under R10 000, to the poor. In addition to this, an integrated approach is required, since credit alone will not solve SMME constraints, unless accompanied by concrete measures such as:

  - ❖ The development of an entrepreneurial culture.
  - ❖ Access to markets
  - ❖ Establishment of market intelligence

10. INFORMATION SOCIETY STRATEGY

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The role of information society development is critical to both economic and social development. South Africa cannot afford to be marginalized and the ability of the country to effectively integrate itself into the global economy depends on how well it develops its capacity to handle, absorb and utilise information technology. Improved access to information also has an impact on the awareness, education, and social and cultural development of the public. There is a need for technology development and also for well-defined regional information society development strategies, capacity building and human resource development.

The current wave of globalisation is being spurred by the development of information and communication technologies (ICT), including the internet, mobile phones and satellite networks. Rapid growth of ICT usage in high-income areas is raising concerns over the digital divide emerging between the rich and the poor. A lack of access has not traditionally been viewed as deprivation in the same way as a lack of food, basic health care and shelter have been. However, there is increasing evidence that access to ICT can have a direct impact on raising standards of living and the quality of life. The indirect impact of access to ICT on poverty reduction, through growth and productivity, has long been recognized.

The establishment of the Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD) gave effect to the President's commitment to promoting the use of ICT to increase the pace of service delivery and economic growth and development in the country. This body is mandated to advise, study and make recommendations concerning various issues related to information society development. The tasks related to building the national information strategy can be characterised as follows:

- The establishment of a Presidential National Commission on Information Society and

Development (PNC-ISAD) to recommend strategies on bridging the digital divide;

- The formation of the Presidential Task Force on Information Society and Development called the Presidential International Advisory Council (PIAC), an international body to advise the President on international ICT development;.
- Fostering partnerships between government and the private sector;
- Encouraging the participation of civil society in the use of ICT;
- Focusing on national development priorities such as:
    - Growing the economy
    - Job creation
    - Health
    - Education
    - Rural development
    - Agriculture; and
    - The diversification of production and exports, with a focus on market access for goods to industrialised countries

10.2 THE NATIONAL INFORMATION SOCIETY AND DEVELOPMENT (ISAD) FRAMEWORK

The national ISAD Framework is structured according to a set of guiding principles, strategic objectives and core enablers that provide the base and overarching direction for the development of an Inclusive Information Society for South Africa. The following guiding principles indicate the kind of Inclusive Information Society the ISAD Framework seeks to create:

- People-centred
- Inclusive
- Development oriented Inclusive Information Society Strategy.

The following strategic objectives that will guide the implementation of the national ISAD Framework are as follows:

- To ensure that South Africa does not fall behind the rest of the world as a result of the digital divide
- To define and establish a long term vision for the country's Inclusive Information Society programme
- To ensure coordination and assessment of ICT policies, projects and programmes in government; and
- To ensure the use of ICT for optimising the pace and extent of addressing South Africa's developmental challenges.

The overall provincial objective for this Programme is:

To accelerate the process of developing an integrated, comprehensive and feasible Inclusive Provincial Information Society Strategy in the province.

Four core enabling factors have been identified as the thrust of the ISAD Framework and these factors impact on the country's ability to create the conditions that promote the development of an Inclusive Information Society. These factors are mutually reinforcing and are aimed at building the necessary competitive capacity and include the following:

- ***Infrastructure***
  The deployment of a robust telecommunications and computing infrastructure is a core requirement if we are to benefit from developments in ICT and the growth of global information networks such as the Internet. Without adequate and reliable connections to information networks, both externally and internally, citizens, the government sector and businesses in South Africa will be excluded from participating fully in the global information revolution.

- ***Policy and regulatory environment***

  - Telecommunications Act No. 103 of 1996
  - Telecommunications Amendment Act No.64 of 2001
  - The Electronic Communications and Transaction Act 25 of 2002
  - The Electronic Communications Act of 2005
  - Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) Amendment Bill

- ***ICT investment***

  The South African ICT sector is growing vibrantly. In 1999, South Africa ranked very high on indicators of ICT spending. The country spent US$10,898 million, ranking it twenty-third worldwide. South Africa was ranked fourteenth in the world in terms of ICT spending as a percentage of GDP (Cogburn, L. and Adeya, A. 2001). In 2001, spending on ICT was estimated at US$9.6 billion – 6,9 per cent of the country's Gross National Product (GNP).

- ***Human capital development***

  Human capital development is a paramount aspect in the building of the Inclusive Information Society. This is particularly important in a developing country like South Africa where the majority of the people do not have the necessary skills to operate ICT and therefore cannot realise the full potential of the envisaged Information Society. It is widely acknowledged that a more differentiated and complex set of skills is required for a range of possible uses of ICT, such as the acquisition of various kinds of knowledge, access to relevant services, communication, interaction and participation in "virtual" networks and communities.

10.3 THE PILLARS OF ISAD FRAMEWORK

The general pillars of the ISAD Framework are those key factors identified in South Africa that have the biggest impact on the development of an Inclusive Information Society. These pillars are the core elements that cut across all segments of society and all sectors of the economy. These general pillars include:

- The policy and regulatory environment
- The ICT infrastructure
- Access to ICT
- Capacity development
- Human capital development
- Social inclusion for development
- Awareness
- Integration, cooperation and coordination
- Funding; and
- Measuring information society development in South Africa.

There are also five sectors that have been adopted as priority areas for ICT applications. These sectors are:

- eGovernment
- eEducation
- eHealth
- SMMEs
- Local content development.

Open Source in South Africa

The government of South Africa has taken a strong stand towards utilisation of Open Source Software (OSS) solutions in governmental functions. The reasoning behind this is that South Africa and Africa will not be able to afford the investments in imported technology required to be a full participant in the global information society in the future, and thus the Open Source Software offers an affordable solution. This creates a market niche for the development of SMMEs in the ICT sector.

10.4 INFORMATION SOCIETY STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT

One of the major challenges facing the government is to promote economic growth and job creation while at the same time providing for social development by addressing the needs of the poor. To this end, the main rationale of the DGDS is to enable all stakeholders from the public, private and parastatal sectors, together with labour and civil society, to jointly determine a strategy for the sustainable growth and development of the economy.

ICT do not offer a panacea for all development. ICT, however, used in the right way and for the right purpose, can have a dramatic effect on achieving specific social and economic development goals as well as play a role in broader development strategies. The benefit does not lie specifically in access to ICT, but rather in its ability to create powerful social and economic networks by improving

communication and the exchange of information. There are two critical access gaps between urban and rural areas and between rich and poor. The poor rely mostly on informal networks that they trust, such as family, friends and local leaders. Formal sources of information are less trusted and used. New forms of ICT, including the internet and computers, have touched a few people who mostly reside in urban areas.

Focusing on developing ICT as an economic sector may produce significant economic benefits such as growth and new investment, but these gains do not automatically translate into achieving development goals.

10.4.1 INFORMATION SOCIETY DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS

There are three dimensions to the development of an Information Society. These are:

- Social Dimension;
- Technological Dimension; and
- Economic Dimension.

Social Dimension

The social dimension includes:

- Demographics
- Human Development Index (HDI)
- Health
- Education
- Special groups including women, children, the elderly, people with disabilities and youth.

Technological Dimension

As far as the technological dimension of the information society is concerned, the district is a vast and sparsely populated area which provides real challenges. Although most of the villages have electricity, there is still need for developing basic IT infrastructure together with the mobile network. There is also a clear need for providing baseline data gathering concerning the technological infrastructure and ICT solutions people can have access to. Without having the exact figures available, technological readiness seems to be low even among companies (SMMEs).

For reaching the most remote rural areas, new innovations and actions are needed. The investments needed in satellite technology are significant, and government support is thus needed as Telkom is not willing to provide connections to rural areas unless it is justified business-wise. In some rural areas broadband can provide an affordable alternative. This also calls for government support. In addition to government support, different kinds of funds are available to communities (e.g. the Telkom and Vodacom funds) for building the telecommunications infrastructure. Furthermore, the municipalities could play an active role by building their own networks in order to reach the rural areas.

Economic Dimension

The economic dimension of the information society relates to the utilisation of ICT in companies and between companies, boosting the development of new start-up companies in ICT-related fields, developing the ICT-related service sector together with supporting the growth of information-based companies. There exists a clear need for boosting the utilisation of ICT in companies and especially in SMMEs. This offers many possibilities for developing economic activities in the region.

The current economic activity is over-dependent on two sectors, i.e. mining and agriculture. Traditionally, the mining industry has been dominated by large international companies. However, the current changes in legislation have created more room for BBBEEs and SMMEs to operate in this sector. As the sector as such is an international one, it is important to bear in mind that the SMMEs in this sector also have to be capable of operating in the international context. Connectivity and communication means and methods need to be built for the existing SMMEs already operating in the field as well as for the new companies entering the field. In agriculture and agro-processing, in the marketing of products to larger audiences and potential customer groups, logistics and sales channels play a significant role. Compared to industrial production, agriculture sales channels are often more diversified and unstructured, which creates more pressure on marketing efforts. Taking advantage of the latest technology as a marketing and communications channel can bring producers and customers closer together.

ICT and SMME's cuts across all sectors with specific reference to the following sectors:

- Agriculture & Agro-processing
- Mining and Mineral Processing
- Manufacturing
- Tourism
- LED
- Infrastructure Development
- EPWP
- Skills development

10.5 STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS

The information Society strategy within the Pixley ka Seme in terms of economic growth and job creation will need to focus on, amongst other, the following:

- Easy access to information;
- SMME development; and
- Skills development.

For the above to materialise, there is a need to develop a Pixley ka Seme Information Society Strategy (PkSISS) for the district, aligned with the Northern

Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS) which in turn is aligned with the National Information Society and Development Pan (ISAD).

A thorough needs analysis and study of the district with regards to:

- ICT requirements by the citizens, government and business;
- Current existing ICT infrastructure;
- Capacity by service providers to expand the infrastructure; and
- Availability of ICT skills, expertise and businesses in the district, should be conducted, giving impetus for strategy formulation.

This strategy would unpack most of the opportunities and challenges faced by the district as well as plotting an effective and efficient way forward.

11. INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

11.1 INTRODUCTION

One of the critical success factors for the implementation of the District Growth and Development Strategy is the need to establish the appropriate institutional arrangements. The committed participation of all the roleplayers, including the public sector, the private sector, organized labour, non-governmental organisations and civil society is a prerequisite for the successful implementation of the DGDS. However, this will not require the creation of a plethora of new structures but rather the effective utilisation of existing structures and the establishment of the relevant and necessary additional structures that bring on board all the other stakeholders outside of the public sector.

The implementation of the DGDS, whilst requiring an all inclusive participatory approach to growth and development by all stakeholders, must also ensure that all the efforts of the stakeholders be highly coordinated and integrated.

11.2 OBJECTIVES

The overall objectives are the following:

- ❖ All structures should have a clear understanding of their respective roles and responsibilities
- ❖ The mandates, functions and terms of reference of all institutions must be clearly defined and agreed upon
- ❖ The relationships between existing and new structures must not only be clearly understood but must also be formalised; and
- ❖ Contributions of all institutions to promoting growth and development must be clarified.

11.3 EXISTING INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

The following institutions are in place and will be required to play a significant role in the implementation of the DGDS:

- The Pixley ka Seme District Council
- The Provincial Intergovernmental Forum
- The District Intergovernmental Forum
- The District Mayoral Forum
- The District Council Committees
- The "B" Municipalities
- Municipal Managers Forum; and
- Municipal Departments

11.4 ESTABLISHMENT OF ADDITIONAL STRUCTURES

The currently existing structures do not accommodate for the effective participation of all stakeholders outside of the public sector. There is, therefore, the obvious need to establish structures that allows for the participation and engagement of the public sector, private sector, organised labour and civil society with one another in a constructive and meaningful way that brings about the desired growth and development in the district.

The following are the minimal requirements that are proposed for the successful implementation of the DGDS:

11.4.1 DISTRICT GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT ADVISORY COMMITTEE (DGDAC)

The District Growth and Development Advisory Committee (DGDAC), amongst other things, must provide leadership, guidance, advice and support in the implementation of a District Growth and Development Strategy (DGDS) and the development of a detailed implementation plan for the strategy for the Pixley ka Seme district. The DGDAC will also serve as part of a wider consultative process that will cut across a broad range of stakeholders throughout the length and breadth of the district.

Functions

The DGDAC will carry out the following functions:

- Provide strategic leadership and guidance during the implementation of the Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy and the implementation plan
- Support the District Executive Mayor in championing the District Growth and Development Strategy.

- Provide support and advisory services during the drafting process
- Assist the Council in arriving at informed decisions with regards to the DGDS and its implementation plan
- Monitor and evaluate progress of the implementation of the DGDS; and
- From time to time provide reports to the Council on progress and any constraints or blockages that may be experienced.

Composition

Chairperson: Member of the Mayoral Committee
Mayors of all "B" municipalities
All Municipal Managers
District Heads of Departments
Organised Business - two representatives
Organised Labour - two representatives
CBO's - two representatives

Special Invitations

In line with the objective of developing a robust DGDS that is technically sound and in line with policies the DGDAC may invite any political office bearer, parastatals, national and provincial departments or any other person, organisation or entity, to attend any of its meetings. Where participation is required on an ongoing or permanent basis the Council may sign a record of understanding.

Frequency Of Meetings

At least once every quarter

11.4.2 DGDS TECHNICAL COMMITTEE

The DGDS Technical Committee will provide wide-ranging technical support and advice to the District Growth and Development Advisory Committee. This committee will also be responsible for ensuring that all elements of the district growth and development implementation plan are credible and achievable and that financial plans are in place to deliver on the objectives and targets.

Functions

The DGDS Technical Committee will carry out the following functions:

- Supervise the development of a detailed district growth and development strategy implementation plan and make appropriate recommendations to the DGDAC.
- Ensure that the growth and development strategy implementation plan is in line with the NSDP and NCPGDS

- Provide the necessary technical and advisory support to the DGDAC
- Identify blockages, constraints, problems in the development of the DGDS and make recommendations in this regard

Composition

Chairperson: District Municipal Manager
District Council Heads of Department
Municipal Managers
Representatives from SOE's
Representatives of Provincial Departments
Sector Representatives from:

- Mining
- Agriculture
- Manufacturing
- Tourism
- SMME
- Organised Labour (2)
- Organised Business (2)

Special Invitations

The DGDS Technical Committee may invite any national department, parastatal, or any other person, organisation or entity, to attend any of its meetings or participate in any of its activities.

Frequency of Meetings

At least once a month

11.4.3 THE REFERENCE GROUP

The Reference Group will be primarily responsible for developing the District Growth and Development Strategy implementation plan and play a significant role in ensuring that the plan is a product of an all inclusive consultative process. This structure will work with and closely guide any other task teams that may be established to assist in the development of the plan. The reference group will report directly to the DGDS Technical Committee while at the same time providing the necessary technical support.

Functions

The functions of the Reference Group are as follows:

- Play a direct role in developing the growth and development strategy implementation plan

- Ensure that all municipalities provide the necessary information and inputs required for the development of the implementation plan
- Provide support for the DGDS Technical Committee
- Monitor and report progress on the implementation plan once completed to the Technical Committee
- Assist in facilitating solutions at a technical level for blockages, constraints and problems that may arise during the process
- Ensure that consultation occurs with all stakeholders on an ongoing basis
- Ensure that both the Council and administration of all municipalities are fully informed of all developments

Composition

Chairperson: Senior Manager of the District Municipality
Senior Managers: Policy and Planning of all "B" municipalities
All IDP/LED Managers
Pimms Centre Manager
Provincial department representatives

Special Invitations

The Reference Group may invite any national or provincial department, parastatal, or any other person, organisation or entity, to attend any of its meetings or participate in any of its activities if

and when any particular expertise is required.

Frequency of Meetings

Monthly

12. MONITORING AND EVALUATION

12.1 INTRODUCTION

The success or otherwise of the implementation of the Pixley ka Seme District Growth and Development Strategy will depend to a large extent on the adequacy of the monitoring and evaluation systems that are developed. These systems, together with the other procedures and arrangements, that are developed must provide for adequate measurement, evaluation and feedback. The system that is developed must at all times be able to give reliable and accurate information.

In developing a performance monitoring and evaluation system, detailed definitions of performance indicators must be developed that can be tracked and specify the source, method, and schedule of data collection. The purpose of the system is to enable comparable performance data to be collected over time, even in the event of staff turnover, and to clearly articulate expectations in terms of schedule and responsibility. It details, in other words, the means for gathering the data required for the indicators. By following the plan, and comparing the

periodic data with the baseline data, managers should have in place the information needed to monitor their programs in an on-going fashion and thus make informed management decisions. It also provides the information used in reporting.

Performance monitoring plans should include:

- Definition and purpose of each indicator and unit of measurement
- Description of indicators data source
- Method of data collection or data Source
- Frequency and schedule of data
- Team or individuals for insuring data availability.

12.2 NATURE OF INDICATORS

Performance indicators are developed to track the progress in achieving strategic interventions and results of the manufacturing sector. This allows managers to know whether activities are on track or exceeding expectations or failing short of expectations, thus allowing managers to take corrective actions. The next use of the indicators is to inform budget decisions, although performance indicators are only one of several factors used for these decisions.

The same performance information is used for the district to report on results in manufacturing sector against pr-determined targets. All levels of strategic interventions that are well focussed and developed will share the same characteristic. The indicators required to measure achievement of objectives will flow directly from the expected outputs, outcomes and strategic interventions. Once each objective has been clearly articulated and defined the question is, “how will we know that the result is occurring?” Determining what information is necessary to answer this question and how to provide the necessary information is the process of developing and selecting performance measurement indicators.

12.3 DEVELOPING KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS

The following are involved in the process for selecting indicators:

12.3.1 Propose potential indicators for Strategic Objectives and Key Annual Priorities

- Brainstorm possible answers to the question how would one know if the results are occurring.
- Consider a variety of indicators to best determine the most applicable chances for each result.
- If there are no possible direct measures, then consider process – measures, which can indirectly inform managers of performance.
- Can the indicator be associated with one or several issues around which key policies are formulated

- Can the information be presented in an easily understandable way to target audience
- Is the indicator a true reflection of the facts
- Is time series data available, reflecting the trend of the indicator over time.

12.3.2 Explore potential Data Sources for Candidate Indicators

- For each indicator explore what data sources are available.
- Use indicators which are feasible to collect data
- If there are no feasible reliable data sources available then consider proxy indicators for which good data will be available.
- Identify systems capable of collecting Accurate Data.

12.3.3 Refine Indicators

The last step is putting in place indicator details to make them fully operational and conform to the given characteristics below.

Appropriateness

Performance indicators should be **appropriate** for the purpose for which they are used. Appropriateness relates to the user's ability to relate the information provided back to the organisation's objectives and to assess achievement against those objectives. Appropriateness will depend on what is to be measured, because there may be several methods of measurement available. An effective strategic planning process will assist the department in the process of determining what appropriate measures are. It should be appropriate for the result, in that the measurement tool fits the task (just as one wouldn't use a thermometer to measure weight, don't use a population statistic to measure legislative quality).

For example, if the department identifies a key objective as being customer service, then it should measure this aspect. It needs to develop performance indicators that measure the components normally associated with "customer service": timeliness, quality, performance and service. A department with an objective of improving customer service in some measurable way would develop strategies to address these components. Measuring the success of those strategies in improving timeliness, quality and cost would relate back to the agency's vision, mission and objectives.

Relevance

Performance indicators must be relevant to the user's needs. The user must be capable of using the information provided for their purpose.

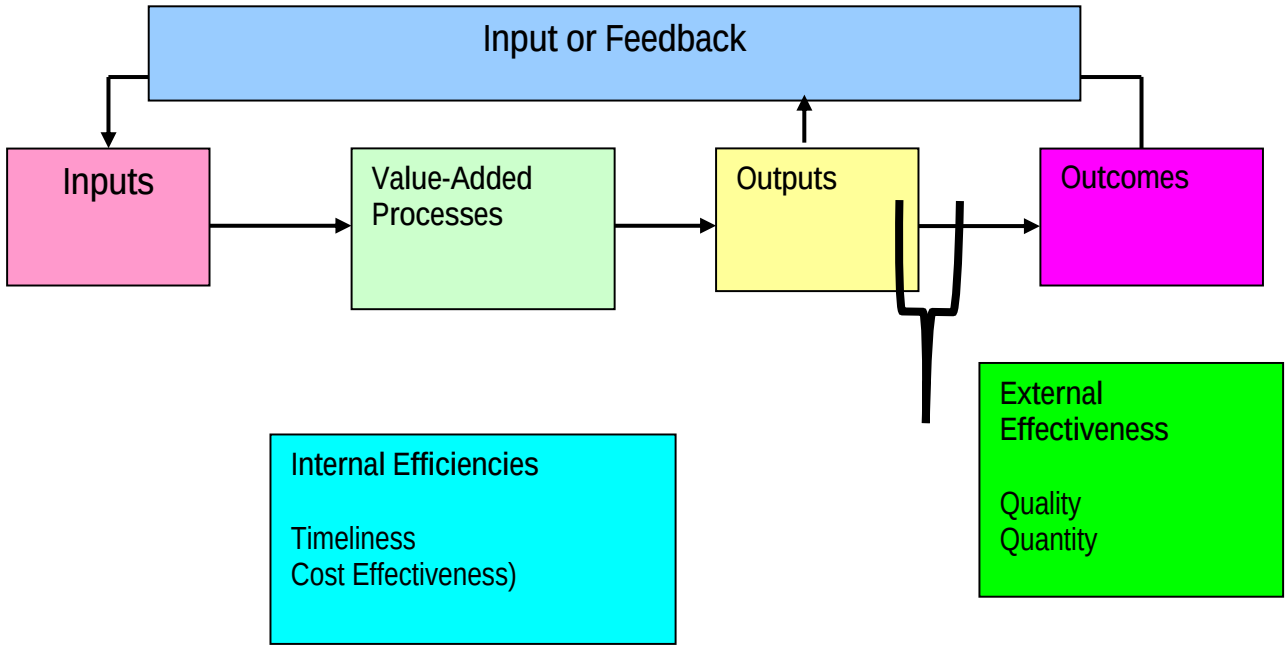
In this respect the department should report **key performance indicators** when providing information to users. A key performance indicator is one that relates to the primary purpose of the department, program of activity. Key performance

indicators concentrate on reporting high level results such as outcomes and effectiveness or efficiency measures, not on reporting operational activities, throughput and other measures of how busy the agency has been

An **efficiency indicator** relates resources used by the department to the output it produced from those resources. It is a measure of how well the department's resources are used.

Effectiveness indicators relate the department's inputs and outputs to the outcomes produced. To be relevant, effectiveness indicators must show a significant causal relationship between department's outputs and the outcomes being measured. This suggests that the department will have a certain degree of control over the area being measured. In common with private sector entities, a government agency might not control but might only influence a desired outcome. In such instances a direct relationship between the outcome being influenced and the outputs of the agency would have to be shown, if the indicator is to be considered relevant.

The following diagram shows the relationships amongst input, output and outcomes to efficiency and effectiveness indicators.



Whichever indicator is presented, whether efficiency or effectiveness, it should be measuring performance and not "busyness"

Time-lines

Agencies should present performance information in a timely manner. This means indicators should report the most recent data available. Historical data is useful for comparison purposes (for example, to show changes in performance over time) but alone does not show recent achievements.

Accuracy/Objective
Performance information must reflect the situation as truthful and as free from error as possible. Objective, in that everyone reviewing the data would reach the same conclusion about progress. Often it is impossible to develop exact measures of achievement and estimates might be used. In such instances, to avoid misleading or misrepresenting information agencies should identify clearly that they are using estimates.
Completeness and Comprehensiveness
To provide a true indication of performance, indicators have to be complete and comprehensive. There may be many ways to measure a particular objective. It is also generally true that no single measure will provide a complete picture of an agency's performance. It may take two or three, or more, indicators presented in conjunction to show a true picture of achievement.

Comprehensiveness will also require that agencies present a mixture of quantitative and qualitative measures.

12.4 QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE INDICATORS

Performance indicators are generally divided into two groups:

- Quantitative indicators
- Qualitative indicators.

Quantitative indicators present performance information in numerical terms such as a number of cases, the percent of examples that achieve targets and cost indices measuring the relative changes in agencies' costs over time.

Quantitative indicators are descriptive and present information by narration. Qualitative indicators are generally less precise than the numerically precise quantitative indicators, being based on judgements or opinions. Notwithstanding these limitations, a well-balanced performance report will typically contain a mixture of both quantitative and qualitative information.

4.8 Spatial Development Framework (SDF) – See Annexure
4.9 Integrated Environmental Management Programme - See Annexure

CHAPTER 5

5 PROJECTS

5.1 Project A

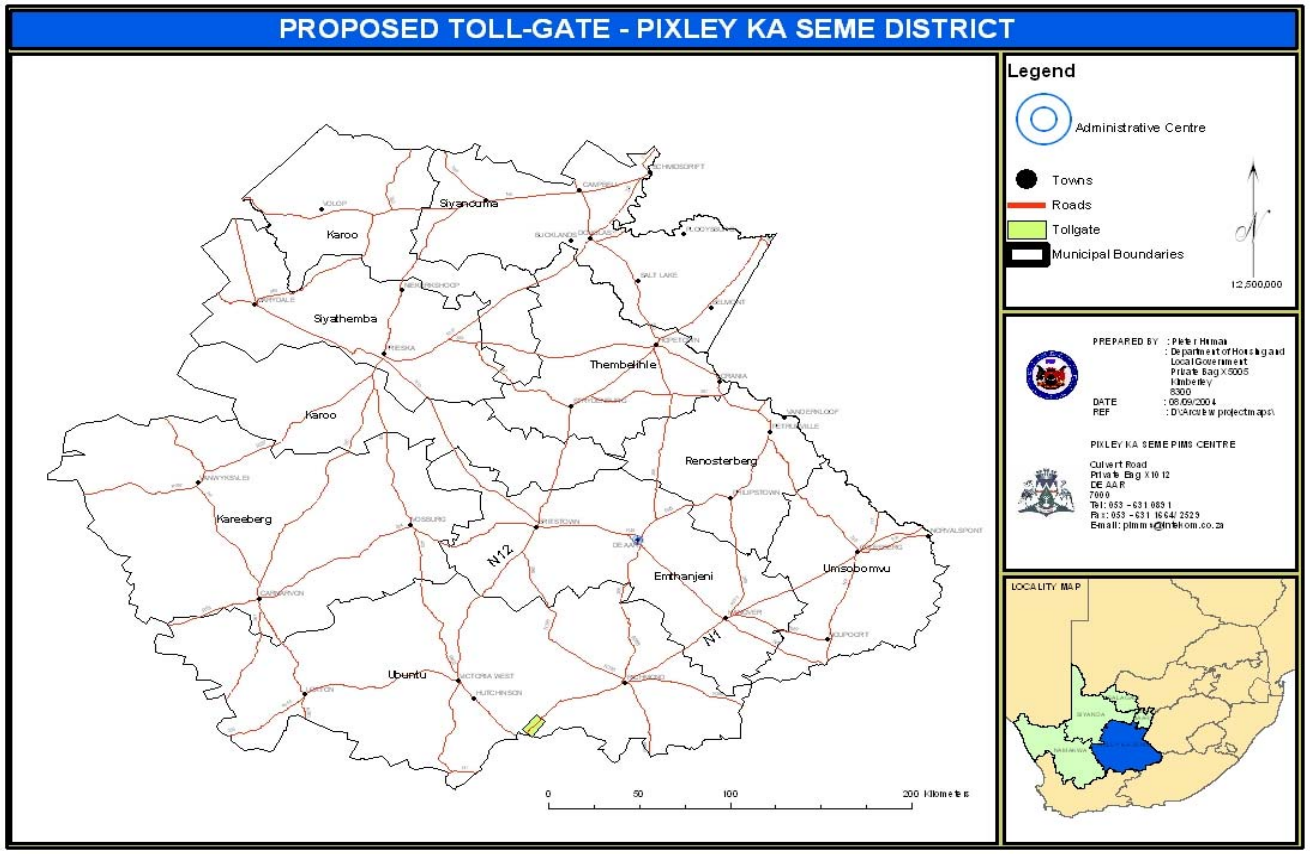
5.1.1 Proposed Toll-gate in Pixley Ka Seme Distriict. Location: N1 and N12 junction.

The N1 and N12 routes which run through the region have a multiplies effect to most social and economic sectors. In order to capitalise on such impacts we intend to develop a toll-gate along the N1 and N12 routes as shown in map 2 and plan 1 below. The aim of the proposed development is to:

- Promote employment and income opportunities for the district's citizens.
- Ehance the commerical and economic potential of local municipalities.
- Promote improved conditions that will be one of the main revenue generating sources for all the relevant stakeholders.

The plan proposals and the implementation thereof will require recommendations made by all those institutions such as the National Roads Agency and Department of Transport, Roads and Public Works that are responsible for road construction and management. This is to ensure that the implementation of the project is in line with the national transport policy.

Map 2 Proposed toll gate



Why the area was chosen

- Proximity to alternative routes (R63)
- Topograhy
- High traffic density

General development aspects

- ❖ Land use – mixed land uses, shop (retail) and institution
- ❖ Role of the development:
    - to provide a good image of the region
    - to encourage tourism
    - to market the region
    - to create employment opportunities
    - to generate revenue for maintenance of roads

Access – Vehicular Route

Proposals:

- Widening the N1 and N12 routes/roads within the toll gate
    - to encourage more efficient use
    - to relieve traffic within the toll-gate
- Land use – mixed land uses, shop (retail) and institution
- Speed humps to calm traffic
- Provision of parking spaces near the toll-gate

Specific policies

- Area to the east of the toll-gate to be earmarked for commercial and institutional use
- A small park and sitting area near the toll-gate
- A tower to be built within the toll-gate to improve its image, with a large sign that markets the region

5.2 Project B

5.2.1. IDP – Capital Project and Financial Plan for 2009/10 Financial Year

The table below indicates various projects that are envisaged to be implemented in 2009/10 financial year. All projects include in this IDP were identified to adhere to the needs of the community.

Table 127: Capital project by municipality: Infrastructure

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
Siyancuma	1.	Water reticulation – Salt Lake, Belmont, Witput and Graspan.	R800 000	2008/09					
	2.	Sewerage treatment plant in Campbell.	R1 200 000	2008/09					
	3.	Oxidation ponds in Schmidsdrift	R 1 500 000	2008/09					
	4.	Taxi route through Breipaal – over a 3year period	R10 000 000	2005-2008					
	5.	Upgrading bulk water pipeline: Douglas prison	R2 800 000	2008/09					
	6.	Orange river-Griekwastad bulk water supply project	R40miln	DWAF		R35miln	R35miln		
	7.	Compitation of Integrated Transport plan	**R300 000**	Dept of Transport	Unfunded		R300 000		

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
Thembelihle	1. 2. 3. 4. 5.	Formalization of informal settlement in Hopetown Upgrade and improve internal streets: Hopetown (1,2km) Strydenburg (0,800km) Upgrading of oxidation ponds in Hopetown Construction of Tamboville reservoir in Hopetown Construction of community hall							

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	**2008/09**	**2010/11**	**2011/12**	
		(Tamboville)							
	6.	Compilation of Integrated Transport plan	**R300 000**	Dept of Transport	**Unfunded**		R300 000		
Kareeberg	1.	Upgrading of streets (phase 2)	R3.092 million	MIG	**Funded**	**R3.092 million**	**R5,922 million**	**R4832 million**	
	2.	Upgrading of water network	R250 000	2008/09					
	4.	Upgrading of refuse dumps	R150 000	DWAF	**Funded**	R150 000			
	5.	Eradication of buckets in Carnarvon	R18 million	MIG	**Funded**	R18 million			
	6.	SKA/KAT near Carnavon	R12 billion	2005-2014	Dept of Sience and Technology	Dept of Sience and Technology	Dept of Sience and Technology	Dept of Sience and Technology	
		Purchase of sanitation Truck	**R500 000**	MIG	Funded	R500 000			
		Purchase of LDV	**R250 000**	Kareeberg Municipality	Funded	R250 000			
		Upgrading of school sanitation in Vosburg	**R1 million**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded		R1 million		
		Rural Clinic Serveces	**R250 000**	Dept of Health	Unfunded	R250 000	R250 000		
		Upgrading of electricity network in riverside in Carnarvon	**R700 000**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded	R700 000			

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
		Upgrading of electricity network in Carnarvon	**R730 000**	DHLG and Eskom	Unfunded	R730 000	R830 000		
		Conversion of conventional electricity meters in Carnarvon	**R800 000**	Dept of Housing and Eskom	Unfunded	R800 000			
		Building of an access power line to the satellite dish	**R3 million**	DEAT	Unfunded	R3 million			
		Upgrading of water network in all three towns	**R400 000**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded	R400 000	R1,78 million		
		Tarring of Vosburg/Carnarvon road	**R80 million**	Dept of transport	Unfunded	R80 million			
		Tarring of Carnarvon/Vanwyksvlei road	**R90 million**	Dept of Transport	Unfunded	R90 million			
		Management of public transport: taxi ranks	**R84 000**	Dept of transport	Unfunded	R84 000	R160 000		
		Tarring of airstrip in Carnarvon	**R2 million**	Dept of Transport	Unfunded	R2 million			
		Upgrading of sanitation in Vanwyksvlei	**R100 000**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded	R100 000	R275 000		
		Water network in Carnarvon	**R500 000**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded	R500 000			
		Monitoring of water losses	**R105 000**	DHLG and	Unfunded	R105 000			

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	**2008/09**	**2010/11**	**2011/12**	
				DWAF					
		Extension of water network in Carnarvon	**R400 000**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded		R400 000		
		Water pipeline between Vanwyksvlei and Copperton	**R35 million**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded	R35 million			
		Temporary water provision	**R3 million**	DHLG and DWAF	Unfunded	R3 million			
		Fire Brigade	**R300 000**	DHLG	Unfunded	R300 000			
		Ablution facilities for Hawkers in all three towns	**R600 000**	DTI	Unfunded		R600 000		
		Compilation of Integrated Transport plan	**R300 000**	Dept of Transport	Unfunded		R300 000		
		Development of a science and Tech centre	**R500 000**	DTEC	Funded		R500 000		
Ubuntu	1.	(7) 600 erf services (water, electricity and measurements)	R4 000 000	2008/09	**MIG**	**MIG**			
	2.	Eradication of buckets	R9,944,755	2008/09					
	3.	Upgrading sewerage pump station	R700 000	2008/09					
	4.	Area lightening in town	R3 200 000	2008-2010					

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	**2008/09**	**2010/11**	**2011/12**	
	5.	Compilation of Integrated Transport plan	R300 000	Dept of Transport	**Unfunded**		R300 000		
Renosterberg	1.	Upgrading of water system	R7 000 000	MIG		R7 million	R7 million		
	2.	Eradication of buckets	R2 000 000	MIG		R2 million	R2 million		
	3.	Supplying electricity and upgrading of network	R424 000				R424 000		
	4.	Development of erfs	R94 000			R94 000			
	5.	Upgrading of dumping sites	R80 000	DWAF		R80 000	R80 000		
	6.	Upgrading of streets and stormwater systems	R280 000	MIG			R280 000		
	7.	Development of parks	R100 000	DEAT			R100 000		
	8.	Compilation of Intagrated Transport plan	R300 000	Dept of Transport	**Unfunded**		R300 000		

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
Siyathemba	1.	Upgrading of oxidation ponds in Prieska	R6 500 000	MIG	Funded		R6.5 million		
	2.	Patching and upgrading of existing roads	R1 million	MIG	Funded		R1 million		
	3.	Upgrading of electrical network in extension 9 in Prieska							
	4.	Eradication of buckets	R8,821.265m	MIG	Funded		R8.8 million		
	5.	Conpilation of Integrated Transport plan	R300 000	Dept of Transport	Unfunded		R300 000		
Umsobomvu	1.	Provision of water	R33m						
	2.	Norvalspont sewerage network	R270 000						
	3.	Noupoort electricity	R832 000						
	4.	Rehabilitation of high mast lights	R250 000						
	5.	Norvalspont electricity	R270 000						
	6.	Compilation of Integrated Transport plan	R300 000	Dept of Transport	**Unfunded**		R300 000		

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
Pixley ka Seme DM	1.	Building of a railway line between Douglas and Belmont	R35 million		Dept Ecomomic Affairs				
	2.	Upgrading of roads			MIG				
	3.	Karoo bulk water supply project in (Vanderkloof, Petrusville, Phillipstown, De Aar, Britstown and Vosburg)			DWAF				
	4.	Tiger's eye							
	5.	Commissioning of a feasibility study on uranium deposit in the region							
	6.	Compilation of Integrated Transport plan	R3000	Dept of Transport	Unfunded		R300 000		
	7.	Upgrading of electricity network from Hydra station to Marizberg via Victoria-west undertaking of a feasibility		Eskom					

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS District Municipality and Institutions/ Grants Financial year(s)				Total year budget
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
	8.	Study on solar energyas an alternative energy for the region		Dept of min. energy Eskom					
Emthanjeni	1.	Upgrading of electrical network in industrial area	R800 000	2008/09					
	2.	Eradication of buckets	R208 000	2008/09					
	3.	Upgrading of existing toilet structures	R2 300 000	2008/09					
	4.	Water purification at De Aar	R4 500 000	2008/09					
	5.	Nonzwakazi Urban Renewal prject		National Treasury	Unfunded				
	6.	Compilation of Integrated Transport plan	R300 000	Dept of Transport	Unfunded		R300 000		

Capital project by municipality:* *Housing

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM				Total year budget
					Financial year(s)				
					Status	2008/09	2010/11	2011/12	
Ubuntu	1.	(6) 500 houses with services	R14 250 000	2008/09					
Siyathemba	1. 2.	Measurements and services of environ-economic housing project ABSA project in economic housing							
Kareeberg	1.	Housing	R150 000	Dept. of housing	Unfunded	R2.5 million	R4.7 million		

Capital project by municipality:* *Local Economic Development (LED)

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/10	2010/2011	2011/2012	
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipal Area	1. 2.	Lake Gariep LED initiative Commercialisation of goats			DM NC Dept of Agriculture					
Siyathemba	1.	Chicken farming	**R500 000**	DEAT					DEAT	
Kareeberg	2.	Job creation projects	**R200 000**	Kareeberg Municipality	Funded	R200 000				

Capital project by municipality:* *Social Development

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/10	2010/2011	2011/2012	
Ubuntu	1.	Conservancy project commonage adb parks in Loxton	R15 million	2008/09	DEAT					
	2.	Upgrading and estabilshment of cemetries	**R5.5 million**	2008/09	DEAT					
	3.	Development of library	R65 000	Dept of sports, arts and culture	Funded	R65 000				
	4.	Establishment of municipal advisory councils		Arts and culture	Funded					
	5.	Effect three street name changes		Arts and culture	Funded					
	6.	Library development	R65 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R65 000				
	7.	Library transformation	R166 500	Arts and culture	Funded	R166 500				
	8.	Public viewing areas for 2010 world cup								
	9.	Extension/upgrading of the clinic in Victoria-West as Art site		Arts and culture	Funded					

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
Renosterberg	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.	Upgrading of clinics in Vanderkloof Development of parks open spaces and walkways Lightening of sports grounds Name changes Establishment of municipal Advisory Councils Effect three street name changes Library development Transformation (182) Public viewing Areas for 2010 world cup	R50 000 3.5 million **R310 000** **R50 000** **R101 000**	Dept of Health DEAT Dept of sport, art and culture Arts and culture Arts and culture Arts and culture Arts and culture Arts and culture	Unfunded Funded Funded funded	R50 000 R101 000	R50 000 R3.5 million R130 000			
PKS DM	1. 2.	Establish municipal advisory Effect three street name changes		Dept of sport, art and culture Dept of sport, art and culture						

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
Emthanjeni	1.	Upgrading and maintenance of parks, open spaces and walkways	R500 000	2008/09	DEAT					
	2.	De Aar new hospital	R350 million	2006-2010	Dept of Health					
	3.	Nonzwakazi clinic		2008/09	Dept of					
	4.	Upgrading ARV site	R2 million	2008/09	Health					
					Dept of Health					
	5.	72 hour mental health unit		2008/09	"					
				2008/09		R150 000				
	6.	Renal unit	R150 000	Dept of sport, art and culture	Funded					
	7.	Library development		Arts and culture						
	8.	Establiment of municipal Advisory Councils		Arts and culture						
	9.	Effect three street name changes		Arts and culture	Funded	R80 000				
	10.	Library development		Arts and culture	Funded	R195 500				
	11.	Transformation (182)		Arts and culture	Funded	R194 500				
	12.	Transformation (2)		Arts and culture	Funded					
	13.	Public Viewing Areas for 2010 world cup	R800 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R800 000				
	14.	Sport development								

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
Siyathemba	1.	Upgrading of sports grounds in Prieska, Marydale and Niekershoop		Lotto						
	2.	Library development	R50 000	Dept of sport, art and culture	Funded					
	3.	Building of a memorial park in Prieska	R18 500	DEAT						
	4.	Establisment of municipal Advisory council		Arts and culture	Funded	2008/9				
	5.	Effect three street name changes		Arts and culture	Funded	2008/9				
	6.	Transformation (1)		Arts and culture	Funded	2008/9				
	7.	Library development	R50 000	Arts and culture	Funded	2008/9				
	8.	Public viewing areas for 2010 world cup		Arts and culture	Funded					
Siyancuma	1.	Upgrading and maintenance of parks, open spaces and walkways in Douglas	R2.5 million	2007-2009	DEAT					
	2.	Transformation (1 & 2)	R292 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R292 000				
	3.	Bongani clinic	R2 million	2008/09	Dept of Health					
	4.	Library development	R60 000	Dept of	Funded	R60 000				

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
				sport, art and culture						
	5.	Establish municipal Advisory Councils		Arts and culture	Funded					
	6.	Effect three street name changes		Arts and culture	Funded					
	7.	Library development	R60 000	Arts and culture	Funded					
	8.	Public view areas for 2010 world cup		Arts and culture	Funded					
	9.	New clinic in Smitsdrift		Arts and culture	Funded					
Umsobomvu	1.	Upgrading and maintenance of cemeteries	R2.5 million	2007/08 2008/09						
	2.	Establisment of minicipal Advisory Councils		Arts and culture	Funded					
	3.	Upgrading and maintenance of parks, open spaces and	R3.5 million							
	4.	walkways	R70 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R70 000				
	5.	Library development	R1.8 million							
	6.	Hospital revitalisation at Manne Dipico hospital in Colesberg	R233 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R233 000				
	7.	Transformation (1 & 2) Library development	R70 000	Dept of sport, art and culture	Funded		R70 000			

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
	8.	Building of new clinic in Noupoort		Arts and culture						
	9.	Public view areas for 2010 world cup Building of a new clinic in Norvalspont		Arts and culture						
Thembelihle	1.	Upgrading and maintenance of cemeteries	R1.5 million		DEAT					
	2.	Establishment of municipal Advisory Council		Arts and culture	Funded					
	3.	Effect three street name changes		Arts and culture	Funded					
	4.	Library development	R5 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R5 000				
	5.	Transformation (1 & 2)	R289 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R289 000				
	6.	Public view areas for 2010 world cup		Arts and culture	Funded					
	7.	Extension and upgrading of clinic in Hopetown as Art Sites		Arts and culture	Funded					
Kareeberg	1.	Rehabilitation of Carnavon prison	R2.5 million	DEAT	Unfunded					
	2.	Rehabilitation of parks in Van Wyksvlei	R2 million	DEAT	Unfunded					
	3	Rehabilitation of parks in Vosburg		DEAT	Unfunded					
	4	Library development	R80 000	Dept of sport, art and culture			R80 000			

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
	5	Purchase of community Hall	R50 000	Kareeberg Municipality	Funded	R50 000				
	6.	Sport facililities in Carnarvon	R2 million	Dept of sport	Unfunded	R2 million				
		Adult Education: ABET	R150 000	Dept of education	Unfunded	R150 000			R150 000	
	7	Upgrading of sport facilities in Vanwyksvlei	R500 000	Dept of sport	Unfunded				R500 000	
	8	Créche in Vosburg	R25 000	Dept of education	Unfunded	R250 000				
	9	Upgrading of health facilities in Carnarvon	R500 000	Dept of Health	Unfunded				R500 000	
	10	Cemetries	R40 000	DHLG	Unfunded	R40 000				
	11	Upgrading of health facilities in Vanwyksvlei	R100 000	Dept of Health	Unfunded	R100 000			R300 000	
	12	Upgrading of Community hall in Carnarvon	R80 000	Dept of Social Services	Unfunded	R80 000			R900 000	
	13	Establishment of municipal Advisory Council		Arts and culture	Funded					
	14	Effect three street name changes		Arts and culture	Funded					
	15	Library development	R80 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R80 000				
	16	Transformation (1 & 2)	R216 000	Arts and culture	Funded	R216 000				

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
	16	Public viewing areas for 2010 worls cup		Arts and culture	Funded					
PKSDM	1.	Mayoral games		Arts and culture	Funded					
	2.	Public view Areas for 2010 world cup		Arts and culture	Funded					

Capital project by municipality: ***Environment***

Municipality	**Priority**	**Capital project**	**Project cost**	**Funding Source**	**IDP Allocations by PkS DM**				**Total year budget**
					Financial year(s)				
					Status	**2008/09**	**2010/2011**	**2011/2012**	
Umsobomvu	1.	Establishment of a waste management recycling plant	R10 million						
Emthanjeni	1.	Establishment of a waste management recycling plant in De Aar	R10 million						
Ubuntu	1.	Erecting of a waste management recycling plant and home beatification	R19 million						
Kareeberg	1.	Tree project in vosburg	R1 million	DWAF	Unfunded	R1 million			
PKS DM	1.	Appointment of one air quality Sampler	R50 000	DTEC	Funded	R50 000			

Capital project by municipality:* *Rural Development

Municipality	Priority	Anchor and capital project	Project cost	Funding source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM and institutional grants					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	
PKS DM	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	PKS bulk water supply Scheme Agro-tourism Land reform Kalahari goat project Pistacho nuts Production of flower bulbs Mohair meaning Goat farming Organically prodneed meet								
Kareeberg		Farm dewellers services	R150 000	Kareeberg Municipality	Unfunded		R150 000	R150 000		

Capital project by municipality:* *Poverty Alleviation

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	
Kareeberg		Vegatable gardens	R500 000	DEAT	Unfunded	R500 000	R500 000			

Capital project by municipality: ***Gender***

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	

Capital project by municipality: ***HIV/ Aids***

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	

Capital project by municipality:* *Safety and Security – Crime Prevention

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM					Total year budget
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	2008/09	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	
Umsobomvu	1.	Entrance gate reception building	R800 000	2008/09						
	2.	Construction of staff accommodation units at Doornkloof nature reserve	R3 149 000	2008/09						
PKS DM	1.	Compilation of community safety plan	R300 000	Dept of safety and security	Unfunded		R300 000			

Capital project by municipality:* *Tourism

Municipality	Priority	Capital project	Project cost	Funding Source	IDP Allocations by PkS DM				Total year budget
					Financial year(s)				
					Status	2008/09	2010/2011	2011/2012	
Kareeberg	1	Establishment of a visitor centre in Carnarvon	R600 000						
	2	Compilationof tourism BEE strategy		DTEC	Funded	R300 000			
	3	Youth advisory Centre	R250 000	PKS DM	Funded	R250 000			
Umsobomvu	1.	Upgrading of Norvalspont lodge	R1.5 million	2007/08 2008/09					
	2.	Establishment of Umsobomvu cultural village in Colseberg	R2.5 million						
	3.	Upgrading of the main access and tourist road of the Doornkloof Nature Reserve	R27 million	2008/09					
	4.	Compilation of tourism BEE strategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			
	5.	Fencing entrance of ORD and reception/entrance at Doornkloof NR	R1million	DTEC	Funded	R1million			
Siyathemba	1.	"Die Bos" development	R37 million			R37 million			
	2.	Compilation of tourism BEE stategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			
Siyancuma	1.	Upgrading the Douglas resort and	R15 million	2008/09	DEAT				

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM				
		conference facilities in Douglas							
	2.	Compilation of tourism BEE strategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			
Kareeberg	1	Tourism centre	R600 000	Dept of Tourism	Funded	R600 000			
Emthanjeni	1.	Upgrading of De Aar accommodation and conference facilities in De Aar	R5 million	DEAT	Unfunded				
	2.	Compilation of tourism BEE strategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			
Renosterberg	1.	Upgrading of the Vanderkloof resort and recreation complex	R25 million	DEAT				R25 million	
	2.	Compilation of tourism BEE strategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			
	3.	Upgrading of Rolfontein nature reserve	R751 218	DEAT				R751 218	
Thembelihle	1.	Upgrading of Thembelihle holiday resort in Hopetown	R15 million	2007-2010	DEAT				
	2.	Compilation of tourism BEE strategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM				
Ubuntu	1. 2.	Establishment of tourist routes in Victoria West Compilation of tourism BEE strategy	R1.6 million R300 000	2007-2009 DTEC	DEAT Funded	 R300 000			
PKS DM	1.	Compilation tourism BEE strategy	R300 000	DTEC	Funded	R300 000			

Capital project by municipality: ***Innovative Fund***

Municipality	**Priority**	**Capital project**	**Project cost**	**Funding Source**	**IDP Allocations by PkS DM**					**Total year budget**
					Financial year(s)					
					Status	**2008/09**	**2009/2010**	**2010/2011**	**2011/2012**	
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality		To be decided by Executive Mayor/ Speaker			R259 000	R343 000				

Capital project by municipality: ***Youth***

Municipality	**Priority**	**Capital project**	**Project cost**	**Funding Source**	**IDP Allocations by PkS DM**	**Total year budget**
					Financial year(s)	

					IDP Allocations by PkS DM					
					Status	**2008/09**	**2009/2010**	**2010/2011**	**2011/2012**	

Capital investment programme

Project name	**Total year budget**	**Financial years**				
		2007/08	**2008/09**	**2009/2010**	**2010/2011**	**2011/2012**

5.3 Project C

5.3.1 MIG Projects

Table: *Rigistered MIG projects 2009/10*

No	PROJECT NAME	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS	STATUS
119	**Siyancuma access roads in township**	**1 260**	**Busy**
120	**Schmidsdrift: water reticulation**	**787**	**Busy**
118	**Griekwastad/Rainbown valley sewer reticulation**	**628**	**Completed**
281	**Douglas asbestos sewer rising main**	**3 467**	**Completed**
161	**Colesberg/operation vula: water reticulation**	**188**	**Completed**
276	**Prieska access roads**	**2 618**	**Busy**
318	**Victoria West eradication of buckets**	**939**	**Busy**
351	**Victoria West sewer pump station**	**314**	**Completed**
274	**Petrusville solid water disposal sites**	**828**	**Busy**
273	**Phillipstown upgrading of gravel access roads**	**697**	**Busy**
406	**Disaster fund 06/07: flood damage to roads**	**29958**	**Completed**
309	**Eradication of bucket system in Hanover phase 1**	**318**	**Completed**
369	**Eradication of 18 buckets in Britstown**	**18**	**Completed**
316	**De Aar/Malay camp bucket eradication**	**110**	**Completed**
317	**Carnarvon internal streets and stormwater**	**1 316**	**Busy**
272	**Carnarvon/Bonteheuwel sewer reticulation 620 sites & outfall line**	**620**	**Completed**
372	**Replacing of ageing FC bulk water main to Bongani & Breipaal town**	**2935**	
370	**Hanover/Tornadoville eradication of 93 bucket toilets**	**93**	**Completed**
375	**Diygkas/Breipaal: upgrading of Cypris street phase 3**	**1898**	
822	**Douglas bucket eradication**	**680**	**Busy**
821	**Griekwastad bucket eradication**	**312**	**Completed**
279	**Strydenburg/Deetlifsville: Eradication of 209 bucket toilets**	**209**	**Completed**
315	**Britstown bulk water supply phase 2**	**1613**	
422	**Carnarvon rehabilitation of oxidation pond system**	**1422**	**Bsy**
417	**Carnarvon eradication of 125 bucket toilets**	**125**	**Busy**
Total		53353	

MIG Prioritised Access Roads 2008-2010

PRIORITIES FOR UPSCALING OF ACCESS ROAD

Financial Year	Current status	Project number	Road number	Action	Km Distance	Estimated construction cost	Project cost for MTEF	08/09	09/10
UPSCALING OF EPWP ALLOCATION				**KM rate**		**224,484**	**224,484**	**64,051**	**109,979**
Total				1,991	**113**	**228,437**	**207,859**	**76,274**	**114,510**
Difference							**16,625**	**-12,223**	**-4,531**
PIXLEY KA SEME					**25**	**49,779**	**32,746**	**6,000**	**24,246**
Prieska - Niekerkshoop	gravel		TR69/1	Upgrade	18	35,841	25,746	1,500	24,246
Grens to Asbult (Victoria West)	gravel	NC132	DR2429	Upgrade	1	1,991	5,000	4,500	0
Hopetown - Douglas	gravel	NC096		Upgrade	6	11,947	2,000	0	0

Summary for all projects in Construction and Design - capital funding

FINANCIAL YEAR	Previous year 2008/2009	
TOTALS	**TOTALS**	

CONSTRUCTION	CONSTRUCTION				C
Budget statement	BUDGET	186,612	(BUDGETexcl personnel,	BUDGET	
Total summary	TOTAL	197,526	goods & services)	TOTAL	

DIFFERENCE	DIFFERENCE	-10,914		DIFFERENCE	
DESIGN		DESIGN			
Budget statement	BUDGET	3,658	(BUDGET excl personnel,	BUDGET	
Total summary	TOTAL	7,500	goods & services	TOTAL	
DIFFERENCE	DIFFERENCE	-3,842	and current projects)	DIFFERENCE	

	DIFFERENCE CONSTRUCTION + DIFFERENCE DESIGN			DIFFERENCE	
	-14,756				

Description of project	Design	Supervision	Constr.	Retention	Project dates	Design	Supervision	
Summary amounts	7,500	9,100	188,126	300		11,500	16,040	

	Projects currently already in construction							Proj
Prov Roads Summary	**7,500**	**9,100**	**188,126**	**0**	**0**	**9,500**	**14,540**	
Rehabilitation								
Colesberg - Norvals Pont (1)	500					500		
Colesberg - Phillipolis (2)	500					500		
Phillipstownn - Hanover (3)								
Upgrade to Pave								
Britstown - Vosburg		800	8,800		End July 2008			
Colesburg - Petrusville								
Douglas - Campbell	500						3,955	

SKA-KAT A (CEE-Raubex)		1,650	50,163		End Nov 2008			
SKA-KAT B (Nshand-Brink & Heath)		1,650	43,051		End Jan 2009			
Vosburg - Carnarvon	500						2,967	
Re-Gravel - Summary	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**		**2,000**	**1,500**	
Re-Gravel			0			2,000	1,500	

Re-Seal - Summary	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**		**0**	**0**	
Reseal & Fogspray			0			0		

Subprogram 5 - MAINTENANCE

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
Financial Year	**08/09**	**09/10**	**10/11**
Description			
TOTALS			
Budget statement	**150,159**	**170,020**	**176,821**
Maintenance total	**150,159**	**171,541**	**182,771**
Difference	**0**	**-1,521**	**-5,950**
PROJECTS			
DEPARTMENTAL MAINT TOTAL	**90,159**	**101,150**	**105,390**
Main Departmental Cur	**33,159**	**40,950**	**42,720**
Pavement Repair	15,000	17,250	17,940
Gravel Roads NW	2,000	2,200	2,420
Regravelling / shoulder repairs by construction team	2,000	10,000	10,400
Structure Related	500	545	567
Facility Related	1,000	1,090	1,134
General	500	545	567
Overhead Costs	8,104	9,320	9,692
Main Contract Cur	**7,000**	**7,700**	**8,470**
Road marking	2,500	2,750	3,025
Roadsigns	2,000	2,200	2,420
Roadstuds	1,500	1,650	1,815
Herbicide	1,000	1,100	1,210
Routine maintenance contracts	**5,120**	**30,000**	**30,000**
Reseal	**0**	**11,000**	**12,100**
Regravelling	**0**	**11,000**	**12,100**
Barkley Wes - Hartsriver	**44,880**	**500**	
Supervision	2,880		
Contract - April 2008 - 8 months	42,000	500	
District Municipalities Maintenance totals	**60,000**	**66,000**	**72,600**
Frances Baard	7,500	8,250	9,075
Pixley ka Seme	19,000	20,900	22,990
Siyanda	15,000	16,500	18,150
Namakwa	13,000	14,300	15,730
Kgalagadi	5,500	6,050	6,655
Local Municipalities total	**0**	**4,391**	**4,782**
Local Municipalities Cur	**0**	**114**	**120**

Maintenance of Mun main Roads	0	114	120
Local Municipalities Cap	**0**	**4,277**	**4,662**
Victoria Wes Reh		0	
Calvinia		0	
Kimberley		250	
Keimoes		0	
Augrabiesweg		0	
Colesberg		0	
Upington		70	
Vaalharts		0	
Douglas		0	
Prieska		0	
Petrusvill area		0	
Springbok	0	457	
Pofadder	0	500	
Barkley West	0	3000	
Projects to be allocated	0		4662

REVISED: INFRASTRUCTURE IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

FEBRUARY 2008

CONTENTS

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY **1**

INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT **1**

PLAN VOLUME 1 ..... **1**

2009/2010 ..... **1**

Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality **1**

Culvert Road **1**

1.29 Proposed Organisational Structure 36
Office of the Executive Mayor 36
Office of the Municipal Manager: DGDS Unit 38
Internal Audit 39
Shared Services 40
Department: Finance 41
Department Social and Support Services 42
Department Social and Support Services 43
Department Infrastructure and Technical Services 44
Division Roads 45
Division Roads: De Aar 46
Division Roads: Prieska 47
Division Infrastructure 48
2.17 Population growth 63
2.22.2 Housing Profile 76
2.22.3 Home ownership 77
2.22.4 Housing backlog 79
2.23 Land needed for new housing stock 2002-2012 83
2.27 ealth & hygiene 86
2.29 Indigence and household income 90

2.30 Institutional & management **94**

Indigents policy 94
The policy 97
Level of service 97
Progress in delivery of water 98
2.31.3 Progress on free basic water delivery 100

2.31.4 Water Resources **100**

The policy 101
Progress in delivery 102

2.50.1 Construction and maintenance teams **152**

2.50.2 Regravelling projects **152**

Photographs of the projects **154**

3.2.2 Vision **168**

4.3.1 UNEMPLOYMENT 235
4.3.2 LABOUR 235
8.3.1 INTRODUCTION 258

8.3.3 STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS IN AGRICULTURE AND AGRO-PROCESSING 259
8.6 WHOLESALE AND RETAIL STRATEGY 279
8.6.1. INTRODUCTION 279
8.6.2. POLICY FRAMEWORK 279
Vision 280
Mission 280
Objectives 280
STRATEGIES 280
8.6.5. IMPLEMENTATION GUIDELINES 285
8.7.1 INTRODUCTION 286
8.7.2 LEGISLATIVE MANDATES 287
8.7.3 POLICY FRAMEWORK 288
8.7.4 ECONOMIC PROFILE 289
8.7.5 DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 289
Strategic Goals 289
Agriculture and Agro-processing, hunting, forestry and fishing 289
CATTLE FARMING EXPANSION 289
Sheep farming expansion 290
Soya bean as potentials 290
Pistacios 290
Fish Farming 290
Game Farming 290
Mining and Mineral Beneficiation 290
Manufacturing 290
Potatoe Chips 290
Microwave Popcorn 290
Wool 291
Trailer Manufacturing (truck trailers and tankers) 291
8.7.6 STRATEGIES 292
8.7.7 CONCLUSION 293
9.2. POLICY FRAMEWORK 295
9.3 POVERTY ANALYSIS 296
TRENDS IN THE INCIDENCE OF POVERTY 296
9.4. STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS 297
Objective 297
Strategies 298
Improve the capacity of municipalities up to accreditation level to fast track delivery 298
Objective 298
Strategies 298
Objective 298
Strategies 299
ELECTRICITY 299
Objective 299
Strategies 299
Situation Analysis 299
Objective 299
Strategies 299
Situation Analysis 300
Objective 300
Strategies 300
9.4.3 INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT 301
Situation Analysis: De Aar Railway Junction 301
Objective 301

Strategy 301
Situation Analysis: Eskom 301
Objectives 301
Strategies 302
Situation Analysis: Telkom 302
Objective 302
Strategies 302
Objectives 302
Strategies 303
10.2 THE NATIONAL INFORMATION SOCIETY AND DEVELOPMENT (ISAD) FRAMEWORK 306
10.3 THE PILLARS OF ISAD FRAMEWORK 308
10.4 INFORMATION SOCIETY STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT 308
10.4.1 INFORMATION SOCIETY DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS 309
10.5 STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS 310
12.2 NATURE OF INDICATORS 316
12.3 DEVELOPING KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS 316
Appropriateness 317
Relevance 317
Time-lines 318
Accuracy/Objective 318
Completeness and Comprehensiveness 319
12.4 QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE INDICATORS 319

Introduction 365

Background 365
Guiding Principles 365
Delivery Framework 366

status quo and regional challenges 366

Implementation plan focus areas 371

6 Management Structure 374

Roles and responsibilities 375

Communication 375

Risk Analysis 376

MONITORING AND EVALUATION
377

Introduction

It is the purpose of this Implementation Plan to document how the **Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality** proposes to implement and monitor infrastructure projects over the MTEF period.
The Implementation plan complies with the following conditions:

- Conformity with IDPs: Ensure *municipal and regional integration* of the MIG Programme and other non-MIG funded programmes within the framework of the municipality's pre-existing Integrated Development Plan. No funds may be spent outside the framework of a municipality's pre-existing Integrated Development Plan and its approved budget. The IDPs should be based on the provision of a basic package of services to the poor, appropriate services levels, financial sustainability and the existence of adequate organizational capacity.
- Achievement of specified basic service coverage targets: the attainment of pre-agreed basic service coverage targets in specific sectors (water and sanitation, for example) to be achieved by certain deadlines.
- Poverty alleviation: It is important for the economic spin-offs of infrastructure delivery to be maximized. This relates primarily to temporary and permanent job creation arising for municipal infrastructure investments. This condition will be associated with national government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

It is planned that a planning workshop will be held in the consecutive years to realign the implementation plan and to compile a new budged.

Background

The Municipal Infrastructure Grant Guideline Document sets out the approach to the delivery of a basic level of service by the year 2013, alleviate poverty by maximise employment and opportunities for enterprises and the eradication of backlogs.

Guiding Principles

The implementation principles are as follows:

Community Participation:

The community and local leadership structures should be involved in all aspects of programmes to ensure relevance and acceptability.

Integration:

The MIG, PIG and other Capital grants must be integrated into the Infrastructure Implementation plan according to the IDP.

Collaboration:

Collaboration and partnership between key role-players is vitally important. Collaboration should take place through co-ordination structures in all spheres of government.

Sustainable delivery:
Operation and maintenance must be implemented as a more intense programme in the short and medium term and also in a sustainable manner over the long term.

Flexibility:
Capacity and resource levels vary greatly within the key responsible institutions. Therefore innovative and flexible planning at a local level is required in order to achieve implementation and sustainable O&M.

Delivery Framework

The delivery framework to be adhered to was compiled from the following guiding documentation:

- The Water Services Act, 108 of 1997,
- The strategic framework for water services,
- The Municipal Structures Act, 118 of 1998 ; and
- The White Paper on Basic Household Sanitation, 2001.
- The National Health Act, 61 of 2003,

status quo and regional challenges

General:
There are 8 local municipalities in this municipal area namely: Emthanjeni, Siyancuma, Thembelihle, Renosterberg, Umsobomvu, Ubuntu, Kareeberg and Siyathemba municipalities.

There is also a district management area (NCDMA07) that consists of two separate areas and are directly administered by Pixley ka Seme District Municipality. This area is a rural area without any urban settlements.

Population:
±15% of Northern Cape households, are living in the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipal Area. 75% of these households are living in towns or settlements and the remainder is living on farms.

Table 128: The next table gives a brief overview of the population per Municipality within the District.

Municipalities	Population	Average Population Annual Rate Of Growth Between 2001 - 2010	% Of Total Population	Area (Km2)	Density Per Km2	HH	Average HH (2000)
Emthanjeni	35 549	1.0	24.6	11 388	4.0	7 761	4.5
Kareeberg	9 486	2.2	6.9	17 698	1.5	2 258	4.1
Thembelihle	13 986	1.3	5.9	6 978	2.0	2 988	3.9
Siyathemba	17 513	1.0	11.9	8 251	1.0	4 111	4.7
Renosterberg	9 069	1.0	10.5	12 051	2.0	2 278	5.3
Ubuntu	16 376	1.0	9.1	20 389	2.0	3 521	4.8
Siyancuma	35 809	1.0	8.4	10 027	2.0	7 383	4.6
Umsobomvu	23 640	1.0	15.8	6 813	4.0	5 083	4.6
District (Total)	164 603	1.2	11.1	102 766	2.2	36 270	4.5

Income:

Indigent households calculated from the 2001 census data, indicates that 49% of households in Pixley ka Seme are indigent.

Water resources:

Residents in the Pixley ka Seme municipal area are almost totally reliant on ground water. The water quality is generally acceptable but high contents of calcium and magnesium can lead to water hardness and some diarrhoea.

Water and Sanitation Services:

The Strategic Framework for Water Service outlines National Government's commitment to eliminate the backlogs in basic water services and progressive improvement over time. The following National targets were set to eradicate backlog:

- All schools must have water and sanitation facilities by 2005. Postponed to 2009.
- All buckets on formal stands must be eradicated by December 2007
- Water backlogs must be eradicated by December 2008
- Total sanitation backlog must be eradicated by 2010

School Sanitation

Extensive surveys have been done in the past to determine water and sanitation backlogs at school and clinics and a lot have been done to raise the basic level of sanitation and water supply. Unfortunately the situation unfolds differently now. Mechanical parts of toilets got broken which resulted into non-function sanitation systems and poor hygiene conditions. The National Target has been set to eradicate all water and sanitation backlogs in schools by 2009.

Pixley ka Seme District has 110 schools listed in the data base and with the data available schools were categorise in the table below:

Table 129 School category

Category	Categorising of problem	Number of schools	Responsibility / Funding Authority
1	Schools with no water and sanitation	1	DWAF
2	Schools with no sanitation	5	DWAF
3	Schools with no water on site		DWAF
4a	Schools with inadequate sanitation technology		DoE / DoT,R&PW
4b	Schools with inadequate sanitation numbers and ixisting toilets experience functionality problems	33	DoE / DoT,R&PW
4c	Schools with inadequate sanitation numbers	40	DoE / DoT,R&PW
4d	Schools with 50% and more sanitation functionality problems	12	DWAF
5a	Schools with inadequate water technology (e.g.: windmills, hand pumps)	1	DoE
5b	Schools with inadequate water functionality	1	DoE
	Schools with no backlogs of which has closed down	17	

Bucket Eradication

Bucket eradication target on formal stands were not reached by December 2007 due to a few constrains. It is estimated that there are 1,845 buckets remaining on formal stands in the District.

Funding for bucket eradication is ring fenced in MIG and PIG allocations. A total of R88,812 million was available and gazette for the financial year 2007/08 for the District.

The next table gives an indication of the bucket eradication status at each municipality.

Table 130

Municipality	Initial Backlogs on formal stands	Backlogs on formal stands Dec 2007	Towns	Comments
Pixley Ka Seme		0		
Emthanjeni	472	171	13 De Aar 158 Hanover (Kwezi)	Contractors on site busy with installation of sewer mainline, buckets will be eradicated as soon as mainline is completed, expected completion is end of March 2008
Kareeberg	743	745	745 Carnarvon	Additional funds were only secured in December 2008. Contractors on site busy with installation of sewer network, house connections, and toilet structures.
Renosterberg	518	0		
Siyancuma	1,116	767	192 Griekwastad 575 Douglas	Douglas Bongani and Breipaal Municipality will implement bulk network and complete bucket eradication phase in 2008/09
Siyathemba	168	0		Marydale - Completion of housing project - residents reallocated
Thembelihle	199	0		

Ubuntu	264	162	162 Victoria West	Municipality needs R1.5m to complete the project.
Umsobomvu	355	0		
Total	3,835	1,845		

Water provision

However some stands in the district have no water or are without a stand pipe within 200m from the dwelling and they need to be supplied with a basic water facility by 2008. It is estimated that approximately 1,605 households living in settlements and towns are currently in need of water and it will cost R16,852 million to provide basic water facilities, which is determined at a norm of R10,500 per household. This amount does not cater for the Regional Bulk Supply Schemes as proposed in the Pixley ka Seme Bulk Water Feasibility Study.

Adequate Sanitation

Households with no sanitation, pits or buckets on informal stand need to be supplied with a basic sanitation facility by 2010. It is estimated that approximately 1,674 households living in settlements and towns are currently in need of sanitation.

It is estimated that it will cost R21,721 million to provide basic sanitation facilities, which is determined at a norm of R13,000 per household for a waterborne toilet and R6,600 for a dry sanitation facility. In the arid rural areas such as Vanwyksvlei provision is made for a dry sanitation only, until the water crises has been resolved.

Available funding is based on the water sector MIG allocation of 53% after the water has been addressed. Based on the above methodology, it is estimated that there is enough funds available for the provision of water sanitation services to the communities of municipalities.

The next table gives an indication of the status at each municipality.

Table 131MIG Funding

Municipality	Water backlogs	Cost to provide water at R10,500/hh	Total Sanitation backlog	Sanitation cost	MIG allocation 53%	Need/shortfall	Adequate funding
Pixley Ka Seme	0	0	0	0	7,449,792	0	Yes
Emthanjeni	124	1,302,000	16	208,000	12,133,253	0	Yes
Kareeberg	4	42,000	44	572,000	8,217,653	0	Yes
Renosterberg	2	21,000	1	13,000	8,517,653	0	Yes
Siyancuma	982	10,311,000	937	12,181,000	16,034,903	6,457,097	No
Siyathemba	93	976,500	112	1,456,000	8,821,265	0	Yes
Thembelihle	0	0	1	13,000	9,838,051	0	Yes

Ubuntu	69	724,500	558	7,254,000	9,944,755	0	Yes
Umsobomvu	331	3,475,500	5	65,000	12,409,107	0	Yes
Total	1,605	16,852,500	1,674	21,762,000	93,365,777	0	Yes

The costs above do not make provision for water and sanitation services to farm households. Additional funding will be required to address water and sanitation needs of households living on farms. An estimated R8,359 million is needed to eradicated the 1,286 households without water and R36,162 million is needed to provide adequate sanitation for the 6,027 households in the district.

Human Resources:

To ensure that Infrastructure Projects are implemented, co-ordinated and monitored timorously in all the Municipalities in the District it is expected that a total of 5 Engineers/Technicians or 4 Engineers/Technicians and 1 Project Managers will be needed.

Currently the District Municipality has 3 permanent Engineers/Technicians and 1 x Project Manager.

Implementation plan focus areas

Taken the above into account, it is the responsibility of the PMU to ensure that the Implementation plan is executed according to the following national targets.

- Addressing all water and sanitation backlogs at schools by 2005. Postponed to 2009.
- Eradicating bucket sanitation on all formal sites by December 2007
- Eradicating water backlogs at clinics by 2007
- Eradicating sanitation backlogs at clinics by 2007
- Eradicating household water backlogs by 2008
- Eradicating household sanitation backlogs by 2010

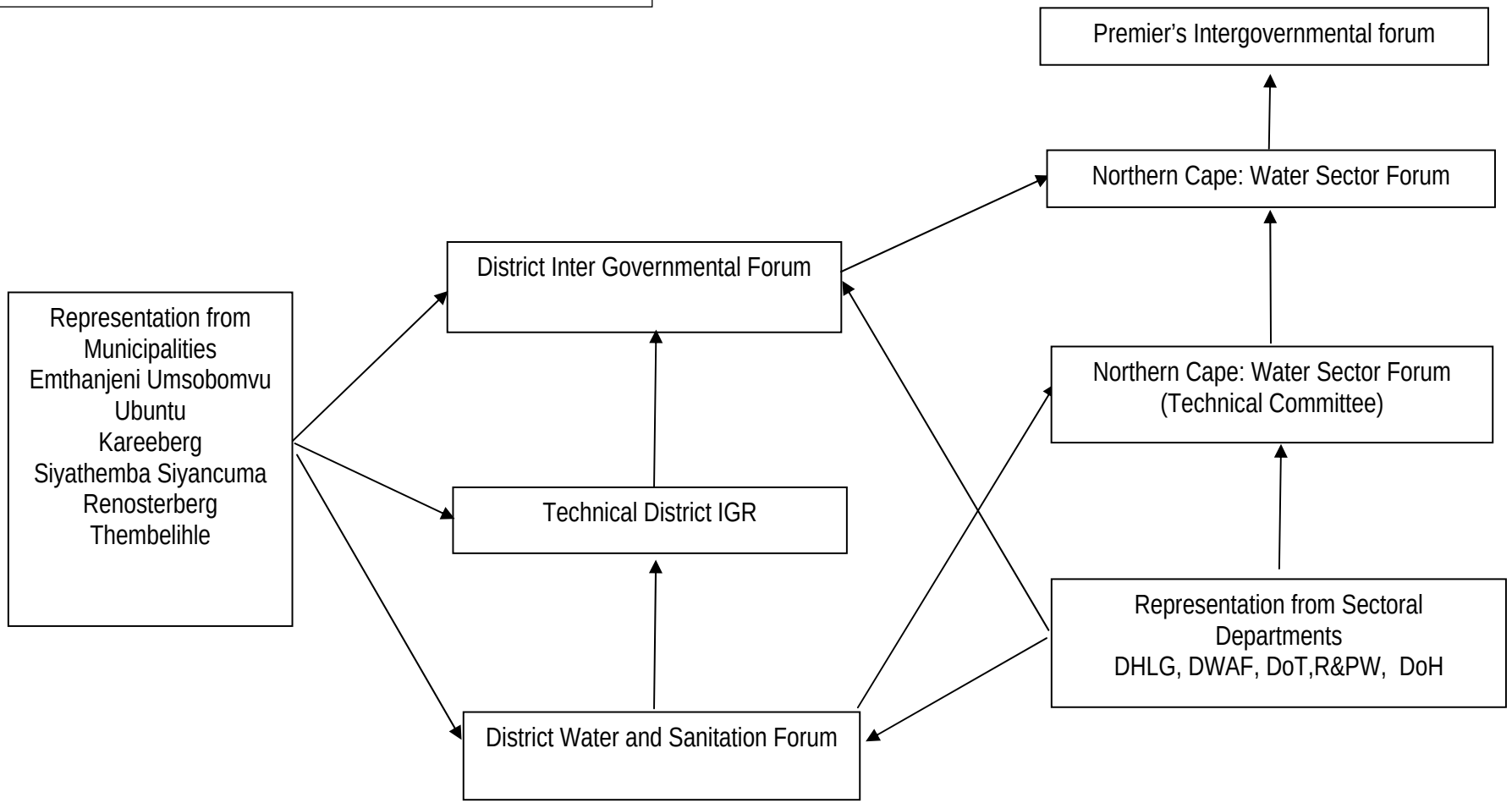
Prioritised Infrastructure delivery areas in the Pixley ka Seme District were identified as:

Issues identified
1. Provision of water 2. Provision of sanitation 3. Provision of electricity 4. Waste Management 5. Municipal Roads and Storm water 6. Area and street lighting 7. Provision of municipal facilities – public transport, emergency services, community services 8. Provincial Road Maintenance – Flood damage, Regravelling, Heavy Maintenance

From the above a draft implementation plan was compiled.

Implementation Plan – 2008-2011

6 Management Structure



Roles and responsibilities

The District Municipality is responsible for the implementation, co-ordination and monitoring of the Pixley ka Seme Infrastructure Implementation Plan. Bi-monthly feedback should be given to the District Water and Sanitation Forum.

District Water and Sanitation Forum
The roles and the responsibilities of the Forum are:

- Responsible for Strategic Planning and Feedback
- Co-ordination of all Infrastructure Programs
- Assist in access of funding
- Provide guidance in Implementation
- Provide support with regard to material and training and
- Provide a channel of communication with Provincial and National Departments, and
- Realign implementation plan when necessary
- Co-ordination of Implementation
- Discuss progress during meeting

District Municipalities:
The roles and responsibilities of the District Municipalities are:

- Development of Infrastructure Implementation Plan for the District
- Management of the Infrastructure Implementation Plan, implementation
- Planning and Identification of options for implementing projects
- Monitoring and Support to Local Municipalities

Local Authorities
The roles and responsibilities of the Local Authorities are:

- Support the execution of the Implementation Plan
- Avail personnel and provide support where needed
- Report progress, needs, resources, etc. to the District Water and Sanitation Forum.

Communication

The Head of Department will report on a quarterly basis. He will be responsible for a progress report to the District IGR Technical Committee, District IGR Forum and Northern Cape: Water Sector Forum (Technical Committee).

Risk Analysis

The following risks with possible solutions have been identified

Category	Risks	Solutions
1. Provision of water	• Lack of funding for mayor projects	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DWAF/ DPLG for funding
2. Provision of sanitation	• Acceptance of Basic Service Level • Lack of funding for mayor projects	• Focus specific messages to specific target groups • Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DWAF/ DPLG for funding
3. Provision of electricity	• Lack of funding for rehabilitation	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DME/ DHLG for funding
4. Waste Management	• Lack of funding	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DTEC/ DPLG for funding
5. Municipal Roads and Storm water	• Lack of funding	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DoT,R&PW/ DPLG for funding
6. Area and street lighting	• Lack of funding	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DME/ DPLG for funding
7. Provision of municipal facilities – public transport, emergency services, community services	• Lack of funding for new infrastructure	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DoT,R&PW / DPLG for funding
8. Provincial Road Maintenance – Flood damage, Regravelling, Heavy Maintenance	• Lack of funding for maintenance • Availability of plant	• Budgets and proposal to be submitted to DoT,R&PW • Plant replacements or hire from service provider

MONITORING AND EVALUATION

The purpose is to determine if activities set out in the Implementation plan are executed and objectives reached within the time and budget as per the implementation plan. If implementation problems arise, delegations to the Water and Sanitation Forum, should give reasons for deviation from the implementation plan and how problems were solved.

5.5.3 YEAR PLAN

The 3 year plan for the implementation of various MIG projects within the district is shown below:

5.5 BUDGET 2009/10 FINANCIAL YEAR (CONCEPT)

5.6 ANNEXTURES

1. **SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (SDF)**
2. **INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWES/ EXPENDITURE NOODRAMPBESTUUR/DISASTER MANAGEMENT PERSONNEL AND COUNCILLOR COST	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
PERSONEELKOSTE/PERSONNEL COSTS						
2040/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing subsidy	23,000	13,373	23,000	18,000	18,900	19,845
2040/05/1/01/0302 Bonus/Bonus	65,000	64,839	65,000	63,000	66,150	69,458
2040/05/1/01/3301 Lone/ Wages	880,000	581,344	880,000	753,000	790,650	830,183
2040/05/1/01/4202 Oortyd/ Overtime	144,000	66,257	144,000	150,000	157,500	165,375
2040/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse/ Salaries					-	-
2040/05/1/01/5701 Telefoon Toelae/ Telephone grants					-	-
2040/05/1/01/6301 Verlof uitbetaling/ Sale of leave					-	-
Subtotal: Personnel Salaries & Wages	**1,112,000**	**725,813**	**1,112,000**	**984,000**	**1,033,200**	**1,084,860**
PERSONNEL SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2040/05/1/02/1801 Groeplewensversekering/ Group life insurance					-	-
2040/05/1/02/3601 Mediese hulpfonds/ Medical Help Fund	57,000	35,890	57,000	23,000	24,150	25,358
2040/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/ Pension Fund	115,000	75,999	115,000	136,000	142,800	149,940
Subtotal: Social Contributions	**172,000**	**111,889**	**172,000**	**159,000**	**166,950**	**175,298**
TOTAAL:PERSONEELKOSTE/TOTAL:PERSONNEL COSTS	**1,284,000**	**837,702**	**1,284,000**	**1,143,000**	**1,200,150**	**1,260,158**

HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2040/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en toerusting/Furniture and equipment	1,000	49	1,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2040/05/1/10/5101 Radio toerusting/Radio equipment	8,000	3,134	8,000	9,000	9,450	9,923
2040/05/1/10/5102 Radioherleierstasie/Radio repeater	30,000	7,127	30,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2040/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	45,000	43,327	45,000	60,000	63,000	66,150
Totaal:Herstel&Onderhoud/Total:Repair&Maintenance	**84,000**	**53,637**	**84,000**	**101,000**	**106,050**	**111,353**

UITGAWES/ EXPENDITURE NOODRAMPBESTUUR/EMERGENCY DISASTER MANAGEMENT	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES

PERSONNEL AND COUNCILLOR COST	08/09	28/02/09	30/06/09	09/10	10/11	11/12
ALGEMENE UITGAWES/GENERAL EXPENDITURE						
2040/05/1/05/0004 Administrasiekoste/ Administration cost					-	-
2040/05/1/05/0303 Beskermende Klere/ Protective Clothing	3,000	-	3,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2040/05/1/05/0304 Brandblussers/ Fire Extinguishers	1,000	-	1,000	3,000	3,150	3,308
2040/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk&Skryfbeh/tes/Printing&Stationary					-	-
2040/05/1/05/0904 Diverse/Inligting/Huur;Diverse/Info./Rent	9,000	6,196	9,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2040/05/1/05/1202 Elektrisiteit & Water/ Electricity & Water	3,000	2,537	3,000	-	-	-
2040/05/1/05/2404 Inventaris Item/Inventory Item	1,000	890	1,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2040/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2040/05/1/05/3006 Kursus/Opleiding Seta;Courses/Training Seta	10,000	7,311	10,000	12,000	12,600	13,230
2040/05/1/05/3301 Lede-/Intekengeld;Membership/Subscrip. fees	1,000	120	1,000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2040/05/1/05/3302 Lisensies/ Licenses	35,000	14,577	35,000	35,000	36,750	38,588
2040/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/ Training Costs					-	-
2040/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/ Posting					-	-
2040/05/1/05/5102 Reis-& Verblyfkoste/Travel-& Subsisitance	22,000	10,547	22,000	22,000	23,100	24,255
2040/05/1/05/5700 Telefoon/Telephone	160,000	94,964	160,000	160,000	168,000	176,400
2040/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cellphone	10,000	7,132	10,000	12,000	12,600	13,230
2040/05/1/05/6303 Versekering-Ongevalle/Insurance-Casualty	6,000	-	6,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2040/05/1/05/6305 Versekering-Werkloos./Insurance-Unemploymt	10,000	7,041	10,000	11,000	11,550	12,128
Subtotaal:Alg. Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept.	**271,000**	**151,315**	**271,000**	**286,000**	**300,300**	**315,315**
KAPITAAL EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2040/05/4/03/0301 Brandbestrydings Toerusting/Fire fighting Equip.				300,000	315,000	330,750
2040/05/4/03/5101 Radio's/Radios					-	-
Subtotaal:Ex AFF/Subtotal:Ex AFF	**-**	**-**	**-**	**300,000**	**315,000**	**330,750**

TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURE	**1,639,000**	**1,042,654**	**1,639,000**	**1,830,000**	**1,921,500**	**2,017,575**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010

GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/ INCOME NOODRAMPBESTUUR/EMERGENCY DISASTER MANAGEMENT	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK. GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC. GENERATED						
SKENKINGS EN SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS AND SUBSIDIES						
2040/05/2/24/0303 Bydrae - NK Prov/Contribution NC Prov	864,000	432,000	864,000	1,027,000	1,078,350	1,132,268
Subtotal: Contributions & Subsidies	**864,000**	**432,000**	**864,000**	**1,027,000**	**1,078,350**	**1,132,268**
ANDER INKOMSTE/ OTHER INCOME						
2040/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/ Telephone Deductions	6,000	3,875	6,000	6,000	6,300	6,615
2040/05/2/30/0320 Telefoonaftrekkings Burg B/Telephone Deductions	6,000	2,895	6,000	6,000	6,300	6,615
Subtotaal: Ander Inkomste/ Subotal: Other Income	**12,000**	**6,770**	**12,000**	**12,000**	**12,600**	**13,230**
Totaal:Bedryfsinkomste Gegenereer/Total:Operating Income Generated	**876,000**	**438,770**	**876,000**	**1,039,000**	**1,103,550**	**1,158,728**
TOTAAL: BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/ TOTAL: OPERATING INCOME	**876,000**	**438,770**	**876,000**	**1,039,000**	**1,103,550**	**1,158,728**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

	BEGROTE	WERKLIKE	VERWAGTE	BEGROTE	BEGROTE	BEGROTE

ONDERSTEUNING & S. DIENSTE/SUPPORT & SOCIAL SERVICES UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
PERS.-RAADSLEDEKOSTE/PERSONNEL-COUNCILLOR COST						
2001/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing subsidy	27,000	20,432	27,000	42,000	44,100	46,305
2001/05/1/01/0302 Bonus/Bonus	114,000	113,702	114,000	256,000	268,800	282,240
2001/05/1/01/3301 Lone-Arbeiders/Wages-Labourers	395,000	254,029	395,000	470,000	493,500	518,175
2001/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Vehicle subsidy	222,000	144,514	222,000	232,000	243,600	255,780
2001/05/1/01/3901 Nywerheidsraad Heffings/Industrial Council levy	3,000	1,975	3,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
2001/05/1/01/4201 Onthaal toelae/Entertainment Allowance	8,000	8,000	8,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2001/05/1/01/4202 Oortyd/Overtime	20,000	-	20,000	50,000	52,500	55,125
2001/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	1,012,000	685,424	1,012,000	1,397,000	1,466,850	1,540,193
2001/05/1/01/0303 NYS Learnerships	1,100,000	671,540	1,100,000	240,000	252,000	264,600
2001/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetaling/Leave Payouts		2,587	2,587		-	-
Subtotaal:Pers. Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal Pers. Salaries&Subsidies	**2,901,000**	**1,902,203**	**2,903,587**	**2,702,000**	**2,837,100**	**2,978,955**
PERS.:SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.:SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2001/05/1/02/3601 Mediese hulpfonds/Medical aid fund	52,000	33,170	52,000	85,000	89,250	93,713
2001/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension fund	235,000	156,146	235,000	336,000	352,800	370,440
2001/05/1/02/4502 Pensioenfonds(EX Gratia)/Pension fund(EX Gratia)	16,000	9,544	16,000	20,000	21,000	22,050
2001/05/1/02/5101 Samwu Voorsorgfonds/Samwu Provident fund	3,000	-	3,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
Subtotaal: Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal: Social Contributions	**306,000**	**198,860**	**306,000**	**446,000**	**468,300**	**491,715**
TOTAL:PERSONNEL-COUNCILOR COST	**3,207,000**	**2,101,063**	**3,209,587**	**3,148,000**	**3,305,400**	**3,470,670**

ONDERSTEUNING & S. DIENSTE/SUPPORT & SOCIAL SERVICES	BEGROTE UITGAWE/	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/	BEGROTE UITGAWE/	BEGROTE UITGAWE/	BEGROTE UITGAWE/

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
ALGEMENE UITGAWES/GENERAL EXPENSES						
DEPARTEMENTEEL/DEPARTMENTAL						
2001/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements	40,000	29,699	40,000	48,000	50,400	52,920
2001/05/1/05/0002 Akte Kantoor Opgawes/ Deed Office Statements	1,000	-	1,000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2001/05/1/05/0303 Beskermende Klere/Protective Clothing	1,000	-	1,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2001/05/1/05/0307 Beserings aan Diens/Injury on Duty	1,000	252	1,000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2001/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary	100,000	50,815	100,000	120,000	126,000	132,300
2001/05/1/05/1201 Eiendomsbelasting/Rates and Taxes	61,000	60,691	61,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2001/05/1/05/1202 Elektrisiteit/Water/ Electricity/Water	60,000	44,741	60,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2001/05/1/05/2404 Inventaris Item/Inventory Item	1,000	-	1,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2001/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses	30,000	23,895	30,000	60,000	63,000	66,150
2001/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental	1,000	799	1,000	-	-	-
2001/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse:Opleiding Seta/Courses:Training Seta	17,000	10,952	17,000	18,000	18,900	19,845
2001/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Cost	346,000	327,883	346,000	345,000	362,250	380,363
2001/05/1/05/4205 Onthaalkoste:Openbaar/Entertainment Cost:Public	15,000	6,611	15,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2001/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage	5,000	2,119	5,000	6,000	6,300	6,615
2001/05/1/05/5101 Regskoste/Legal Cost					-	-
2001/05/1/05/5102 Reis-en Verblyfkoste/Subsistance and Travel Cost	60,000	26,679	60,000	80,000	84,000	88,200
2001/05/1/05/5104 Rente op Eksterne Lening/Interest on External Loan					-	-
2001/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	70,000	51,782	70,000	83,000	87,150	91,508
2001/05/1/05/6301 Verhuisingskoste/Removal Expenses					-	-
2001/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance: General					-	-
2001/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty	7,000	-	7,000	22,500	23,625	24,806
2001/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	12,000	7,435	12,000	16,000	16,800	17,640
2001/05/1/05/6307 Vullisverwydering en Riool/Refuse removal & sewerage	6,000	4,484	6,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2001/05/1/05/6600 Water/Water	10,000	7,427	10,000	-	-	-

2001/05/1/05/4501 Werksevalueering/ Job Evaluation				10,000	10,500	11,025
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawe;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenses;Dept.	**844,000**	**656,264**	**844,000**	**1,060,500**	**1,103,025**	**1,169,201**

ONDERSTEUNING & S. DIENSTE/SUPPORT & SOCIAL SERVICES UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2001/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rent Equipment					-	-
Subtotaal: Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal Contractual Services	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GENERAL EXPENDITURE	**844,000**	**656,264**	**844,000**	**1,060,500**	**1,103,025**	**1,169,201**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2001/05/1/10/1801 Grond-en-Geboue/Land-and-Buildings	60,000	50,649	60,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2001/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment	6,000	5,021	6,000	25,000	26,250	27,563
2001/05/1/10/5103 Rekenaar/ Computer	25,000	23,982	25,000	50,000	52,500	55,125
2001/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/ Vehicles					-	-
2001/05/1/10/6302 Voertuie: Bedryfskoste/Vehicles:Current Cost					-	-
Totaal Herstel en Onderhoud/Total Repair and Maintenance	**91,000**	**79,652**	**91,000**	**175,000**	**183,750**	**192,938**
OORPLASINGS/TRANSFERS						
NA ANDER RESERWES/TO OTHER RESERVES						
2001/05/3/05/1900 Na BFF/To AFF					-	-
2001/05/3/05/1901 Na eksterne lening delging/External loan redemption					-	-
2001/05/3/05/1902 Na Verlof reserwe/To Leave reserve					-	-

2001/05/3/05/1903 Na Oninbare Skulde/To Bad Debts					-	-
TOTAAL:OORPLASING/TOTAL:TRANSFERS	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
CAPEX						
2001/05/4/03/3001Kantoor Meubels&Toerusting/Office furniture&Equip.					-	-
2001/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar Toerusting/Computer Equipment					-	-
2001/05/4/03/6303 Voertuie/Vehicles					-	-
2001/05/4/03/3002 Grond en Geboue/Land and Buildings					-	-
2001/05/4/03/6305 Brandbestrydingstoerusting/Fire Fighting Equipment					-	-
TOTAAL:CAPEX/TOTAL:CAPEX	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/ TOTAL: EXPENDITURES	**4,142,000**	**2,836,979**	**4,144,587**	**4,383,500**	**4,592,175**	**4,832,809**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/

ONDERSTEUNING & S. DIENSTE/SUPPORT & SOCIAL SERVICES	BUDGET INCOME 08/09	ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
HUUR FASILITEITE&TOERUSTING/RENT FACILITIES&EQUIP.						
2001/05/2/27/3001 Kantoorhuur-Ekstern/Office Rental-External	125,000	133,950	133,950	140,000	147,000	154,350
Subtotaal:Huur Fasiliteite & Toerusting/Rent Facilities & Equipment	**125,000**	**133,950**	**133,950**	**140,000**	**147,000**	**154,350**
WINS:VERKOOP VAN BATES/PROFIT:SALE OF ASSETS						
2001/05/2/29/6601 Wins:Verkoop van Bates/Profit:Sale of Assets					-	-
Subtotaal:Wins-Verkoop van Bates/Subtotal:Profit-Sale of Assets	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
ANDER TARIEFHEFFINGS/OTHER TARRIF LEVIES						
2001/05/2/23/0302 Tenderdokumente/Tender documents	10,000	9,050	9,050	9,000	9,450	9,923
	10,000	**9,050**	**9,050**	9,000	9,450	9,923
CAPITAL FROM EFF						
2001/00/0/00/0000 Lening Gebou/Loan Building					-	-
	-	**-**	**-**	-	-	-
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink. gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc. Generated	**135,000**	**143,000**	**143,000**	**149,000**	**156,450**	**164,273**
Totaal:Bedryfsink. gegenereer/Total:Operating Inc. Generated	**135,000**	**143,000**	**143,000**	**149,000**	**156,450**	**164,273**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**135,000**	**143,000**	**143,000**	**149,000**	**156,450**	**164,273**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010 GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010						
FINANSIES/FINANCE UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12

PERS.-RAADSLEDEKOSTE/PERSONNEL-COUNCILLOR COST						
2005/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing subsidy	19,000	12,629	19,000	34,000	35,700	37,485
2005/05/1/01/0302 Bonus/Bonus	111,000	110,931	111,000	252,000	264,600	277,830
2005/05/1/01/3301 Lone-Arbeiders/Wages-Labourers	106,000	84,742	106,000	230,000	241,500	253,575
2005/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Vehicle subsidy	228,000	151,361	228,000	297,000	311,850	327,443
2005/05/1/01/3901 Nywerheidsraad Heffings/Industrial Council levy	6,000	1,975	6,000	7,000	7,350	7,718
2005/05/1/01/4201 Onthaal toelae/Entertainment Allowance	8,000	8,000	8,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2005/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	1,608,000	986,466	1,608,000	1,823,000	1,914,150	2,009,858
2005/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetaling/Leave Payouts					-	-
Subtotaal:Pers. Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal Pers. Salaries&Subsidies	**2,086,000**	**1,356,104**	**2,086,000**	**2,653,000**	**2,785,650**	**2,924,933**
PERS.:SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.:SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2005/05/1/02/1801 Groeplewensversekering/Group life insurance	6,000	-	6,000	7,000	7,350	7,718
2005/05/1/02/3601 Mediese hulpfonds/Medical aid fund	395,000	250,800	395,000	115,000	120,750	126,788
2005/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension fund	235,000	157,021	235,000	329,000	345,450	362,723
2005/05/1/02/4502 Pensioenfonds(EX Gratia)/Pension fund(EX Gratia)	16,000	-	16,000	18,000	18,900	19,845
2005/05/1/02/4503 Mediese helpfonds (EX Gratia)/Medical Aid (EX Gratia)	336,000	222,094	336,000	345,000	362,250	380,363
2005/05/1/02/5101 Samwu Voorsorgfonds/Samwu Provident fund	3,000	-	3,000	4,000	4,200	4,410
Subtotaal: Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal: Social Contributions	**991,000**	**629,915**	**991,000**	**818,000**	**858,900**	**901,845**
TOTAL:PERSONNEL-COUNCILOR COST	**3,077,000**	**1,986,019**	**3,077,000**	**3,471,000**	**3,644,550**	**3,826,778**

FINANSIES/FINANCE UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
ALGEMENE UITGAWES/GENERAL EXPENSES						

DEPARTEMENTEEL/DEPARTMENTAL						
2005/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements		2,800	2,800	-	-	-
2005/05/1/05/0002 Akte Kantoor Opgawes/ Deed Office Statements					-	-
2005/05/1/05/0906 D G D S					-	-
2005/05/1/05/0301 Bankkoste/Bank cost	50,000	31,966	50,000	60,000	63,000	66,150
2005/05/1/05/0302 Bankrente/Bank Interest	30,000	15,475	30,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2005/05/1/05/0303 Beskermende Klere/Protective Clothing					-	-
2005/05/1/05/0307 Beserings aan Diens/Injury on Duty					-	-
2005/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary	2,000	2,484	2,000	-	-	-
2005/05/1/05/1202 Elektrisiteit/Water/Electricity/Water	3,000	2,739	3,000	-	-	-
2005/05/1/05/1501 Fin. Bestuurs Toekening/Fin. Management Allocation	60,000	-	60,000	80,000	84,000	88,200
2005/05/1/05/1801 AAMRP Implementering/GAMAP Implementation	70,000	57,110	70,000	90,000	94,500	99,225
2005/05/1/05/1901 Heffings Terugbetaal/Levies Paid Back	2,000	991	2,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2005/05/1/05/2403 Interne Oudit/Internal Audit					-	-
2005/05/1/05/2404 Inventaris Item/Inventory Item	4,000	3,037	4,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
2005/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses					-	-
2005/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2005/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse:Opleiding Seta/Courses:Training Seta	18,000	11,517	18,000	20,000	21,000	22,050
2005/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Cost					-	-
2005/05/1/05/4206 Oudit/Audit	930,000	624,500	930,000	1,000,000	1,050,000	1,102,500
2005/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2005/05/1/05/5101 Regskoste/Legal Cost	20,000	6,353	20,000	20,000	21,000	22,050
2005/05/1/05/5102 Reis-en Verblyfkoste/Subsistance and Travel Cost	85,000	70,617	85,000	125,000	131,250	137,813
2005/05/1/05/51024 Rente op Eksterne Lening/Interest on External Loan					-	-
2005/05/1/05/5700 Telefoon/Telephone	420,000	122,039	420,000	600,000	630,000	661,500
2005/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	20,000	167,350	20,000	22,000	23,100	24,255
2005/05/1/05/6301 Verhuisingskoste/Removal Expenses					-	-
2005/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance: General	259,000	258,775	259,000	310,000	325,500	341,775
2005/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty	8,000	-	8,000	24,500	25,725	27,011

2005/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	11,000	6,987	11,000	12,000	12,600	13,230
2005/05/1/05/6309 Versekeringseise/ Insurance Claims	70,000	51,958	70,000	70,000	73,500	77,175
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawe;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenses;Dept.	**2,062,000**	**1,436,698**	**2,064,800**	**2,470,500**	**2,594,025**	**2,723,726**

FINANSIES/FINANCE UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2005/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rent Equipment	550,000	291,335	550,000	550,000	577,500	606,375
2005/05/1/08/5101 Rekenaar/Computer	250,000	179,271	250,000	580,000	609,000	639,450
Subtotaal: Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal Contractual Services	**800,000**	**470,606**	**800,000**	**1,130,000**	**1,186,500**	**1,245,825**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GENERAL EXPENDITURE	**2,862,000**	**1,907,304**	**2,864,800**	**3,600,500**	**3,780,525**	**3,969,551**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2005/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment	1,000	-	1,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2005/05/1/10/5103 Rekenaar/ Computer	60,000	2,568	60,000	60,000	63,000	66,150
2005/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/ Vehicles	200,000	152,046	200,000	400,000	420,000	441,000
2005/05/1/10/6302 Voertuie: Bedryfskoste/Vehicles:Current Cost					-	-
2005/05/1/10/6303 Vostersdam	62,000	44,180	62,000	85,000	89,250	93,713
Totaal Herstel en Onderhoud/Total Repair and Maintenance	**323,000**	**198,794**	**323,000**	**547,000**	**574,350**	**603,068**
WAARDEVERMINDERING/DEPRECIATION						
2005/05/1/12/6601 Waardevermindering/Depreciation	500,000	-	500,000	500,000	525,000	551,250

TOTAAL:WAARDEVERMINDERING/TOTAL:DEPRECIATION	**500,000**	**-**	**500,000**	**500,000**	**525,000**	**551,250**
INVORDERINGSKOSTE						
2005/05/1/06/2401 Invorderingskoste					-	-
Totaal: Invorderingskoste	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
OORPLASINGS/TRANSFERS						
NA ANDER RESERWES/TO OTHER RESERVES						
2005/05/3/05/1900 Na BFF/To AFF					-	-
2005/05/3/05/1901 Na eksterne lening delging/External loan redemption					-	-
2005/05/3/05/1902 Na Verlof reserwe/To Leave reserve	60,000	-	60,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2005/05/3/05/1903 Na Oninbare Skulde/To Bad Debts					-	-
TOTAAL:OORPLASING/TOTAL:TRANSFERS	**60,000**	**-**	**60,000**	**100,000**	**105,000**	**110,250**

FINANSIES/FINANCE UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
CAPEX						
2005/05/4/03/3001Kantoor Meubels&Toerusting/Office furniture&Equip.	10,000	4,950	10,000	150,000	157,500	165,375
2005/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar Toerusting/Computer Equipment	60,000	34,125	60,000	150,000	157,500	165,375
2005/05/4/03/6303 Voertuie/Vehicles				500,000	525,000	551,250
2005/05/4/03/3002 Grond en Geboue/Land and Buildings	5,491,000	5,024,845	5,491,000	500,000	525,000	551,250

2005/05/4/03/6305 Brandbestrydingstoerusting/Fire Fighting Equipment	300,000	-	300,000		-	-
TOTAAL:CAPEX/TOTAL:CAPEX	**5,861,000**	**39,075**	**5,861,000**	**1,300,000**	**1,365,000**	**1,433,250**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/ TOTAL: EXPENDITURES	**12,683,000**	**4,131,192**	**12,685,800**	**9,518,500**	**9,994,425**	**10,494,146**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME **FINANSIES/FINANCE**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09**	**WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12**

BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
INTERNE OORPLASINGS/INTERNAL TRANSFERS						
2005/05/2/36/0001 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost	1,687,000	-	1,687,000	1,687,000	1,771,350	1,859,918
2005/05/2/36/5701 Toewysing van Hulpdienste/Allocation: Support Services					-	-
Subtotaal: Interne Oorplasings/Subtotal: Internal Transfers	**1,687,000**	**-**	**1,687,000**	**1,687,000**	**1,771,350**	**1,859,918**
SKENKINGS&SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS&SUBSIDIES						
2005/05/2/24/0301 Fin.Bestuurs Toekening/Contribution:Fin.Man. Alloc.	500,000	500,000	500,000	750,000	787,500	826,875
2005/05/2/24/0307 Bydrae Heffings	13,857,000	8,083,150	13,857,000	14,794,000	15,533,700	16,310,385
2005/05/2/24/1201 Equitable Share					-	-
2005/05/2/24/5401 Seta Toekening/Seta Allocation					-	-
Subtotaal:Skenkings&Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments&Subsidies	**14,357,000**	**8,583,150**	**14,357,000**	**15,544,000**	**16,321,200**	**17,137,260**
BOETES/FINES						
2005/05/2/25/0301 Boetes - Verskeie/Fines - Various					-	-
Subtotaal:Boetes/Subtotal:Fines	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
RENTE/INTERESTS						
2005/05/2/26/5101 Rente - Bankrekening/Interest - Bank Account	52,000	56,784	52,000	60,000	63,000	66,150
2005/05/2/26/5102 Rente - Delgingsfonds/Interest - Redemption Fund					-	-
2005/05/2/26/5105 Rente - Belegging/Interest - Investment	2,040,000	126,471	2,040,000	1,000,000	1,050,000	1,102,500
Subtotaal:Rente/Subtotal:Interest	**2,092,000**	**183,255**	**2,092,000**	**1,060,000**	**1,113,000**	**1,168,650**

INKOMSTE/INCOME **FINANSIES/FINANCE**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09**	**WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12**

ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2005/05/2/30/0004 Agterstallige Heffings	201,000	202,888	201,000	70,000		
2005/05/2/30/0308 Versekeringseise/Insurance claims	141,000	141,783	141,000	50,000	52,500	55,125
2005/05/2/30/0309 Inkomste uit belegging/Income from investment	5,980,000	5,996,377	5,980,000	500,000	525,000	551,250
2005/05/2/30/1801 Gelde - Verskeie/Money - Various	15,000	16,108	15,000	15,000	15,750	16,538
2005/05/2/30/0310 Inkomste Vostersdam/Income Vostersdam	3,000	2,300	3,000	3,000		
2005/05/2/30/0313 Reis & Verblyf Terugbetaling/Subs. & Travelling Refund	3,000	3,443	3,000	-		
2005/05/2/30/0314 Voertuighuur/Vehicle Rental					-	-
2005/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone deductions					-	-
2005/05/2/30/0317 Salaristerugbetalings/Salary repayments						
2005/05/2/30/0318 Medies EX Gratia/Medical Aid EX Gratia	341,000	341,368	341,000	360,000	378,000	396,900
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Subtotal:Other Income	**6,684,000**	**6,704,267**	**6,684,000**	**998,000**	**971,250**	**1,019,813**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**24,820,000**	**15,470,672**	**24,820,000**	**19,289,000**	**20,176,800**	**21,185,640**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE **RAADSUITGAWES/COUNCIL EXPENSES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES**

	08/09	28/02/09	30/06/09	09/10	10/11	11/12
PERS.-RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL-COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARISSE&TOELAE/PERS.-SALARIES&SUBSIDIES						
2025/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowance				-	-	-
2025/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonuses	62,000	61,189	62,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2025/05/1/01/0304 YAC Toelaag/YAC Allowance	879,000	527,280	879,000	1,200,000	1,260,000	1,323,000
2025/05/1/01/1501 Fasiliteite Toelae/Facilities Allowance					-	-
2025/05/1/01/3301 Lone/Wages	27,000	16,200	27,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2025/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Motor Allowance	84,000	54,992	84,000	112,000	117,600	123,480
2025/05/1/01/4201 Onthaaltoelae/Entertainment Allowance					-	-
2025/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	1,020,000	661,370	1,020,000	1,200,000	1,260,000	1,323,000
2025/05/1/01/5701 Telefoon Toelae/Telephone Subsidy					-	-
2025/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetalings/Leave Pay-outs					-	-
2025/05/1/01/6302 Vervoertoelae/Transport Allowance					-	-
Subtotal:Pers.Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Pers. Salaries&Subsidies	**2,072,000**	**1,321,031**	**2,072,000**	**2,642,000**	**2,774,100**	**2,912,805**
PERS.SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2025/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund					-	-
2025/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	32,000	19,509	32,000	43,000	45,150	47,408
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**32,000**	**19,509**	**32,000**	**43,000**	**45,150**	**47,408**

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE **RAADSUITGAWES/COUNCIL EXPENSES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
RAADSLEDE-SALARISSE&TOELAE/SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
TOELAE/ALLOWANCES						

2025/05/1/03/5701 Voorsitter Uitvoer. Komitee/Chair:Exec. Committee					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5702 Raadslede/Councillors	2,269,000	1,412,175	2,269,000	2,496,000	2,620,800	2,751,840
2025/05/1/03/5703 Raadslede (Deeltyds)/Councillors (Parttime)					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5704 Onder-Burgemeester/Vice-Mayor					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5705 Uitvoerende Kommitee/Executive Committee					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5706 Burgemeester/Mayor					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5707 Burgemeester-Algemeen/Mayor-General					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5708 Raadslede-Telefoon/Councillors-Telephone					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5709 Raadslede-Vervoer/Councillors-Transport	820,000	455,816	820,000	902,000	947,100	994,455
2025/05/1/03/5710 Raadslede-Med. Hulpfonds/Councillor-Med. Aid Fund					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5711 Raadslede-Pensioenfonds/Councillors-Pension Fund					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5712 Raadslede-Behuising/Councillors-Housing					-	-
2025/05/1/03/5713 Raadslede-Fasiliteite/Councillors-Facilities					-	-
Subtotal:Raadslede-Sal.&Toelae/Subtotal:Councillors-Sal.&Allowances	**3,089,000**	**1,867,991**	**3,089,000**	**3,398,000**	**3,567,900**	**3,746,295**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillors Cost	**5,193,000**	**3,208,531**	**5,193,000**	**6,083,000**	**6,387,150**	**6,706,508**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2025/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment	2,000	2,446	2,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2025/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	300,000	200,979	300,000	250,000	262,500	275,625
Totaal: Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenance	**302,000**	**203,425**	**302,000**	**252,000**	**264,600**	**277,830**
KAPITAAL EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2025/05/4/03/3001 Kantoor Meubels en Toerusting/Office Furniture and Equipment					-	-
Subtotaal:EX BFF/Subtotal:EX AFF	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
TOTAAL:NUWE KAPITAAL/TOTAL:NEW CAPITAL	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE RAADSUITGAWES/COUNCIL EXPENSES	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
ALGEMENE UITGAWES/GENERAL EXPENDITURE						
DEPARTEMENTEEL/DEPARTMENTAL						
2025/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements	3,000	2,800	3,000	-	-	-
2025/05/1/05/0004 National Youth Advisory Centre's/NYAC	875,000	873,438	875,000	450,000	472,500	496,125
2025/05/1/05/0305 Burgemeestersfonds/Mayoral Fund	70,000	60,694	70,000	70,000	73,500	77,175
2025/05/1/05/0901 Diverse koste/Diverse Cost					-	-
2025/05/1/05/0902 Donasies/Donations	110,000	84,047	110,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2025/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary					-	-
2025/05/1/05/2404 Inventaris Item/Inventory Item					-	-
2025/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2025/05/1/05/3003 Kongresse-Afvaardigingskoste/Congress-Delegation Costs	8,000	-	8,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2025/05/1/05/3005 Kranse en Ruikers/Wreaths and Bouquets					-	-
2025/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding Seta/Courses-Training Seta	25,000	27,472	25,000	40,000	42,000	44,100
2025/05/1/05/3301 Ledegeld-Intekengeld/Membership-Subscription Fees	60,000	83,895	60,000	120,000	126,000	132,300
2025/05/1/05/3901 Naams Verandering/Name Changing					-	-
2025/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Cost	50,000	8,035	50,000	40,000	42,000	44,100
2025/05/1/05/4203 Opleidingsfonds - Vakleerlinge/Training Fund-Apprentices					-	-
2025/05/1/05/4204 Onthaalkoste:Mun.Bestuur/Entertainment:Mun.Manager					-	-
2025/05/1/05/4205 Onthaalkoste:Openbare /Entertainment Cost:Public	100,000	72,677	100,000	110,000	115,500	121,275
2025/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2025/05/1/05/5101 Regskoste/Legal Cost					-	-
2025/05/1/05/5103 Reis-&Verblyf-B/meester/Travel&Subsistance-Mayor	130,000	130,293	130,000	80,000	84,000	88,200
2025/05/1/05/5105 Reis-&Verblyf-Raadslede/Travel&Subsistance-Councilors	190,000	109,577	190,000	200,000	210,000	220,500
2025/05/1/05/5402 Speakers fonds/Speakers Fund	40,000	39,200	40,000	50,000	52,500	55,125

2025/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	130,000	84,552	130,000	140,000	147,000	154,350
2025/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General				14,000	14,700	15,435
2025/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty					-	-
2025/05/1/05/6304 Versekering:Raadslede/Insurance:Councillors	19,000	9,258	19,000	19,000	19,950	20,948
2025/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	14,000	9,836	14,000	14,000	14,700	15,435
2025/05/1/05/6308 Verversings:Raadslede/Catering:Councillors	65,000	21,138	65,000	80,000	84,000	88,200
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept.	**1,889,000**	**1,616,912**	**1,889,000**	**1,535,000**	**1,611,750**	**1,692,338**
TOTAAL:ALG. UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN. EXPENDITURE	**1,889,000**	**1,616,912**	**1,889,000**	**1,535,000**	**1,611,750**	**1,692,338**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURE	**7,384,000**	**5,028,868**	**7,384,000**	**7,870,000**	**8,263,500**	**8,676,675**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME **RAADSUITGAWES/COUNCIL EXPENSES**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09**	**WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12**
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						

ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2025/05/2/30/0313 Reis en verblyf terugbetaling	2,000	1,254	2,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2025/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone deductions	45,000	33,644	45,000	50,000	52,500	55,125
2025/05/2/30/0316 Salga Terugbetalings/Salga Repayments					-	-
	47,000	34,898	47,000	52,000	54,600	57,330
SKENKINGS EN SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS AND SUBSIDIES						
2025/05/2/24/1201 Equitable Share	838,000	488,819	838,000	998,000	1,047,900	1,100,295
2025/05/2/24/4201 National Youth Advisory Centres/NYAC	1,500,000	892,968	1,500,000	450,000		
Subtotaal:Skenkings&Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments&Subsidies	**2,338,000**	**1,381,787**	**2,338,000**	**1,448,000**	**1,047,900**	**1,100,295**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink.Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc. Generated	**2,385,000**	**1,416,685**	**2,385,000**	**1,500,000**	**1,102,500**	**1,157,625**
TOTAL:BEDRYFSINK.GEGEN/OPERATING INC.GENERATED	**2,385,000**	**1,416,685**	**2,385,000**	**1,500,000**	**1,102,500**	**1,157,625**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**2,385,000**	**1,416,685**	**2,385,000**	**1,500,000**	**1,102,500**	**1,157,625**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE GOP/IDP	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
ALGEMENE UITGAWES/GENERAL EXPENDITURE - DEPARTMENT						

					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2406 HIV Special Project					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2407 Bulkwater Supply Petrusville					-	-
2035/05/1/05 2408 Radio Ulwazi	150,000	150,000	150,000	160,000	168,000	176,400
2035/05/1/05/2410 MIG Projects	10,000,000	14,667,571	15,000,000	5,449,000	5,721,450	6,007,523
2035/05/1/05/2411 Sanitation					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2412 Renosterberg: Electricity					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2413 Kareeberg Operational Plan	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	525,000	551,250
2035/05/1/05/2414 Siyathemba Stormwater					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2704 Project Skietfontein					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2418 Crime Prevention	10,000	-	10,000	15,000	15,750	16,538
2035/05/1/05/2419 D.M.A					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2420 Gender	25,000	23,250	25,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2035/05/1/05/2421 HIV/AIDS	200,000	181,500	200,000	220,000	231,000	242,550
2035/05/1/05/2422 Innovative Fund	820,000	357,463	819,000	500,000	525,000	551,250
2035/05/1/05/2423 L.E.D	720,000	680,369	720,000	720,000	756,000	793,800
2035/05/1/05/2424 Tourism	150,000	21,475	150,000	170,000	178,500	187,425
2035/05/1/05/2425 Youth	30,000	29,100	30,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2035/05/1/05/2428 Pimss Operational Centre	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000	210,000	220,500
2035/05/1/05/2430 Disabillity Programs	10,000	-	10,000	20,000	21,000	22,050
2035/05/1/05/2431 Bulk Supply Petrusville	9,215,000	9,214,274	9,215,000	17,000,000	17,850,000	18,742,500
2035/05/1/05/2432 Skool Sanitasie Program/School Sanitation Program	485,000	130,741	485,000	9,515,000	9,990,750	10,490,288
2035/05/1/05/2436 Vloedskade/Flood Damage	500,000	362,301	500,000	400,000	420,000	441,000
2035/05/1/05/2437 Lotto Siyathemba					-	-
2035/05/1/05/2438 Lotto Ubuntu	450,000	185,000	450,000	-	-	-
2035/05/1/05/2439 Lotto Thembelihle	450,000	347,894	450,000	-	-	-
2035/05/1/05/2440 Lotto Niekerkshoop				-	-	-
2035/05/1/05/2441 Lotto Commission	100,000	87,719	100,000	-	-	-
2035/05/1/05/2601 Sanitation Projects/Sanitasie Projekte	1,000,000	378,037	1,000,000	-	-	-

2035/05/1/05/2701 O & M Water	32,000	31,018	32,000	-	-	-
2035/05/1/05/2703 Kraglyne/Powerlines	700,000	700,000	700,000	-	-	-

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE GOP/IDP	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
2035/05/1/05/270 Projek Skietfontein/Project Skietfontein	30,000	30,263	31,000	-	-	-
2035/05/1/05/5104 Rente op Eksterne Lening/Interest on External Loan	260,000	142,132	260,000		-	-
2035/05/3/05/1901 Rente op Eksterne Lening/Interest on External Loan	550,000	317,736	550,000	450,000	472,500	496,125
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept.	**26,587,000**	**28,737,843**	**31,587,000**	**35,379,000**	**37,147,950**	**39,005,348**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURE	**26,587,000**	**28,737,843**	**31,587,000**	**35,379,000**	**37,147,950**	**39,005,348**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME GOP/IDP	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
SKENKINGS EN SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS AND SUBSIDIES						

2035/05/2/22/0301 Bydrae Munisipaliteite/Contribution Municipalities	400,000	350,000	350,000			
2035/05/2/24/1201 Equitable Share	5,586,000	3,240,959	5,586,000	7,147,000	7,504,350	7,879,568
2035/05/2/24/1202 MIG Grant	10,000,000	13,432,006	15,000,000	5,449,000	5,721,450	6,007,523
2035/05/2/24/1203 EPWP					-	-
2035/05/2/24/1204 Sanitation	1,000,000	809,151	1,000,000	-	-	-
2035/05/2/24/1205 Vloedskade/Flood Damage	500,000	362,301	500,000	400,000	420,000	441,000
2035/05/2/24/1212 Bulk Water Supply				17,000,000	17,850,000	18,742,500
2035/05/2/24/1213 School Saitation				9,515,000	9,990,750	10,490,288
2035/05/2/24/1208 Powerline Subsidy/Kraglyn subsidi	700,000	700,000	700,000	-	-	-
2035/05/2/24/1209 Project Skietfontein(Namakqua DM0	30,000	-	30,000	-	-	-
2035/05/2/24/1210 Lotto	1,000,000	462,719	1,000,000	-	-	-
Subtotaal:Skenkings en Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments and Subsidies	**19,216,000**	**19,357,136**	**24,166,000**	**39,511,000**	**41,486,550**	**43,560,878**
ANDER INKOMSTE						
BYDRAES/CONTRIBUTIONS						
2035/05/2/30/0304 Uit B.F.F/Out of A.F.F					-	-
2035/05/2/30/0305 DWAF	9,700,000				-	-
2035/05/2/30/0306 Ander/Other	571,000				-	-
2035/05/2/30/0307 Surplusfonds/Surplus Funds					-	-
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Subtotal:Other Income	**10,271,000**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink. Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc.Generated	**29,487,000**	**19,357,136**	**24,166,000**	**39,511,000**	**41,486,550**	**43,560,878**
TOTAL:BEDRYFSINK.GEGEN/TOT:OPERATING INC.GENERATED	**29,487,000**	**19,357,136**	**24,166,000**	**39,511,000**	**41,486,550**	**43,560,878**
INTERNE OORPLASINGS/INTERNAL TRANSFERS						
2035/05/2/36/2401 Infrastruktuurdienste/Infrastructure Services					-	-
2035/05/2/36/5701 Toewysing van Hulpdienste/Allocation:Support Services					-	-
Subtotaal:Interne Oorplasings/Subtotal:Internal Transfers	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

2035/05/3/39/9999 Surplus/Verlies / Surplus/Loss					-	-
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTES/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**29,487,000**	**19,357,136**	**24,166,000**	**39,511,000**	**41,486,550**	**43,560,878**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE **MUNISIPALE BESTUURDER/MUNICIPAL MANAGER**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
PERS.-RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL-COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARIS&TOELAE/PERSONNEL-SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
2030/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowance	12,000	8,495	12,000	10,000	10,500	11,025

2030/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonusses	109,000	108,281	109,000	211,000	221,550	232,628
2030/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Car Allowance	145,000	117,143	145,000	279,000	292,950	307,598
2030/05/1/01/4201 Onthaaltoelae/Entertainment Allowance	50,000	25,000	50,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2030/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	776,000	544,128	776,000	1,216,000	1,276,800	1,340,640
2030/05/1/01/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone					-	-
2030/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetalings/Leave Pay-outs	103,000	102,258	103,000		-	-
Subtotal:Pers.-Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Pers.-Salaries&Allowances	**1,195,000**	**905,305**	**1,195,000**	**1,746,000**	**1,833,300**	**1,924,965**
PERS.SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERSONNEL SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2030/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund				20,000		
2030/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	120,000	88,493	120,000	218,000	228,900	240,345
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**120,000**	**88,493**	**120,000**	**238,000**	**228,900**	**240,345**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillor Cost	**1,315,000**	**993,798**	**1,315,000**	**1,984,000**	**2,062,200**	**2,165,310**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2030/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment					-	-
2030/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	12,000	5,975	12,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
Totaal:Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenance	**12,000**	**5,975**	**12,000**	**5,000**	**5,250**	**5,513**

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE **MUNISIPALE BESTUURDER/MUNICIPAL MANAGER**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
ALGEMENE UITGAWES;DEPT./GENERAL EXPENDITURE;DEPT.						

2030/05/1/05/0004 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost					-	-
2030/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary					-	-
2030/05/1/05/2404 Inventaris Item/Inventory Item	30,000	29,906	30,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
2030/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses					-	-
2030/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2030/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding Seta/Courses-Training Seta	12,000	7,754	12,000	13,000	13,650	14,333
2030/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Costs					-	-
2030/05/1/05/4207 Onthaalkoste/Entertainment Costs	10,000	4,447	10,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2030/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2030/05/1/05/5101 Regskoste/Legal Costs					-	-
2030/05/1/05/5102 Reis-en Verblyfkoste/Subsistance-and Travel Cost	160,000	100,263	160,000	160,000	168,000	176,400
2030/05/1/05/5404 Strategiese Beplanning/Strategic Planning	25,000	3,894	25,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2030/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	35,000	19,888	35,000	40,000	42,000	44,100
2030/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General				-	-	-
2030/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty	3,000	-	3,000	16,000	16,800	17,640
2030/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	4,000	2,342	4,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawe;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept.	**279,000**	**168,494**	**279,000**	**279,000**	**292,950**	**307,598**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN.EXPENDITURE	**279,000**	**168,494**	**279,000**	**279,000**	**292,950**	**307,598**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURE	**1,606,000**	**1,168,267**	**1,606,000**	**2,268,000**	**2,360,400**	**2,478,420**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010 GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010						
INKOMSTE/INCOME **MUNISIPALE BESTUURDER/MUNICIPAL MANAGER**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09**	**WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12**
BEDRYFSINK. GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
ANDER INKOMSTE						
Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone deductions	15,000	10,070	15,000	15,000	15,750	16,538
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Subtotal:Other Income	**15,000**	**10,070**	**15,000**	**15,000**	**15,750**	**16,538**

Subtotaal:Bedryfsink. Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc. Generated	**15,000**	**10,070**	**15,000**	**15,000**	**15,750**	**16,538**
INTERNE OORPLASINGS/INTERNAL TRANSFERS						
2030/05/2/36/0001 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost						
2030/05/2/36/5701 Toewysing van Hulpdienste/Allocation:Support Services						
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**15,000**	**10,070**	**15,000**	**15,000**	**15,750**	**16,538**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE **INTERNE OUDIT/INTERNAL AUDIT**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
PERS./RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL/COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARISSE&TOELAE/PERS.-SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
2020/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowances	3,000	2,000	3,000	12,000	12,600	13,230
2020/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonusses	108,000	111,178	108,000	157,017	164,868	173,111
2020/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Car Allowances	164,000	109,482	164,000	247,602	259,982	272,981

2020/05/1/01/3901 Nywerheidsraad Heffings/Industrial Council Levy					-	-
2020/05/1/01/4201 Onthaaltoelae/Entertainment Allowance	8,000	5,000	8,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2020/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	1,234,000	820,250	1,234,000	1,985,000	2,084,250	2,188,463
2020/05/1/01/5701 Telefoon Toelae/Telephone Allowance					-	-
2020/05/1/01/6301 VerlofUitbetalings/Leave Pay-outs	25,000	21,812	25,000		-	-
Subtotaal:Personeel-Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Salaries&Allowances	**1,542,000**	**1,069,722**	**1,542,000**	**2,411,619**	**2,532,200**	**2,658,810**
PERS.-SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.-SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2020/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund	62,000	39,744	62,000	105,000	110,250	115,763
2020/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	216,000	146,649	216,000	340,000	357,000	374,850
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**278,000**	**186,393**	**278,000**	**445,000**	**467,250**	**490,613**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillor Cost	**1,820,000**	**1,256,115**	**1,820,000**	**2,856,619**	**2,999,450**	**3,149,422**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2020/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment	1,000	49	1,000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2020/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	100,000	61,552	100,000	120,000	126,000	132,300
Totaal:Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenance	**101,000**	**61,601**	**101,000**	**121,000**	**127,050**	**133,403**
KAPITAAL: EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2020/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar Toerusting/Computer Equipment			-	-	-	-
Subtotaal: Ex Bff/Subtotal: Ex Aff	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

UITGAWE/EXPENDITURE **INTERNE OUDIT/INTERNAL AUDIT**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**

ALGEMENE UITGAWES/GENERAL EXPENDITURES						
DEPARTEMENTEEL/DEPARTMENTAL						
2020/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Sktyfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary					-	-
2020/05/1/05/2404 Inventaris Item/Inventory Item	1,000	-	1,000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2020/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses					-	-
2020/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2020/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding Seta/Courses-Training Seta	15,000	9,549	15,000	16,000	16,800	17,640
2020/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Cost					-	-
2020/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2020/05/1/05/5102 Reis-& Verblyfkoste/Travel-& Subsistance Cost	150,000	87,262	150,000	150,000	157,500	165,375
2020/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	35,000	22,077	35,000	40,000	42,000	44,100
2020/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General					-	-
2020/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty	8,000	-	8,000	23,000	24,150	25,358
2020/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	9,000	5,490	9,000	13,000	13,650	14,333
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept.	**218,000**	**124,378**	**218,000**	**243,000**	**255,150**	**267,908**
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2020/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rental Equipment					-	-
Subtotaal:Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal:Contractual Services	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
TOTAAL:ALG. UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN. EXPENDITURE	**218,000**	**124,378**	**218,000**	**243,000**	**255,150**	**267,908**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURE	**2,139,000**	**1,442,094**	**2,139,000**	**3,220,619**	**3,381,650**	**3,550,732**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME INTENE OUDIT/INTERNAL AUDIT	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
TARIEFHEFFINGS						
2020/05/2/22/0301 Cont.Municipalities/Bydrae Munisipaliteite	740,000	749,952	740,000	825,000	866,250	909,563
Subtotaal:Skenkings & Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments & Subsidies	**740,000**	**749,952**	**740,000**	**825,000**	**866,250**	**909,563**
SKENKINGS & SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS & SUBSIDIES						

BYDRAES/CONTRIBUTIONS						
2020/05/2/24/0301 Fin.Bestuurstoekening/Fin. Management Allocation					-	-
2020/05/2/24/0302 Cont.Municipalities/Bydrae Munisipaliteite					-	-
Subtotaal:Skenkings & Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments & Subsidies	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2020/05/2/30/0303 Bydrae:Karoo DM/Contribution:Karoo DM					-	-
2020/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone Deductions	8,000	6,009	8,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Subtotal:Other Income	**8,000**	**6,009**	**8,000**	**10,000**	**10,500**	**11,025**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink. Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc. Generated	**748,000**	**755,961**	**748,000**	**835,000**	**876,750**	**920,588**
TOT:BEDRYFSINK.GENEREER/TOT:OPERATING INC.GENERATED	**748,000**	**755,961**	**748,000**	**835,000**	**876,750**	**920,588**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**748,000**	**755,961**	**748,000**	**835,000**	**876,750**	**920,588**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010 GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010						
UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE ONTW.& INFR./DEVELOPMENT & INFRASTRUCTURE	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
PERS./RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL/COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARISSE&TOELAE/PERS.-SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
2010/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowances					-	-
2010/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonusses	35,000	34,277	35,000	40,000	42,000	44,100
2010/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Car Allowances	70,000	42,000	70,000	84,000	88,200	92,610
2010/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	384,000	246,660	384,000	476,000	499,800	524,790
2010/05/1/01/3301 Lone/Wages	2,000	1,200	2,000	3,000	3,150	3,308
2010/05/1/01/4201 Onthaaltoelae/Entertainment Allowance					-	-

2010/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetalings/Leave Payments						
Subtotaal:Pers.-Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Pers.-Salaries&Allowances	**491,000**	**324,137**	**491,000**	**603,000**	**633,150**	**664,808**
PERS.SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2010/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund					-	-
2010/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	29,000	18,837	29,000	33,000	34,650	36,383
2010/05/1/02/5101 Samwu Voorsorgfonds/Samwu Provident Fund	6,000	-	6,000	7,000	7,350	7,718
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**35,000**	**18,837**	**35,000**	**40,000**	**42,000**	**44,100**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillor Cost	**526,000**	**342,974**	**526,000**	**643,000**	**675,150**	**708,908**
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2001/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rent Equipment					-	-
Subtotaal: Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal Contractual Services	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2010/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment	-	95	8,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2010/05/1/10/5103 Rekenaar/Computer	8,000	7,587	8,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2010/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	30,000	17,452	30,000	35,000	36,750	38,588
Totaal:Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenace	**38,000**	**25,134**	**46,000**	**45,000**	**47,250**	**49,613**
KAPITAAL EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2010/05/4/03/3001 Kantoor meubels&toerusting/Office furniture&equip.					-	-
2010/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar toerusting					-	-
Subtotaal:Kapitaal Ex BFF/Subtotal:Capital Ex AFF	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/**

ONTW.& INFR./DEVELOPMENT & INFRASTRUCTURE	BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
ALGEMENE UITGAWES;Dept./GENERAL EXPENDITURES;Dept.						
2010/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements	1,000	462	1,000	-	-	-
2010/05/1/05/0003 Armlastige Begrafnisse/Pauper Funerals					-	-
2010/05/1/05/0004 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost					-	-
2010/05/1/05/0306 Bydrae NK Toerisme/Contributions NC Tourism					-	-
2010/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary	3,000	2,211	3,000	-	-	-
2010/05/1/05/2404 Invenaris Item/Inventory Item					-	-
2010/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses	100	29	100	-	-	-
2010/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2010/05/1/05/3004 Konsultasiefooie/Consultation Fees	1,600,000	892,625	1,592,000	1,600,000	1,680,000	1,764,000
2010/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding SETA/Courses-Training SETA	3,900	2,948	3,900	5,000	5,250	5,513
2010/05/1/05/4201 Ontsmettings Middels/Disinfectants					-	-
2010/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Costs					-	-
2010/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2010/05/1/05/5102 Reis-& Verblyfkoste/Travel-& Subsistance Cost	185,000	153,652	185,000	200,000	210,000	220,500
2010/05/1/05/5401 Skoonmaakmateriaal/Cleaning Material	1,000	538	1000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2010/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	25,000	16,931	25,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2010/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General					-	-
2010/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty				6,000	6,300	6,615
2010/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	3,000	1,909	3,000	3,000	3,150	3,308
2010/05/1/05/6306 Voedsel & Water Monsters/Food & Water Samples					-	-
2010/05/1/05/6601 Waardasie Koste/Valuation Cost					-	-
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept	**1,822,000**	**1,071,305**	**1,814,000**	**1,845,000**	**1,937,250**	**2,034,113**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN.EXPENDITURE	**1,822,000**	**1,071,305**	**1,814,000**	**1,845,000**	**1,937,250**	**2,034,113**

TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURES	**2,386,000**	**1,439,413**	**2,386,000**	**2,533,000**	**2,659,650**	**2,792,633**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY **ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010** **GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010**						
INKOMSTE/INCOME **ONTW.& INFR./DEVELOPMENT & INFRASTRUCTURE**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09**	**WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11**	**BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12**
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
TARIEFHEFFINGS/TARIFF LEVIES						
2010/05/2/22/0301 Bydrae-Munisipaliteite/Contributions-Municipalities					-	-
Subtotaal:Tariefheffings/Subtotal:Tariff Levies	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
SKENKINGS & SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS & SUBSIDIES						
2010/05/2/24/5402 M.I.G Grant PMU	952,000	670,000	952,000		-	-
2010/05/2/24/3601 M.I.G Administrasietoelae/M.I.G Administration Grant					-	-

2010/05/2/24/5402 Subsidie E P W P					-	-
Subtotaal:Skenkings & Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments & Subsidies	**952,000**	**670,000**	**952,000**	**-**	**-**	**-**
ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2010/05/2/30/0306 Bydrae - Ander					-	-
2010/05/2/30/0309 Inkomste uit belegging/Income from investment					-	-
2010/05/2/30/0313 Reis en verblyf terugbetalings/S & T repayments					-	-
2010/05/2/30/0314 Voertuighuur/Vehicle rental					-	-
2010/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone deductions	3,000	4,030	3,000	4,000	4,200	4,410
2010/05/2/30/1801 Gelde verskeie/Monies-variuos					-	-
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Other Income	**3,000**	**4,030**	**3,000**	**4,000**	**4,200**	**4,410**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink.Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc.Generated	**955,000**	**674,030**	**955,000**	**4,000**	**4,200**	**4,410**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**955,000**	**674,030**	**955,000**	**4,000**	**4,200**	**4,410**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010 GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010						
UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE **OMGEWINGSGESONDHEID/ENVIROMENTAL HEALTH**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
PERS./RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL/COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARISSE&TOELAE/PERS.-SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
2012/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowances	9,000	5,836	9,000	-	-	-
2012/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonusses	46,000	45,036	46,000	77,000	80,850	84,893
2012/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Car Allowances					-	-
2012/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	650,000	441,351	650,000	919,000	964,950	1,013,198
2012/05/1/01/6001 Uniformtoelae/Uniform Allowance					-	-
2012/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetalings/Leave Pay-outs	4,000	3,885	4,000	-	-	-
Subtotaal:Pers.-Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Pers.-Salaries&Allowances	**709,000**	**496,108**	**709,000**	**996,000**	**1,045,800**	**1,098,090**

PERS.SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2012/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund	21,000	12,892	21,000	23,000	24,150	25,358
2012/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	115,000	76,847	115,000	160,000	168,000	176,400
2012/05/1/02/5101 Samwu Voorsorgfonds/Samwu Provident Fund					-	-
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**136,000**	**89,739**	**136,000**	**183,000**	**192,150**	**201,758**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillor Cost	**845,000**	**585,847**	**845,000**	**1,179,000**	**1,237,950**	**1,299,848**
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2012/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rent Equipment					-	-
Subtotaal: Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal Contractual Services	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2012/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment					-	-
2012/05/1/10/5103 Rekenaar/Computer					-	-
2012/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	70,000	55,449	70,000	90,000	94,500	99,225
Totaal:Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenace	**70,000**	**55,449**	**70,000**	**90,000**	**94,500**	**99,225**
KAPITAAL EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2012/05/4/03/3001 Kantoor meubels&toerusting/Office furniture&equip.					-	-
2012/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar toerusting					-	-
Subtotaal:Kapitaal Ex BFF/Subtotal:Capital Ex AFF	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET

OMGEWINGSGESONDHEID/ENVIROMENTAL HEALTH	EXPENSES 08/09	EXPENSES 28/02/09	EXPENSES 30/06/09	EXPENSES 09/10	EXPENSES 10/11	EXPENSES 11/12
ALGEMENE UITGAWES;Dept./GENERAL EXPENDITURES;Dept.						
2012/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements					-	-
2012/05/1/05/0003 Armlastige Begrafnisse/Pauper Funerals	1,000	-	1,000	1,000	1,050	1,103
2012/05/1/05/0004 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost					-	-
2012/05/1/05/0306 Bydrae NK Toerisme/Contributions NC Tourism					-	-
2012/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary					-	-
2012/05/1/05/2404 Invenaris Item/Inventory Item					-	-
2012/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses					-	-
2012/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2012/05/1/05/3004 Konsultasiefooie/Consultation Fees					-	-
2012/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding SETA/Courses-Training SETA	8,000	4,538	8,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2012/05/1/05/4201 Ontsmettings Middels/Disinfectants					-	-
2012/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Costs					-	-
2012/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2012/05/1/05/5102 Reis-& Verblyfkoste/Travel-& Subsistance Cost	35,000	15,543	35,000	35,000	36,750	38,588
2012/05/1/05/5401 Skoonmaakmateriaal/Cleaning Material					-	-
2012/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	15,000	11,651	15,000	18,000	18,900	19,845
2012/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General					-	-
2012/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty	2,000	0	2,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2012/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	7,000	4,224	7,000	7,000	7,350	7,718
2012/05/1/05/6306 Voedsel & Water Monsters/Food & Water Samples	40,000	8,240	40,000	40,000	42,000	44,100
2012/05/1/05/6601 Waardasie Koste/Valuation Cost					-	-
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept	**108,000**	**44,196**	**108,000**	**117,000**	**122,850**	**128,993**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN.EXPENDITURE	**108,000**	**44,196**	**108,000**	**117,000**	**122,850**	**128,993**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURES	**1,023,000**	**685,492**	**1,023,000**	**1,386,000**	**1,455,300**	**1,528,065**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME OMGEWINGSGESONDHEID/ENVIROMENTAL HEALTH	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
TARIEFHEFFINGS/TARIFF LEVIES						
2012/05/2/22/0301 Bydrae-Munisipaliteite/Contributions-Municipalities					-	-
Subtotaal:Tariefheffings/Subtotal:Tariff Levies	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
SKENKINGS & SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS & SUBSIDIES						
2012/05/2/24/3601 M.I.G Administrasietoelae/M.I.G Administration Grant					-	-
2012/05/2/24/5404 Subsidie Dept.Health	10,000	10,000	10,000	43,000	45,150	47,408
Subtotaal:Skenkings & Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments & Subsidies	**10,000**	**10,000**	**10,000**	**43,000**	**45,150**	**47,408**

ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2012/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone Deductions	8,000	8,229	8,000	9,000	9,450	9,923
2012/05/2/30/1801 Gelde-verskeie/Money-variuos					-	-
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Subtotal:Other Income	**8,000**	**8,229**	**8,000**	**9,000**	**9,450**	**9,923**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink.Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc.Generated	**18,000**	**18,229**	**18,000**	**52,000**	**54,600**	**57,330**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**18,000**	**18,229**	**18,000**	**52,000**	**54,600**	**57,330**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE **BEHUISING/HOUSING**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
PERS./RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL/COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARISSE&TOELAE/PERS.-SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
2013/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowances	3,000	1,680	3,000	5,000	5,250	5,513
2013/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonusses	52,000	51,581	52,000	108,000	113,400	119,070
2013/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Car Allowances	84,000	55,072	84,000	84,000	88,200	92,610
2013/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	625,000	413,986	621,000	1,287,000	1,351,350	1,418,918
2013/05/1/01/6301 Verlofuitbetalings/Leave Pay-outs					-	-
Subtotaal:Pers.-Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Pers.-Salaries&Allowances	**764,000**	**522,319**	**760,000**	**1,484,000**	**1,558,200**	**1,636,110**

PERS.SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2013/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund	20,000	14,452	20,000	30,000	31,500	33,075
2013/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	50,000	33,077	50,000	160,000	168,000	176,400
2013/05/1/02/5101 Samwu Voorsorgfonds/Samwu Provident Fund					-	-
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**70,000**	**47,529**	**70,000**	**190,000**	**199,500**	**209,475**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillor Cost	**834,000**	**569,848**	**830,000**	**1,674,000**	**1,757,700**	**1,845,585**
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2013/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rent Equipment					-	-
Subtotaal: Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal Contractual Services	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2013/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment					-	-
2013/05/1/10/5103 Rekenaar/Computer	10,000	9,999	10,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2013/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	1,000	2,207	5,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
Totaal:Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenace	**11,000**	**12,206**	**15,000**	**20,000**	**21,000**	**22,050**
KAPITAAL EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2013/05/4/03/3001 Kantoor meubels&toerusting/Office furniture&equip.					-	-
2013/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar toerusting					-	-
Subtotaal:Kapitaal Ex BFF/Subtotal:Capital Ex AFF	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE **BEHUISING/HOUSING**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**

ALGEMENE UITGAWES;Dept./GENERAL EXPENDITURES;Dept.						
2013/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements					-	-
2013/05/1/05/0004 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost					-	-
2013/05/1/05/0000 Behuisingsplan/Housing plan						
2013/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary					-	-
2013/05/1/05/0905 Impimentering/Implementation	300,000	300,000	300,000	-		
2013/05/1/05/2404 Invenaris Item/Inventory Item					-	-
2013/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses					-	-
2013/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2013/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding SETA/Courses-Training SETA	7,000	4,779	7,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
2013/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Costs					-	-
2013/05/1/05/4207 Onthaalkoste/Entertainment Cost					-	-
2013/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2013/05/1/05/5102 Reis-& Verblyfkoste/Travel-& Subsistance Cost	80,000	54,391	80,000	90,000	94,500	99,225
2013/05/1/05/5405 Ouboks Colesberg	17,000,000	14,880,821	17,000,000	10,000,000	10,500,000	11,025,000
2013/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	4,000	2,469	4,000	4,000	4,200	4,410
2013/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General					-	-
2013/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty				14,000	14,700	15,435
2013/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	5,000	2,990	5,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept	**17,396,000**	**15,245,450**	**17,396,000**	**10,126,000**	**10,632,300**	**11,163,915**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN.EXPENDITURE	**17,396,000**	**15,245,450**	**17,396,000**	**10,126,000**	**10,632,300**	**11,163,915**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURES	**18,241,000**	**15,827,504**	**18,241,000**	**11,820,000**	**12,411,000**	**13,031,550**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME BEHUISING/HOUSING	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
TARIEFHEFFINGS/TARIFF LEVIES						
2013/05/2/22/0301 Bydrae-Munisipaliteite/Contributions-Municipalities					-	-
2013/05/2/24/3901 National Housing/Behuising Nationaal	1,800,000	1,800,000	1,800,000	1,500,000	1,575,000	1,653,750
2013/05/2/24/3902 Provincial Housing/Provinsiale Behuising	17,000,000	12,328,761	17,000,000	10,000,000	10,500,000	11,025,000
Subtotaal:Tariefheffings/Subtotal:Tariff Levies	**18,800,000**	**14,128,761**	**18,800,000**	**11,500,000**	**12,075,000**	**12,678,750**
SKENKINGS & SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS & SUBSIDIES						
					-	-
Subtotaal:Skenkings & Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments & Subsidies	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2013/05/2/30/0309 Income from investment	300,000	-	300,000	-		
2013/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone deductions	-	9	-	-	-	-
Subtotaal:Ander inkomste/Subtotal:Other income	**300,000**	**9**	**300,000**	**-**	**-**	**-**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink.Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc.Generated	**19,100,000**	**14,128,770**	**19,100,000**	**11,500,000**	**12,075,000**	**12,678,750**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**19,100,000**	**14,128,770**	**19,100,000**	**11,500,000**	**12,075,000**	**12,678,750**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE **SHARED SERVICES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
PERS./RAADSLEDE KOSTE/PERSONNEL/COUNCILLOR COST						
PERS.-SALARISSE&TOELAE/PERS.-SALARIES&ALLOWANCES						
2045/05/1/01/0301 Behuisingstoelae/Housing Allowances	5,000	3,350	5,000	6,000	6,300	6,615
2045/05/1/01/0302 Bonusse/Bonusses	124,000	123,500	124,000	136,000	142,800	149,940
2045/05/1/01/3601 Motortoelae/Car Allowances	133,000	88,336	133,000	134,000	140,700	147,735
2045/05/1/01/4201 Onthaaltoelae/Entertainment Allowance	8,000	7,584	8,000	10,000	10,500	11,025
2045/05/1/01/5401 Salarisse-Personeel/Salaries-Personnel	1,500,000	987,842	1,500,000	1,731,000	1,817,550	1,908,428
Subtotaal:Pers.-Salarisse&Toelae/Subtotal:Pers.-Salaries&Allowances	**1,770,000**	**1,210,612**	**1,770,000**	**2,017,000**	**2,117,850**	**2,223,743**

PERS.SOSIALE BYDRAES/PERS.SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS						
2045/05/1/02/3601 Mediese Hulpfonds/Medical Aid Fund	64,000	37,717	64,000	73,000	76,650	80,483
2045/05/1/02/4501 Pensioenfonds/Pension Fund	48,000	29,804	48,000	54,000	56,700	59,535
Subtotaal:Sosiale Bydraes/Subtotal:Social Contributions	**112,000**	**67,521**	**112,000**	**127,000**	**133,350**	**140,018**
Totaal:Personeel/Raadsledekoste/Total:Personnel/Councillor Cost	**1,882,000**	**1,278,133**	**1,882,000**	**2,144,000**	**2,251,200**	**2,363,760**
GEKONTRAKTEURDE DIENSTE/CONTRACTUAL SERVICES						
2045/05/1/08/2101 Huurgeld Toerusting/Rent Equipment	31,000	21,058	31,000	-	-	-
Subtotaal: Gekontrakteurde Dienste/Subtotal Contractual Services	**31,000**	**21,058**	**31,000**	**-**	**-**	**-**
HERSTEL EN ONDERHOUD/REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE						
2045/05/1/10/3601 Meubels en Toerusting/Furniture and Equipment	2,000	1,211	2,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2045/05/1/10/5102 Rekenaar/Computer	2,000	1,748	2,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2045/05/1/10/6301 Voertuie/Vehicles	40,000	25,150	40,000	50,000	52,500	55,125
Totaal:Herstel en Onderhoud/Total:Repair and Maintenace	**44,000**	**28,109**	**44,000**	**54,000**	**56,700**	**59,535**
KAPITAAL EX BFF/CAPITAL EX AFF						
2045/05/4/03/3001 Kantoor meubels&toerusting/Office furniture&equip.					-	-
2045/05/4/03/5102 Rekenaar toerusting					-	-
Subtotaal:Kapitaal Ex BFF/Subtotal:Capital Ex AFF	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE **SHARED SERVICES**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09**	**WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09**	**VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11**	**BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12**
ALGEMENE UITGAWES;Dept./GENERAL EXPENDITURES;Dept.						

2045/05/1/05/0001 Advertensies/Advertisements					-	-
2045/05/1/05/0004 Administrasiekoste/Administration Cost					-	-
2045/05/1/05/0301 Bankkoste/ Bank cost					-	-
2045/05/1/05/0903 Drukwerk en Skryfbehoeftes/Printing and Stationary	10,000	9,401	10,000	-	-	-
2045/05/1/05/2401 Implementering Pims/Implementing Pims	400,000	403,661	400,000	400,000	420,000	441,000
2045/05/1/05/2404 Invenaris Item/Inventory Item					-	-
2045/05/1/05/2705 Int.Omgew. Bestuur/Integrated Enviromental Management	41,000	40,479	41,000	-	-	-
2045/05/1/05/3001 Kantoor Uitgawes/Office Expenses					-	-
2045/05/1/05/3002 Kantoor Huur/Office Rental					-	-
2045/05/1/05/3006 Kursusse-Opleiding SETA/Courses-Training SETA	17,000	11,090	17,000	19,000	19,950	20,948
2045/05/1/05/4202 Opleidingskoste/Training Costs					-	-
2045/05/1/05/4206 Oudit					-	-
2045/05/1/05/4207 Onthaalkoste/Entertainment	3,000	1,258	3,000	3,000	3,150	3,308
2045/05/1/05/4501 Posgeld/Postage					-	-
2045/05/1/05/5102 Reis-& Verblyfkoste/Travel-& Subsistance Cost	141,000	117,255	141,000	150,000	157,500	165,375
2045/05/1/05/5701 Selfoon/Cell phone	80,000	68,920	80,000	100,000	105,000	110,250
2045/05/1/05/6302 Versekering:Algemeen/Insurance:General					-	-
2045/05/1/05/6303 Versekering:Ongevalle/Insurance:Casualty	6,000	0	6,000	19,000	19,950	20,948
2045/05/1/05/6305 Versekering:Werkloosheid/Insurance:Unemployment	8,000	5,209	8,000	8,000	8,400	8,820
Subtotaal:Algemene Uitgawes;Dept./Subtotal:General Expenditure;Dept	**706,000**	**657,273**	**706,000**	**699,000**	**733,950**	**770,648**
TOTAAL:ALG.UITGAWES/TOTAL:GEN.EXPENDITURE	**706,000**	**657,273**	**706,000**	**699,000**	**733,950**	**770,648**
TOTAAL:UITGAWES/TOTAL:EXPENDITURES	**2,663,000**	**1,984,573**	**2,663,000**	**2,897,000**	**3,041,850**	**3,193,943**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME SHARED SERVICES	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
BEDRYFSINK.GEGENEREER/OPERATING INC.GENERATED						
SKENKINGS & SUBSIDIES/ENDOWMENTS & SUBSIDIES						
2045/05/2/24/0306 Bydrae Pims van Plaaslike Mun	800,000	800,000	800,000	1,000,000	1,050,000	1,102,500
2045/05/2/24/0900 GPLG Toekenning/DPLG Grant	735,000	735,000	735,000	1,300,000	1,365,000	1,433,250
Subtotaal:Skenkings & Subsidies/Subtotal:Endowments & Subsidies	**1,535,000**	**1,535,000**	**1,535,000**	**2,300,000**	**2,415,000**	**2,535,750**
ANDER INKOMSTE/OTHER INCOME						
2045/05/2/30/0390 Inkomste uit belegging/ Income from Investment	400,000	247,664	400,000	-	-	-
2045/05/2/30/0313 Reis en verblyf terugbetaling/S & T Repayment	2,000	2,632	2,000	2,000	2,100	2,205
2045/05/2/30/0314 Voertuighuur/Vehicle Rental					-	-

2045/05/2/30/0315 Telefoonaftrekkings/Telephone Deductions	17,000	17,046	17,000	20,000	21,000	22,050
Subtotaal:Ander Inkomste/Subtotal:Other Income	**419,000**	**267,342**	**419,000**	**22,000**	**23,100**	**24,255**
Subtotaal:Bedryfsink.Gegenereer/Subtotal:Operating Inc.Generated	**1,954,000**	**1,802,342**	**1,954,000**	**2,322,000**	**2,438,100**	**2,560,005**
TOTAAL:BEDRYFSINKOMSTE/TOTAL:OPERATING INCOME	**1,954,000**	**1,802,342**	**1,954,000**	**2,322,000**	**2,438,100**	**2,560,005**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

UITGAWES/EXPENDITURE PAAIE/ROADS	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 08/09	WERKLIKE UITGAWE/ ACTUAL EXPENSES 28/02/09	VERWAGTE UITGAWE/ EXPECTED EXPENSES 30/06/09	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 09/10	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 10/11	BEGROTE UITGAWE/ BUDGET EXPENSES 11/12
HOOF EN AFDELINGSPAAIE/MAIN AND DIVISIONAL ROADS						
407010200000 Administrasie Koste/Administrative Costs	17,937,000				-	-
407010845200 Geplaveide Paaie						
407010845400 Normale Onderhoud: Gruis Hoof Afdeling						
407010845401 Drainage/Dreinering						
407010845800 Omheinings/Fences						
407010845900 Padtekens/Road signs						
407010846200 Vloedskade/Flood damage						
407010846400 Strukture/Structures						
407010846800 Ondergeskikte paaie/Minor roads						

407010847100 Kapitaalwerke - AP 3098						
407010847200 Kapitaalwerke - Hoofpad 768						
407010847300 Kapitaalwerke - AP 3023						
407010847400 Grootpaaie Gruis						
407010800000 Onpruduktiewe Uitgawe/Unproductive Expenditure						
	17,937,000	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
ONDERGESKIKTE PAAIE						
407010947700 Agentskapkoste/ Agency cost						
407010948300 Oorhoofse koste/Overhead cost						
407010948400 Onproduktiewe koste/Non productive cost						
	-	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**
TOTALE UITGAWE/TOTAL EXPENDITURE	**17,937,000**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY
ALGEMENE REKENING: BEGROTING 1 JULIE 2009 TOT 30 JUNIE 2010
GENERAL ACCOUNT: BUDGET 1 JULY 2009 TO 30 JUNE 2010

INKOMSTE/INCOME PAAIE/ROADS	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 08/09	WERKLIKE INKOMSTE/ ACTUAL INCOME 28/02/09	VERWAGTE INKOMSTE/ EXPECTED INCOME 30/06/09	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 09/10	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 10/11	BEGROTE INKOMSTE/ BUDGET INCOME 11/12
407021549400 Agentskapkoste/Agency fees	17,937,000				-	-
407021563200 Rente Beleggings/Interest Investment						
407021586800 Verkeersboetes/Traffic fines						
407021586700 Vloedsake/Flood funding						
407021587300 Toekenning/Grant						
407021588100 Toekenning Muishoekpad/Grant Muishoekpad						
	17,937,000	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

TOTALE INKOMSTE/TOTAL INCOME	**17,937,000**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**	**-**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

KAPITAALONKOSTE - LENINGS OPGENEEM EN UITSTAANDE - 2009/2010
CAPITAL COST - LOANS RECEIVED AND OUTSTANDING - 2009/2010

DEPARTEMENT/ DEPARTMENT	BESKRYWING/ DESCRIPTION	DATUM OPGENEEM/ DATE RECEIVED	AFLOS-DATUM/ DATE REDEEMED	RENTE/ INTEREST	DELGING/ REDEMPTION	UITSTAANDE/ BALANCE
DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT						
DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY						
GOP	Kantore R5 000 000	12/07	12/06			5000000

						5000000

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/ PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNISIPALITY

BEGROTING VIR KAPITALE UITGAWES VIR DIE BOEKJAAR 2009/2010
BUDGET FOR CAPITAL EXPENDITURE FOR THE FINANCIAL YEAR 2009/2010

DEPARTEMENT/ DEPARTMENT	**FINANSIERING/ FINANCING**	**BESKRYWING/ DESCRIPTION**	**BEDRAG/ AMOUNT**
DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT			
DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY			
Disaster Management	Contr. N C Province	Fire Fighting Equipment	300,000
Administrasie en Finansies/	1.Inkom./Revenue	Meubels en toerusting/ Furniture and equipment	150,000
Administration and Finance	2.Inkom./ Revenue	Rekenaar toerusting/ Computer equipment	150,000
	3.Inkom./Revenue	Voertuie/Vehicles	500,000
	4.Lening & Eie Fondse	Grond en Geboue/Land and Buildings	-
			1,s100,000

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRIKSMUNISIPALITEIT/ PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY ALGEMENE REKENING/ GENERAL ACCOUNT					
OPSOMMING/ SUMMARY **DISTRIKSMUNISIPALE FUNKSIES/ DISTRICT MUNICIPAL FUNCTIONS**	**PERSONEEL-KOSTE/ PERSONNEL COST**	**ALGEMENE UITGAWES/ GENERAL COST**	**HERSTEL & ONDER-HOUD/ REPAIR & MAINTE-NANCE**	**KAPITAAL UIT INKOMSTE/ REVENUE FROM INCOME**	**TOTALE BEGRO-TING/ TOTAL BUDGET**
NOODRAMPBESTUUR/ EMERGENCY DISASTER MANAGEMENT	1,143,000	286,000	101,000	300,000	1,830,000
INTERNE OUDIT/ INTERNAL AUDIT	2,856,619	243,000	121,000	-	3,220,619
IDP/GOP	-	35,379,000	-	-	35,379,000
MUNISIPALE BESTUURDER/MUNICIPAL MANAGER	1,984,000	279,000	5,000	-	2,268,000
DEVELOPMENT & INFRASTRUCTURE	643,000	1,845,000	45,000	-	2,533,000
ENVIRONMENTAL HEALH	1,179,000	117,000	90,000	-	1,386,000

ONDERSTEUNING & S. DIENSTE/SUPPORT & SOCIAL SERVICES	3,148,000	1,060,500	175,000	-	4,383,500
FINANSIES/FINANCE	3,471,000	2,470,500	547,000	1,300,000	7,788,500
RAADSUITGAWE/ COUNCIL'S EXPENSES	6,083,000	1,535,000	252,000	-	7,870,000
BEHUISING/HOUSING	1,674,000	10,126,000	20,000	-	11,820,000
SHARED SERVICES	2,144,000	699,000	54,000	-	2,897,000
TOTAAL VAN DISTRIKSMUNISIPALE FUNKSIES -	**24,325,619**	**54,040,000**	**1,410,000**	**1,600,000**	**81,375,619**
% VAN DM BEGROTING % OF DM BUDGET	**29.9**				
AGENTSKAP FUNKSIES/ AGENCY FUNCTIONS					
MIG GRANT					
PAAIE/ ROADS					-
TOTAAL: AGENTSKAPSFUNKSIES TOTAL: AGENCY FUNCTIONS	-	-	-	-	-
-	24,325,619	54,040,000	1,410,000	1,600,000	81,375,619